

Bit by Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية



التعليم العام والأزهرى

NEW
Hello! 2023

الصف الأول الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

QR CODES

Listen to
Vocabulary &
Audioscripts

دار غزة

تطبيع والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



**FIRST
TERM**

1

**ST
PREP**

Contents

Part 1

- Revision & Exercises
- Writing skills (How to answer new questions):
(Dialogues - Reading comprehension -
Read and correct - Write a paragraph)
- Exam specifications

Part 2

- Check your English!

Module 1: Family and friends

- Unit (1) : My family and me
- Unit (2) : It's my favourite subject
- Unit (3) : Different people

Review (A)

Module 2: The world around us

- Unit (4) : We're using technology!
- Unit (5) : Holidays
- Unit (6) : Let's eat!

Review (B)

Part 3

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| • General Exercises | • Paragraphs |
| • End of Term Practice | • SB / WB Answers |
| • Final Exams | • Listening material |
| • Azhar Exams | • Irregular verbs |

Booklet (free with the book)

- Dictation
- Homework exercises on each unit
- Test on each two units

Part 1

Revision & Exercises

مراجعة وتمارين على ما سبق دراسته بالمرحلة الابتدائية



Vocabulary Review

مراجعة على المفردات

A / a

abroad	بالخارج
accident	حادثة
address	عنوان (مكان)
aeroplane	طائرة
age	عمر - سن
any	أي
around	حول

B / b

birthday	عيد ميلاد
board	سبورة
bottle	زجاجة
brush	فرشاة

C / c

candle	شمعة
chair	كرسي
change	باقي النقود (فكة)
children	اطفال
circle	دائرة
city	مدينة كبيرة
clock	ساعة حائط
cloud	سحابة
coin	عملة معدنية
computer	جهاز كمبيوتر
cup	فنجان
cupboard	دولاب

D / d

daily	يوميًا
date	تاريخ (اليوم مثلاً)
degree	درجة
dessert	تحلية (بعد الأكل)
dish	طبق «عميق»
dream	حلم

E / e

Egyptians	مصريون
email	بريد الكيتروني
evening	مساء
everyone	كل واحد / الجميع
everything	كل شيء
exercise	تمرين (رياضي)

F / f

favourite	مفضل
flag	علم
flight	رحلة جوية
fun	مرح - مُتعة

G / g

glass	زجاج / كوب زجاجي
glasses	نظارة
gold	الذهب
grade	مرحلة - صف دراسي

H / h

headache	صداع
history	تاريخ
holiday	إجازة (عطلة)
homework	الواجب المدرسي
hour	ساعة (٦٠ دقيقة)
hundred	مائة

I / i

ice	ثلج
idea	فكرة
information	معلومات
internet	شبكة الانترنت

J / j

jar	برطمان
jewellery	مجوهرات
jug	إبريق

K / k

key	مفتاح
kid	طفل
kind	نوع
kite	طائرة ورقية

L / l

leaves	أوراق الشجر
left	يسار
light	ضوء / لمبة
litter	قمامة
letter	خطاب

M / m

many	كثير (للعدد)
map	خريطة
mat	سجادة

medicine	دواء
menu	قائمة طعام
minute	دقيقة
mistake	خطأ
moon	قمر
much	كثير (للكمية)

N / n

news	أخبار
newspaper	جريدة
night	ليلة / الليل
noise	ضوضاء

O / o

office	مكتب (للعمل)
--------	--------------

P / p

pain	ألم
paper	ورق / ورقة / جريدة
party	حفلة
percent	نسبة مئوية
picnic	نزهة خلوية
plate	طبق (مسطح)
pound	جنيه (عملة)
present	هدية
programme	برنامج

Q / q

quickly	بسرعة
---------	-------

R / r

right	يمين
rock	صخرة
rope	حبل

S / s

sand	رمل
scissors	مقص
seat	مقعد (ثابت)
shape	شكل
shelf / shelves	رف / أرفف
sky	السماء
snow	جليد
stone	حجر
story	قصة
subject	مادة دراسية
sunglasses	نظارة شمسي
sure	بالتأكيد

T / t

team	فريق
thousand	ألف (1000)
ticket	تذكرة
tomorrow	غدا
tonight	الليلة
toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان
toothpaste	معجون أسنان
train	قطار
trip	رحلة
truck	شاحنة
true	صحيح - حقيقي
tube	أنبوب
twice	مرتين

U / u

umbrella	شمسية
underground	مترو الأنفاق

V / v

van	شاحنة صغيرة
vase	زهريّة
village	قرية
volleyball	الكرة الطائرة

W / w

wall	حائط
wallet	محفظة
weather	الطقس - الجو
website	موقع على الانترنت
without	بدون
(the) world	العالم
wrong	خطأ

Y / y

year	سنة
yesterday	أمس

Z / z

zero	صفر
zoo	حديقة حيوان

Remember

Family العائلة

father = dad	أب	aunt	العمة / الخالة	grandmother	الجدة
mother = mum	أم	uncle	العم / الخال	brother	الأخ
parents	الوالدين	grandfather	الجد	sister	الأخت

Jobs الوظائف

engineer	مهندس	vet	طبيب بيطري	driver	سائق
teacher	مدرس	singer	مغن - مطرب	doctor	طبيب
nurse	ممرضة	farmer	فلاح	baker	خباز
policeman	رجل شرطة	worker	عامل	cook	طباخ
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	dentist	طبيب أسنان	artist	رسام
clerk	موظف	pilot	طيار	mechanic	ميكانيكي

Parts of the body أجزاء الجسم

arm	ذراع	foot (feet)	قدم (أقدام)	finger	أصبع اليد
hand	يد	ear	أذن	toe	أصبع القدم
hair	شعر	nose	أنف	mouth	فم
head	رأس	neck	رقبة - عنق	stomach	معدة
face	وجه	leg	ساق	tooth (teeth)	سنة (أسنان)
eye	عين	knee	ركبة	back	ظهر

Foods and drinks أطعمة ومشروبات

potatoes	بطاطس	cake	كيك	oranges	برتقال
bananas	موز	chocolate	شيكولاتة	apples	تفاح
bread	خبز	rice	أرز	biscuits	بسكويت
sandwich	ساندوتش	fish	سمك	chips	شرائح بطاطس
meat	لحم	tomatoes	طماطم	tea	شاي
cheese	جبن (جبنة)	sweets	حلوى	milk	لبن
vegetables	خضراوات	honey	عسل	beans	فول
fruit	فاكهة	nut	حبة جوز / لوز / مكسرات	salt	ملح
peaches	خوخ	ice cream	آيس كريم	lemons	ليمون
coffee	قهوة	chicken	دجاجة / لحم دجاج	cucumbers	خيار
juice	عصير	pizza	بيتزا	carrots	جزر
jam	مربي	lemonade	عصير ليمون	cookies	كعك
butter	زبدة	salad	سلطة	pepper	فلفل

Rooms and places in the house حجرات وأماكن بالمنزل

bedroom	غرفة النوم	bathroom	حمام	garden	حديقة منزل
living room	غرفة المعيشة	kitchen	مطبخ	dining room	غرفة المائدة - غرفة الطعام
flat	شقة	garage	جراج	hall	صالة

Clothes ملابس

trousers	بنطلون	T-shirt	تي شيرت	shoes	حذاء
dress	فستان	jacket	جاكت	boots	حذاء برقبة
shirt	قميص	socks	جورب (شراب)	hat	قبعة
jeans	بنطلون جينز	skirt	جيبه	coat	معطف (بالطو)

Animals and Birds حيوانات وطيور

rabbit	أرنب	zebra	حمار وحشي	parrot	بغاء (بغبان)
fox	ثعلب	horse	حصان	snake	ثعبان
frog	ضفدعة	cow	بقرة	lion	أسد
giraffe	زرافة	goat	ماعز	bear	دب
elephant	فيل	camel	جمل	panda	الباندا
monkey	قرد	sheep	خروف	tiger	نمر
kangaroo	حيوان الكانجرو	canary	عصفور الكناري	lizard	سحلية
turtle	سلحفاة	eagle	عقاب	kitten	قطعة صغيرة (هريرة)

Adjectives صفات

delicious	لذيذ	dangerous	خطير	ugly	قبيح
funny	مضحك	quiet	هادئ	beautiful	جميل
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل	careful	حريص

Places أماكن

bank	مصرف (بنك)	playground	ملعب	desert	صحراء
library	مكتبة (للقراءة والاستعارة)	pavement	رصيف الشارع	gift shop	محل هدايا
shop	محل	river	نهر	lake	بحيرة
airport	مطار	station	محطة	mountain	جبل
city	مدينة	hospital	مستشفى	park	متنزه / موقف للسيارات
field	حقل	factory	مصنع	post office	مكتب بريد
house	منزل	school	مدرسة	restaurant	مطعم
market	سوق	bookshop	مكتبة (البيع الكتب)	road	طريق
office	مكتب (للعمل)	bus stop	محطة أتوبيس	town	مدينة

Prepositions حروف جر

next to	بجوار	on	على	near	قريب
behind	خلف	under	تحت	far	بعيد
in front of	أمام	above	فوق	in	في
between	بين				

Months of the year / شهور السنة

1. January	يناير	2. February	فبراير	3. March	مارس
4. April	أبريل	5. May	مايو	6. June	يونيه
7. July	يوليو	8. August	أغسطس	9. September	سبتمبر
10. October	أكتوبر	11. November	نوفمبر	12. December	ديسمبر

Seasons and the weather / فصول السنة والطقس

winter	الشتاء	cold	بارد	warm	دافئ
spring	الربيع	windy	عاصف	rainy	مطير
summer	الصيف	hot	حار	sunny	مشمس
fall	الخريف				

Meals / وجبات

breakfast	الإفطار	lunch	العشاء	dinner	العشاء
snack	وجبة خفيفة				

- يوجد جدول لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Tomorrow I'll go to the _____ to borrow a book.
 a bank b library c kitchen d shop
- He has got a lot of _____ on his birthday.
 a presents b parties c animals d newspapers
- You should do your _____ when you go home from school.
 a letter b rubbish c homework d lunch
- I use my computer to send _____ to my friends.
 a emails b letters c screens d paragraphs
- _____ help sick people in hospitals.
 a Pilots b Nurses c Cooks d Drivers
- English is my favourite school _____.
 a subject b sport c food d garden
- A _____ grows food and keeps animals.
 a mechanic b cook c farmer d clerk
- I couldn't _____ a bike when I was four.
 a read b drive c write d ride
- Pilots can _____ planes.
 a drive b ride c play d fly
- The cake was very _____. I ate it all.
 a dangerous b delicious c difficult d funny
- The cat is standing _____ the tree.
 a behind b next c to d between

Revision & Exercises

12. She is my I love her.
a father **b** brother **c** uncle **d** sister
13. The is a very big animal.
a frog **b** mouse **c** elephant **d** goat
14. Who the first prize?
a kicked **b** won **c** played **d** did
15. I picked up the and ordered my lunch.
a menu **b** ticket **c** soup **d** plane
16. I could high when I was young.
a dance **b** sleep **c** jump **d** walk
17. We always have our lunch in the
a living room **b** bedroom **c** bathroom **d** dining room
18. What's your food?
a happy **b** lazy **c** favourite **d** old
19. Mum is going to a cake for my birthday.
a make **b** throw **c** do **d** sell
20. Were you lunch at two yesterday?
a feeding **b** leaving **c** throwing **d** having

B

Grammar Review

مراجعة على القواعد

1) Pronouns & Possessive adjectives

الضمائر وصفات الملكية

	ضمائر فاعل	ضمائر مفعول	صفات ملكية يتبعها اسم	ضمائر ملكية لا يتبعها اسم	ضمائر منعكسة
مفرد singular	I أنا	me	my —	mine	myself
	You أنت	you	your —	yours	yourself
	He هو	him	his —	his	himself
	She هي	her	her —	hers	herself
	It هو / هي (لغير العاقل)	it	its —	—	itself
جمع plural	You أنتم	you	your —	yours	yourselves
	We نحن	us	our —	ours	ourselves
	They هم	them	their —	theirs	themselves

Ex. 1. I am busy now.
 2. This is my bike.

3. Help me, please.
 4. This bike is mine.

2) Verb "to be" فعل «يكون»

Present simple

am is are

Ex. 1. I am (=m) a pupil.
 2. She is (=s) a nurse.
 3. They are (=re) clever.

Past simple

was were

Ex. 1. The teacher was angry.
 2. Two years ago, they were in grade 4.

3 Tenses الأزمنة

A The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	inf. مصدر الفعل	don't + inf. never + inf.	Do + (كلمة إستفهام) + فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	inf. + s / es / ies	doesn't + inf. never + inf + s / es / ies	Does + (كلمة إستفهام) + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

every (day - week - month - year) - always - usually - often - sometimes - never

Usage استخدام

يعبر عن حقائق - أفعال متكررة وعادات

- Ex. 1. We **help** mum at home. 4. Ali **lives** in Giza.
 2. We **don't make** noise. 5. Mona **doesn't live** in Giza.
 3. **Do they have** a car? 6. **Does Aya live** in Giza?
 - Yes, they **do**. / No, they **don't**. - Yes, she **does**. / No, she **doesn't**.

B The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفي	استفهام
فاعل فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل	didn't + inf. + فاعل	Did + (كلمة إستفهام) + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

Usage استخدام

يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي

- Ex. 1. She **cooked** fish yesterday. 3. **Did she cook** rice yesterday?
 2. She **didn't cook** meat yesterday. - Yes, she **did**. / No, she **didn't**.

C The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد We / You / They / اسم جمع	am is are } + v-ing	am is are } not + v-ing	+ (كلمة إستفهام) Am Is Are } + فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

Look! - Listen! - now - at the moment - at present

Usage استخدام

١- يستخدم لوصف صورة. ٢- يعبر عن فعل يحدث الآن.

- Ex.** 1. Sama and Shrouk **are cooking** lunch now.
 2. Rahma **is not taking** photos at the moment.
 3. What **are** Youssef and Omar **doing**?
 4. **Is** Osman **reading** a book now? - Yes, he **is**. / No, he **isn't**.

D The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was + v-ing	was not + v-ing	(كلمة إستفهام) + Was + فاعل + v-ing?
We / You / They / اسم جمع	were + v-ing	were not + v-ing	Were + فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

when / while / as

Usage استخدام

يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً في وقت محدد في الماضي /
حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر

- Ex.** 1. I **was reading** a book. 3. He **wasn't eating** cake.
 2. **Were** you **flying** a kite?

استخدام
when / while

ماضي بسيط + **when** + ماضي مستمر

ماضي مستمر + **while** + ماضي بسيط

لاحظ الآتي:

- Ex.** 1. I **was playing** tennis **when** my sister **came**.
 2. They **found** a book **while** they **were looking** for their bags.

E The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

إثبات	نفي	استفهام
فاعل + will + inf.	فاعل + will not (won't) + inf.	Will + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

tomorrow - in the future - next (week - month - year)

Usage استخدام

يعبر عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل

- Ex.** 1. She **will visit** us tomorrow. 3. **Will** you **do** your homework?
 2. They **will not (won't)** sing. - Yes, I **will**. / No, I **won't**.

F The future with (going to)

مصدر الفعل + inf. سوف + am / is / are + going to + فاعل

- يعبر عن فعل مخطط له في المستقبل.

- Ex.** 1. She **is going to visit** her aunt next month.
 2. We're **going to** watch a new film this evening.

Exercises on Grammar**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Please, tell _____ about your trip to Aswan.
a we **b** us **c** our **d** he
- This book is _____ ; it's not yours.
a my **b** me **c** mine **d** our
- Cats always clean _____.
a themselves **b** their **c** them **d** yourself
- Hani _____ buy a new car next year.
a are going to **b** going to **c** is going to **d** was going
- A:** What is your mother's job? **B:** She _____ a nurse.
a was **b** is **c** be **d** are
- Two weeks ago, I _____ in Luxor.
a was **b** am **c** were **d** are
- They are _____ TV now.
a watch **b** watched **c** watches **d** watching
- A:** _____ you drink the milk? **B:** No, I didn't.
a Do **b** Did **c** Does **d** Doing
- Hatem _____ his uncle next Sunday.
a visited **b** visits **c** visit **d** will visit
- Nawal _____ like fish. She likes chicken.
a didn't **b** won't **c** doesn't **d** don't
- A:** What are the children _____ ? **B:** They're eating sandwiches.
a did **b** doing **c** do **d** does
- Mum _____ cook fish last week. She cooked meat.
a don't **b** doesn't **c** did **d** didn't
- _____ you visit your uncle tomorrow?
a Will **b** Are **c** Do **d** Were
- A:** Where _____ Shadia live? **B:** She lives in Tanta.
a do **b** did **c** does **d** are
- Did Noha _____ her homework yesterday?
a do **b** does **c** doing **d** done

Writing Skills



معالجة للأسئلة الصعبة التي قد تواجه الطالب في امتحان الصف الأول الإعدادي

How to
answer

- Dialogues
- Reading comprehensions
- Read and correct the underlined words
- Paragraphs

1 Dialogue

كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال المحادثة

- يعطى الطالب محادثة مكونة من عشرة تبادلات حوارية بها خمسة فراغات (ثلاثة ردود وسؤالين)
- مطلوب من الطالب أن يكمل الفراغات.
- المحادثة يسبقها موقف توضيحي.

كيفية تكوين السؤال لاستخدامه في حل سؤال المحادثة

ينقسم السؤال إلى نوعين:

1 السؤال بـ (هل.....؟) Yes / No question

- إذا اشتملت الإجابة على Yes, / No تبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص ويكون معناه «هل...؟»
- الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة تعد جزءاً أساسياً في تكوين أى سؤال

Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة

am - is - are - was - were - have -
has - had

Modals الأفعال الناقصة

can - could - shall - should - will -
would - may - might - must

- إذا كان بالجملة أى من الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة السابقة نستخدمه في السؤال كآتي:

A Yes, he can play tennis.

Q Can he play tennis?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم do / does / did حسب زمن الجملة.

A Yes, Rana comes early.

Q Does Rana come early?

A Yes, I played tennis.

Q Did you play tennis?

Wh-question السؤال بكلمة استفهام 2

- نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام في السؤال حسب الإجابة الموجودة (مكان - زمان - شخص - شيء - طريقة ...)

..... فعل → فاعل → فعل مساعد / ناقص → كلمة استفهام

A She is eating in the dining room.

Q Where is she eating?

Question words ؟

What	ما / ماذا (للأشياء)	What time	ما الوقت
Where	أين (للمكان)	What colour	ما لون
Who	من (للأشخاص)	What subject	ما المادة الدراسية
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)	How many	كم العدد
When	متى (للزمن)	How long	ما المدة / طول
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How heavy	ما وزن
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)	How much	ما ثمن / كم كمية
How	كيف (للطريقة / للحال)	How often	كم عدد المرات
What class	ما الصف الدراسي		



1 إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (have - has - had) يعامل مثل أي فعل آخر باستخدام do - does - did.

A They have a nice car.

Q What do they have?

A He has lunch at 2 o'clock.

Q When does he have lunch?

2 إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (do - does - did) يعامل مثل أي فعل آخر.

A Huda does her homework at night.

Q When does Huda do her homework?

A Sama did exercise in the morning.

Q When did Sama do exercise?

3 السؤال عن الفاعل: عندما نسأل عن الفاعل نحذفه ونضع مكانه كلمة الإستفهام ونكمل الجملة كما هي:

A Ahmed wins the game.

Q Who wins the game?

A A car crashed into the wall.

Q What crashed into the wall?

- عندما نسأل بـ Who عن مفعول عاقل نكوّن السؤال بالطريقة المعتادة باستخدام فعل ناقص أو مساعد بعدها:

A I met Ahmed.

Q Who did you meet?

4 السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام (How many)

- يأتي بعدها مباشرة الاسم الذي يعد ثم الفعل المساعد / الناقص ثم الفاعل.

A I bought 5 **books**.

Q **How many books** did you buy?

5 السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام [How tall - long - wide - high - old]

Q How **tall** is the building? → **A** It's 30 metres **tall**.

Q How **wide** is the room? → **A** It's 5 metres **wide**.

Q How **high** is the mountain? → **A** It's 20 metres **high**.

Q How **old** is Mai? → **A** She's 10 years **old**.

Model question ?

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Complete the following dialogue:

Basem and Farida are talking about Farida's best friend.

Basem : Who is your best friend, Farida?

Farida : My best friend is a girl called Amal.

Basem : ① ?

Farida : She is 13 years old.

Basem : What are her ② ?

Farida : Science and maths.

Basem : What is her favourite ③ ?

Farida : She ④ basketball.

Basem : Is she tall?

Farida : Yes, ⑤

Answer 1- How old is she? 2- favourite subjects 3- sport 4- likes 5- she is

2 Reading Comprehension

كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال قطعة الفهم

- يعطى الطالب نص مكون من حوالي ١٠٠ كلمة.

- مطلوب من الطالب أن يجيب عن ثلاثة أسئلة مقالية وثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد.

خطوات تساعدك على إجابة قطعة الفهم:

- 1 اقرأ الأسئلة أولاً قبل قراءة القطعة نفسها لأن هذا يعطيك فكرة عامة عن موضوع القطعة.
- 2 انتبه إلى ما تطلبه هذه الأسئلة من معلومات.
- 3 اقرأ القطعة كلها بتأن مرة ثانية قبل أن تقوم بالإجابة عن الأسئلة.
- 4 عندما تجد جملة فيها إجابة سؤال ضع خطاً تحتها وأيضاً إذا وجدت أرقام انتبه لها لأن واضع الامتحان عادة ما يسأل عنها.
- 5 إذا صادفت كلمة لا تعرف معناها حاول تخمين المعنى.

كيف تخمن معنى كلمة لا تعرف معناها

- 1 قد تتمكن من تخمين معنى كلمة بسبب وجود عبارة أو كلمة دالة على التناقض مثل :
ولكن **yet** - لكن **but** - في المقابل **in contrast** - على العكس من.../على خلاف **Unlike**
◀ مثال:

• Some people think that sports are **unimportant**, but I think they are **vital**.

- لو أنك لا تعرف معنى كلمة **vital**، يمكنك تخمين معناها حيث أن الجملة تقول «يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرياضة شيء غير مهم، لكنني أعتقد أنها». من خلال السياق نفهم أن **vital** عكس **unimportant** وبهذا يكون تخمين معنى الكلمة سهل وهو (ضروري) أو (مهم)

- 2 قد تخمن معنى الكلمة أيضاً من خلال البدايات أو النهايات المتعلقة بأصل الكلمة
◀ مثال: نفهم من خلال السابقة **im-** في كلمة **impossible** (التي تعني "غير" أو "ليس" أنها عكس **possible** فيكون معناها (غير ممكن/مستحيل)
◀ مثال آخر: نفهم من خلال اللاحقة **-less** في كلمة **homeless** التي تعني (بدون/بلا) أن معنى الكلمة (بلا مأوى/مشرّد)

- 3 يمكنك تخمين المعنى من سياق الجملة من خلال الكلمات التي تسبق الكلمة أو التي تليها .

◀ مثال:

• It rained hard through the night so the ground was **wet**.

- ماذا تعني كلمة **wet**؟ إذا كنت لا تعرف معناها بمقدورك تخمينه من خلال الجملة التي سبقتها "كانت السماء تمطر بغزارة خلال الليل لذلك الأرض.... لقد كانت تمطر بشده مما يعني أن الأرض لابد أن تكون (مبتلة) .

- 4 هناك طريقة بسيطة جداً: ترجم الجملة كلها واترك فراغ مكان الكلمة التي لا تعرفها ثم فكر أي كلمة باللغة العربية تتماشى مع معنى الجملة فمثلاً أنت قرأت جملة تقول :

• The work is **boring**. There is nothing I find interesting about it.

- حاول تخمين معنى "**boring**" هنا.

ما هي الأنماط الأكثر شيوعاً في أسئلة قطعة الفهم:

1 واضح الامتحان قد يضع خط تحت كلمة في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى

• The underlined word '.....' refers to.....

2 قد يكون هناك في القطعة رأى / نصيحة ويسألك هل أنت موافق على هذا الرأى/هذه النصيحة أم لا مع ذكر السبب:

• Do you agree with this opinion / advice in the passage? Why / Why not?

3 قد يرتبط موضوع القطعة بك فيسألك مثلاً : هل تحب أو هل تكره ؟ لم؟ ولم لا؟

• Do you like / dislike....? Why / Why not?

4 قد يطلب منك أن تعطى عنوان مناسب للقطعة أو تذكر الفكرة الرئيسية لها:

• Give a suitable title to the passage.

Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Hassan. My family lives in Alexandria, but my dad doesn't work in Egypt. He works in England. He went to the airport on Sunday evening and he caught the plane to England. He will come home next month. On Saturday, I don't go to school, and my brother doesn't go to school either. We play chess or go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My sister is three and she doesn't swim. She watches us. I hope to travel to England when I grow up. My father encourages me to do that.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- Where does Hassan's father work?

2- Give a suitable title for the passage.

3- Why do you think Hassan hopes to travel to England?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined pronoun "She" refers to

a Hassan b Hassan's father c Hassan's sister d Hassan's family

5- When do they go to the park?

a On Sunday b On Saturday c Every day d On Wednesday

6- The underlined words "grow up" means _____.

a become older

b become younger

c plant trees

d get higher

Answer

1- He works in England.

2- Hassan's family.

3- To continue his studies there.

4- c. Hassan's sister

5- b. On Saturday

6- a. become older

3 Read and Correct the Under Lined Words:

- السؤال عبارة عن أربع جمل على القواعد اللغوية لكل جملة خطأ لغوي واحد.
- مطلوب من الطالب استبدال الكلمة الخطأ بصيغة صحيحة.

Mistake الخطأ

- I'd like any orange juice, please.
- Listen! She sings a beautiful song.
- Cairo is noisier than Al Fayoum.
- How much cups of coffee do you drink a day?
- Your house is small. Our is big.
- Didn't come late.

Correction التصحيح

- some
- is singing
- noisier
- many
- Ours
- Don't

4 Paragraph Writing

كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية

مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرة إنشائية مكونة من حوالى ثمانين (٨٠) كلمة عن أحد موضوعات الكتاب المدرسى.

• لابد أن يقرأ الطالب العنوان جيداً.

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن ندرس الآتى جيداً:

أولاً: ترتيب الجملة

فاعل	فعل	تكملة الجملة
Ahmed اسم شخص	go / goes / is going مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال home / yesterday
school مكان	did / was doing ماضى بسيط / مستمر	happy / well
car شيء		

ثانياً: صيغ الجمل المختلفة

صفة + verb to be + فاعل

➔ My grandfather is kind.

وظيفة + verb to be + فاعل

➔ My father is a teacher.

مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

➔ The laptop is on the table.

زمن + حرف جر + مفعول + فعل + فاعل

➔ We visited our grandparents on Friday.

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

➔ I have a mobile phone.

الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

➔ I wake up at 9 o'clock.



تعليمات مهمة للطلاب بخصوص الشكل العام للفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph)

- 1 نترك مسافة صغيرة (تعاادل كلمة صغيرة) في أول سطر فقط.
- 2 ابدأ أول كل جملة بحرف كبير (capital letter) واضح، وضع نقطة (full stop) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة، اكتب بخط واضح - الجملة بجوار الجملة - واترك مسافة بين الكلمة والأخرى.
- 3 استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (v / v + s, es, ies) عند الحديث عن الحقائق والعادات، وزمن الماضي البسيط (v + d / ed / ied) عند الحديث عن موضوع في الماضي، وزمن المستقبل (will + inf.) عند الحديث عن موضوع في المستقبل.
- 4 يمكن أن يكون عنوان الموضوع جملة تستخدم كأحد الجمل في الكتابة.

Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your family

My name is Habib(a) and this is my family. This is my sister. Her name is Radwa. She is two years old. She's very beautiful. Nawal and Ayman are our parents. Our mother is a doctor. Our father is a teacher. We have one cousin, Arwa. Her parents are my uncle and aunt. Their names are Magdy and Donia. We always visit them. They visit us, too. They're very kind. They always get me presents. I like them very much. My family is wonderful.

Common writing mistakes

أخطاء شائعة في الكتابة باللغة الانجليزية

هذه أمثلة من الأخطاء التي قد يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب

1) Definite and indefinite articles (a, an and the)

1) نستخدم (a - an) عندما نتحدث عن شيء للمرة الأولى في الجملة.

- I go to the school, close to the sports club.
- I go to a school, close to a sports club.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

2) نستخدم (the) عند التحدث عن شيء سبق ذكره.

- I stayed in a hotel near the station. A hotel was very nice.
- I stayed in a hotel near the station. The hotel was very nice.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

3) نستخدم (the) عند الإشارة إلى شيء معروف للجميع.

- Do you know an answer to a question?
- Do you know an answer to the teacher's question?

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

4) لا نستخدم أدوات عندما نتحدث بشكل عام باستخدام صيغة الجمع مع الاسم الذي يُعد، أو صيغة المفرد مع الاسم الذي لا يُعد.

- The oranges give us vitamins.
- Oranges give us vitamins.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

5) يجب أن توضع (the) أمام أسماء الدول المركبة:

- I live in United States.
- I live in the United States.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

2) Punctuation

أمثلة من أخطاء الترقيم التي قد يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب:

1) نستخدم الحرف الكبير (Capital letter) في الكتابة في الحالات الآتية:

- الضمير (I) في أي مكان في الجملة.

- i go to school early.
- I go to school early.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

- الحرف الأول من الكلمة الأولى في الجملة الخبرية أو السؤال.

- my brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but i came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة خطأ X

- My brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but I came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة صحيحة ✓

Writing skills

- الحروف الأولى من أسماء الأشخاص والدول والمدن والمعالم والأماكن الشهيرة والجنسيات واللغات والاختصارات والألقاب والعناوين وأيام الأسبوع والشهور والمؤسسات والمهرجانات.

- maged did his Homework and watched tv.
- Maged did his homework and watched TV.
- i can speak english and french well.
- I can speak English and French well.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

② توضع النقطة Full stop (.) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

③ توضع الفاصلة Comma (,) لتعبر عن توقفات موجزة في الجمل وبين كلمات في قائمة وبعد No/ Yes

ولا نترك مسافة قبل الفواصل عموماً.

- After I ate I went to sleep
- After I ate, I went to sleep.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

④ توضع الفاصلة العليا Apostrophe (') قبل (s) الملكية للاسم المفرد، بينما نضع (s) للملكية للجمع المنتهي بـ (s):

- We met at Ali party.
- We met at Ali's party.
- These are the boys toys.
- These are the boys' toys.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

- توضع الفاصلة العليا في الاختصارات مثل: let's - don't - it's ... etc

- I dont have a car.
- I don't have a car.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

⑤ توضع علامة الاستفهام Question mark (?) في نهاية السؤال.

- Do you have a car
- Do you have a car?

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

⑥ توضع علامة التعجب Exclamation mark (!) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية مثل النقطة لإظهار الدهشة والتعجب.

- what a pity
- What a pity!

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

③ Common grammatical mistakes

① للتعبير عن شيء يحدث باستمرار في حياتنا نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر كما نفعّل في اللغة العربية:

- I'm often going to the club on Fridays.
- I often go to the club on Fridays.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

② إحرص على وضع ظروف التكرار (Adverbs of frequency) في مكانها (قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد فعل be):

always - usually - often - sometimes - never ...

- I go usually to the cinema on holidays.
- I usually go to the cinema on holidays.
- He always is early for school.
- He is always early for school.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

③ يأتي دائماً بعد حروف الجر فعل مضافاً له (ing):

- I thanked Ali for help me.
- I thanked Ali for helping me.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

④ بعض الأفعال لا يأتي بعدها حرف جر مثل (enjoy) حيث أن معناه يستمتع بـ:

- I enjoyed by the film.
- I enjoyed the film.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑤ تذكر أن بعض الكلمات مثل (information / news / equipment) يأتي بعدهم فعل لفاعل مفرد:

- The information you gave me were important.
- The information you gave me was important.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑥ الأفعال الناقصة لا يأتي بعدها (to):

- We must to eat healthy food.
- We must eat healthy food.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑦ لا نستخدم (that) بعد (should / must):

- You should that study your lessons.
- You should study your lessons.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑧ عليك أن تفرق بين استخدام (It's / Its):

• It's = (It is + n / adj / V-ing)

- It's (It is) my book.
- It's (It is) good to be fit.
- It's (It is) raining now.

• Its ضمير ملكية لغير العاقل

- I have a nice cat. Its tail is long.

⑨ عليك أن تميز في الاستخدام بين ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول:

- Samir and me revised for the exam.
- Samir and I revised for the exam.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

Specifications for First Year Preparatory (1st term)
English Examination (2022-2023)

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادي
(الفصل الدراسي الأول) للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٢ / ٢٠٢٣



Listening

4 (Marks)

1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Students listen to a text of not more than **25** words. Topics should be from the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**



Language Functions

5 (Marks)

2

Complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. The students are asked to complete the deletions. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full.

(One mark each)



Reading Comprehension

6 (Marks)

3

Read the following, then answer the questions:

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are required to answer **THREE (3)** open-ended questions and **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Giving the main idea **(1 question)**
- Extracting information **(2 questions)**
- Understanding reference **(1 question)**
- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context **(1 question)**
- Critical thinking skill **(1 question)**



Vocabulary & Structure

14 (Marks)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (10 Marks)

TEN (10) multiple-choice items (7 vocabulary & 3 structure) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. (One mark each)

5 Read and correct the underlined words: (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences, with an underlined error in each, are provided. The students are required to correct the error in each sentence.

(One mark each)



Writing

6 (Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on....:

The students are asked to write a paragraph from **SEVENTY FIVE (75)** to **EIGHTY FIVE (85)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(One mark for organization — One mark for relevance of ideas — One mark for choice of vocabulary — One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation — One mark for grammar)

1 This is a fact file of some students. Look and make sentences:

1 Name : Basel
Age : 12
Likes : football
Favourite food : fish with rice

2 Name : Fatma
Age : 13
Likes : books
Favourite food : chicken

3 Name : Maher and Hany
Age : 12
Likes : tennis
Favourite food : ice cream

4 Name :
Age :
Likes :
Favourite food :

1. His name is Basel. He is twelve. He likes football. His favourite food is fish with rice.

2.

3.

2 Complete fact file 4 for you and write sentences like those in Exercise 1:

4.

3 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر التمارين



1. The bag is

a new

b Injy's

c Lama's

d Lama's sister's

2. The pencil case is

a red

b blue

c yellow

d green

3. Lama has got

a a book about sport

b a toy animal

c an English book

d a book about animals

4. She has also got

a some oranges

b an orange

c an apple

d a ball

5. The girls are in

a a school

b a house

c a park

d a shop

4 Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences:

1. Hatem don't like sports. **Hatem doesn't like sports.**

2. I want play tennis this afternoon.

3. Look! Those children jumping very high.

4. I visit my cousins yesterday.

5. You speak English very good.

5 Read the text, then answer the questions:

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch: chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes it all himself.

1. Where does Mr Taha work?

He works in Port Said.

2. What does he usually eat for lunch?

3. What does he usually do twice a week?

4. Why did Mr Taha not want to walk home yesterday?

5. Is the weather always rainy in Port Said?

6. Who makes the food in the restaurant?

7. What does the underlined word there refer to?

6 Do these words have the same sound. Listen and put (✓) or (X):

1. ☐ washed / talked

2. ☐ called / waited

3. ☐ blue / duck

4. ☐ cake / home

5. ☐ shop / chick

6. ☐ father / brother

7. ☐ candy / July

8. ☐ tail / gate

7 What did they do at the weekend? Look at the table and answer the questions:

	Friday	Saturday
Ashraf	play football	visit cousins
Yunis	bake a cake	work in his father's shop
Riham	visit friends	play tennis

1. Did Yunis play football on Friday?

No, he didn't. He baked a cake.

2. Did Ashraf work in his father's shop on Saturday?

3. What did Ashraf do on Friday?

4. Did Riham visit her cousins on Friday?

5. Where did Yunis go on Saturday?

6. What did Riham do on Saturday?

8 Write about your weekend. What do you usually do? What did you do yesterday?

Audioscript

استمع إلى النص



• Exercise 3

Injy : Hi, Lama. Is that a new bag?

Lama : Hi, Injy. No, it's my sister's bag.

Injy : It's big. What's in it?

Lama : This is my pencil case. It's red.

Injy : Is that your book?

Lama : Yes, it's very good. It's about animals.

Injy : Is that a ball in your bag?

Lama : No, it's an orange! I like oranges.

Injy : I prefer apples.

Lama : Is that your phone?

Injy : Yes, it is. Look! It's 10 o'clock. Time for our English class.

Family and friends



UNIT 1 My family and me

Objectives

Reading:

An interview with twin brothers; *Heidi*; a text about a gymnast

Writing:

A paragraph on hobbies; a description of a person in your family

Listening:

An interview with twins

Speaking:

Talking about your family; asking questions

Language:

Pronouns; present simple

Life Skills:

Self-management

Values:

Love of family

Issues:

Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في كراسة التسميع.

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

hobby	هواية	interview	مقابلة شخصية
drum	طبل	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	twins	توأم
male	مذكر / ذكر	band	فرقة موسيقية
female	مؤنث / أنثى		

Family

dad = father	أب	mum = mother	أم
brother	أخ	sister	أخت
grandfather	جد	grandmother	جدة
son	ابن	daughter	ابنة
uncle	عم - خال	aunt	عمة - خالة
great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر	great-grandchildren	أبناء الأحفاد
cousin	ابن/ ابنة (العم أو العمة أو الخال أو الخالة)	parent	أحد الوالدين



Vocabulary

football match	مباراة كرة قدم	musical instruments	آلات موسيقية
quiz	اختبار قصير	favourite	مفضل
sport	رياضة	different	مختلف
too	أيضاً	story	قصة
both	كلّاً من - كلاهما	great	رائع / عظيم
birthday	يوم ميلاد	today	اليوم
(be) aged	يبلغ من العمر	diary	مفكرة يومية - يوميات
proud	فخور	Which...?	أي - أيهما...؟
together	معاً	What about..?	ماذا عن...؟
pop music	موسيقى البوب «موسيقى شعبية»	What kind of..?	ما نوع...؟
true	حقيقي	play (ed)	يلعب/ يعزف (على آلة موسيقية)
the same	نفس الشيء	call (ed)	يُسمّى
interviewer	مُحاور	clap (ped)	يصفق
radio*	مذياع (راديو)		

Verbs & nouns that come together

go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	play basketball	يلعب كرة السلة
listen to the teacher	يستمع إلى المعلم	play football	يلعب كرة القدم
listen to music	يستمع للموسيقى	play chess	يلعب الشطرنج
watch a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم	play the drums	يعزف على الطبول



Words & Meanings

English	Arabic	Meaning	Arabic Meaning
aunt	عمة - خالة	your mother or father's sister	1- لعبة لوحية
parent	أحد الوالدين	your mum or dad	2- آلات موسيقية
grandmother	جدة	your mother or father's mother	3- يضرب
grandfather	جد	your mother or father's father	4- عصا
brother	أخ	- your parent's son - a boy or man with the same parents as you	
sister	أخت	- your parent's daughter - a girl or woman with the same parents as you	
uncle	عم - خال	your mum or dad's brother	
cousin	ابن أو ابنة (العم/العمة/الخال/الخالة)	your aunt or uncle's child	
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	a board game ⁽¹⁾ for two people	
twins	توائم	- brothers or sisters who are the same age - two children born at the same time	
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي	work you do for no money / without getting money	
band	فرقة موسيقية	a group of people singing and / or playing musical instruments ⁽²⁾ together	
drum	طبل	a musical instrument you hit ⁽³⁾ with your hands or a stick ⁽⁴⁾ to	

Expressions & Prepositions

do voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي	proud of	فخور بـ...
do hobbies	يمارس هوايات	next to	بجوار
do a sport	يمارس رياضة	tell... about	يخبر .. عن
read (someone) a story	يقرأ قصة لـ...	on Mondays	في أيام الاثنين
have two sons	لديه ولدان	on TV / the radio	في التلفاز / الراديو
work hard	يعمل بجد	on Saturday evenings	في مساء أيام السبت
That's true!	هذا صحيح / حقيقي!	help in	يساعد في
make (a) noise	يحدث ضوضاء	play with	يعمل مع
for no money	بلا مقابل	arrive at	يصل إلى مكان صغير
		the same.. as	نفس.. مثل

Word Differences

call	يُسمى - يدعى	cool	بارد
diary	مفكرة - يوميات	dairy	مزرعة الألبان
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	cheese	جبنة
too	أيضاً	two	اثنان
son	ابن	sun	الشمس

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يوجد تجميع لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
meet	يقابل	met	met
win	يفوز	won	won
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
throw	يلقي - يرمى	threw	thrown
drive	يقود سيارة	drove	driven



Language Notes

1) call - (be) called

- call (v) ينادى / يتصل تليفونياً

Ex. I called the waiter and ordered lunch.

Ex. I called the police after the accident.

- (be) called (v) يُسمى

Ex. This baby is called Tamer.

يمكن أن تأتي **called** بدون **verb to be** ، وتكون هنا صفة.

Ex. A girl called Heba got a prize.

2) good - well

- good (adj) جيد (صفة)

Ex. They are good football players.

- well (adv) بطريقة جيدة (ظرف)

Ex. Clap for the football players. They played very well.

3) in - on

يستخدم حرف الجر **in** مع الشهور والسنين وفترات النهار المحتوية على كلمة **the** :

- in May - in 2002 - in the morning

يستخدم حرف الجر **on** مع الأيام والتواريخ:

Ex. I play basketball on Mondays.

Ex. Hassan was born on March 9th.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We like that _____ hotel.

- a well b good c a good d as good

2. He is really ill. We must _____ a doctor.

- a call b buy c cool d sell

3. A: When were you born?

B: _____ the first of May, 2010.

- a In b At c On d For



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (3)



Hello! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of my family.

My mum's name is Amira. She's a **teacher**⁽¹⁾. **Next to**⁽²⁾ her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both my **parents**⁽³⁾ are teachers at my school. They have one **daughter**⁽⁴⁾ - she's my **sister**⁽⁵⁾, Lamia, and she's 9 years old. And they have **two sons**⁽⁶⁾ - me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our **grandmother**^{(7)*} is 64 and she's **called**⁽⁸⁾ Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our **grandfather**⁽⁹⁾ - he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my **aunt**⁽¹⁰⁾. My uncle's called Marwan. He is a **doctor**⁽¹¹⁾. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my **cousin**⁽¹²⁾. It's his **birthday**⁽¹³⁾ today - he's 3 years old.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- معلمة
- ٢- بجوار
- ٣- الوالدان
- ٤- ابنة
- ٥- أخت
- ٦- إبنان
- ٧- جدة
- ٨- تُسمى
- ٩- جد
- ١٠- خالة
- ١١- طبيب
- ١٢- ابن عم
- ١٣- يوم ميلاد

Say it

correctly

* grandmother

⦿ لاحظ أن صوت (d) لا ينطق في هذه الكلمة

* radio ⦿ لاحظ أن صوت (a) في هذه الكلمة ينطق مثل صوت (a) في كلمة

(make)

SB Page (4)

An interview⁽¹⁾ with twin brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are **both**⁽²⁾ aged 12. They have the same parents and the same birthday. They're **twins**⁽³⁾!

What are your **hobbies**⁽⁴⁾?

Hazem : I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I **go swimming**⁽⁵⁾ on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.

Hatem : And he watches **football matches**⁽⁶⁾ on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

Hazem : I love football!

Hatem : I don't like football, but I like music. I play the **drums**⁽⁷⁾ and I listen to music.

Hazem : He plays the drums in a **band**⁽⁸⁾.

Do you have any hobbies that you both like?

Hazem : We play **chess**⁽⁹⁾ **together**⁽¹⁰⁾ on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

Hatem : Yes, that's **true**⁽¹¹⁾! And on Saturday afternoons we do **voluntary work**⁽¹²⁾.

What kind of voluntary work?

Hazem : We help in the children's hospital.

Hatem : We play games with the children and read them stories. It's **great**⁽¹³⁾!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- مقابلة شخصية
- ٢- كلاهما
- ٣- توأم
- ٤- هوايات
- ٥- يذهب للسباحة
- ٦- مباريات كرة القدم
- ٧- آلة الدرامز (الطبول)
- ٨- فرقة
- ٩- موسيقى
- ١٠- لعبة الشطرنج
- ١١- معا
- ١٢- حقيقي
- ١٣- عمل تطوعي
- ١٤- عظيم / رائع



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (5)

استمع إلى النص



Interviewer : Can I ask you some more questions?

Hazem : Yes, of course.

Interviewer : Hazem, when do you play basketball?

Hazem : I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.

Interviewer : And when do you play football?

Hazem : I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Sunday evenings.

Interviewer : When do you go swimming?

Hazem : I go swimming on Tuesdays.

Interviewer : Wow, you are **busy**⁽¹⁾! Hatem, when do you play the drums?

Hatem : I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.

Interviewer : What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays?

Hatem : I listen to music. I like **pop music**⁽²⁾.

Interviewer : What do you do on Saturdays?

Hatem : I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.

Interviewer : Thank you both.

Hazem : You're welcome.

Arabic Meaning

١- مشغول
٢- موسيقى البوب



WB Page (72)



استمع إلى النص

Hi! My name's Lara and this is my family. That's my brother. His name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are our parents. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. Her parents are my uncle and aunt. Their names are Imad and Dina. What about you? What's your name?

Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

An interview with Omar.

Interviewer : Can I ask you some questions?

Omar : Yes, of course.

Interviewer : When do you play the drums?

Omar : I play the drums ①

Interviewer : And when do you ② ?

Omar : I go swimming after school.

Interviewer : What do you do ③ Fridays?

Omar : ④ I like pop music.

Interviewer : Thanks for your time.

Omar : You're ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the name of Ali's and how old is he?

a grandmother

b grandfather

c sister

d daughter

SB

2. Hossam likes playing the piano in a
a sand **b** bank **c** band **d** hand
3. Ali plays the in his free time.
a drums **b** ducks **c** diaries **d** gums
4. Your is your mum or dad's sister. WB القليوبية / بنها ٢٠٢١
a uncle **b** grandmother **c** grandfather **d** aunt
5. Hani and Aly are They are brothers and aged 12. WB الأزهر الشريف / الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
a double **b** couple **c** twins **d** pairs
6. I like doing work. I like helping poor people for no money.
a busy **b** empty **c** cheap **d** voluntary
7. Amro is shy. He always gets nervous before
a classrooms **b** interviews **c** clubs **d** trips

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1. My favourite is playing chess. WB دمياط ٢٠٢٢
a hobby **b** subject **c** size **d** color
2. My father and mother are my WB إدارة سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
a grandchildren **b** parents **c** cousins **d** daughters
3. We watched an interesting film TV yesterday.
a at **b** from **c** on **d** with
4. My mum is a teacher. Dad is a teacher, WB SB
a to **b** too **c** two **d** tie
5. Your brother is your parent's WB
a daughter **b** sister **c** uncle **d** son
6. Our grandmother is 64 and she's Huda. WB SB
a cooled **b** sailed **c** called **d** killed
7. is a game for two people.
a Volleyball **b** Basketball **c** Football **d** Chess
8. Football, basketball and volleyball are
a sports **b** subjects **c** tools **d** cars
9. Maher voluntary work at a hospital. WB الأزهر الشريف / سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
a makes **b** does **c** swims **d** plays
10. What of voluntary work do you do? - I help poor people.
a kind **b** tape **c** top **d** team



Grammar

Possessive adjectives and pronouns صفات وضمائر الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل (تأتي قبل الفعل)	Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول (تأتي بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر)	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية (يأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك)	Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية (لا يأتي بعدها اسم)
I	me	my –	mine ملكي
He	him	his –	his ملكه
She	her	her –	hers ملكها
It	it	its –	- -
We	us	our –	ours ملكنا
You	you	your –	yours ملكك/ملككم
They	them	their –	theirs ملكهم

Ex. She likes eating fruits.

Ex. My father is proud of me.

Ex. That is my car.

Ex. That car is mine.

Ex. I saw him yesterday.

ملاحظات

١- ضمائر الفاعل تأتي قبل الفعل.

٢- صفات الملكية (my - his - her - its - our - your - their) يأتي بعدها (الاسم المملوك).

٣- ضمائر الملكية (mine - his - hers - ours - yours - theirs) لا يأتي بعدها اسم وتحل محل صفات الملكية والاسم المملوك.

Ex. I have this car. = It's my car. = It's mine.

Ex. We have this house. = It's our house. = It's ours.

٤- ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - it - us - you - them) تأتي بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر.

٥- نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام Whose لنسأل بها عن الملكية.

Ex. Whose pen is this?

- وللإجابة عن هذا السؤال يمكن أن نستخدم صفات وضمائر الملكية السابق شرحها:

Ex. This is my pen. (قلمي my pen)

Ex. This pen is mine. (ملكي mine)

ومن الممكن أن نستخدم (belong to) كما يلي:

اسم أو ضمير مفعول + belong (s) to + فاعل

Ex. This pen belongs to me.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Engy's car is red. _____ is blue.
 a My b Me c Mine d I
- My house is bigger than _____ house.
 a she b her c he d him
- They have a daughter. _____ is called Mona.
 a She b Her c Hers d He
- Why didn't you clean _____ room?
 a you're b you c yours d your

1- their / there

كلمة (their) هي صفة ملكية للضمير (they) بينما كلمة (there) ظرف بمعنى (هناك).

Ex. The children can't find **their** classroom.

Ex. Ali went **there** last week.



2- your / you're

كلمة (your) هي صفة ملكية للضمير (you) بينما (you're) هي اختصار لـ (you are).

Ex. Where can I find **your** bag? (صفة ملكية your)

Ex. **You're** taller than Mona. (You're = You are)

3- its / it's

كلمة (its) هي صفة ملكية للضمير (it) بينما (it's) هي اختصار لـ (it is).

Ex. I like your dog. **Its** hair is nice. (صفة ملكية Its)

Ex. A : Where is my cat?

B : **It's** there. (It's = It is)

Exercises on Lessons

1&2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- _____ new laptop is very expensive.
 a My b Me c I d Mine
- Hani and _____ can swim easily.
 a me b my c I d mine
- _____ brother is my friend.
 a You're b Yours c You d Your

الأزهر الشريف / الغربية ٢٠٢١

4. That is your room, Ali. It's
 a yours b you c you're d your
5. Clap for the football players; played very well. سوهاج / اخميم ٢٠٢٢
 a their b they c them d theirs
6. It's her car. often drives it. WB
 a Her b Hers c She d Mine
7. They aren't my shoes. are new. القليوبية / طوخ ٢٠٢١
 a Myself b Me c My d Mine

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Samy is me brother. القليوبية / شبين القناطر ٢٠٢١ (.....)
2. Leila likes hers mum. (.....)
3. The students didn't find they books. (.....)
4. This house belongs to us! It's his house. وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١ (.....)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1. The cat drank milk.
 a it's b it is c its d it
2. Throw the ball to, please. I am waiting. WB
 a I b me c my d mine
3. I like singing. mum sings with me.
 a I b Me c My d Mine
4. This is Heba's dress. It's القليوبية / الخانكة ٢٠٢١
 a hers b she c mine d her
5. This book belongs to me. It is كفر الشيخ / ابو تشت ٢٠٢٢
 a I b my c hers d mine
6. Did all the students take books?
 a they're b their c there d them
7. Omnia lent me new camera.
 a her b she c his d hers
8. Who offered this flower, Hala?
 a yours b your c you d our
9. This book is not It's Soha's.
 a my b yours c they d he
10. The books are They bought them yesterday.
 a his b hers c their d theirs

11. Mr Ali is teacher of English this year.

a us

b we

c yours

d our

12. These are Ahmed's books. They're

a you

b our

c his

d he

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Can me have my pen, please?

WB (.....)

2. That is Mai. Hers dog has a long tail.

(.....)

3. That bag is me and this one is yours.

جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١ (.....)

4. Mona and I visited their grandparents.

البحيرة / دمنهور ٢٠٢٢ (.....)

5. My brother found a blue pen. It wasn't his. It was my.

SB (.....)



Speaking

Talking about your family

الحديث عن عائلتك

• استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن عائلتك:

Ex. My parents **are** teachers.

Ex. We **live** in Giza.

Ex. My brother **is** 13 years old.

Ex. We **have** one cousin, Khadeeja.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

Amir is talking to Farid about his family.

Amir : Hello, Farid.

Farid : Hello, Amir.

Amir : Do you know that my **1** works in this hospital?

Farid : Really! What **2** ?

Amir : He is a doctor.

Farid : **3** your mother?

Amir : My mother is a **4**

Farid : What does she teach?

Amir : She teaches music.

Farid : You **5** a great family.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These brothers are the same age. They're

الشرقية / منشأة أبوعمر ٢٠٢١

a sisters

b cousins

c twins

d friends

2. Reading stories is my favourite

- a** hobby **b** game **c** subject **d** food

3. I really like my She is 68 years old.

- a** uncle **b** brother **c** grandfather **d** grandmother

4. Samy and Ahmed are angry. They can't find bags.

- a** they **b** them **c** their **d** we

5. Ahmed has a new bag. bag is wonderful.

- a** He **b** Her **c** Him **d** His

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Which apple is my? (.....)
2. Who house is this? (.....)
3. My car is bigger than your? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

SB

(الرجع إلى شرح كيفية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية في مقدمة الكتاب)

Your hobbies

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you have any hobbies? What are they?
- How often do you do them?
- Where do you do them?
- Why do you like these hobbies?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have three different hobbies.
- I like and
- I play on Mondays.
- I play in the club.
- makes my body strong.

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في كراسة التسميع.

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

orphan (n)	يتيم	city	مدينة (كبيرة)
adventure	مغامرة	mountain	جبل
attic	غرفة بأعلى المنزل/سندرة	goats	ماعز



Vocabulary

cheese	جبن	video call	مكالمة فيديو
else	أيضاً	bank	مصرف (بنك)
any	أي	hospital	مستشفى
beach	شاطئ	shop	محل
bread	خبز	like	مثل
right	على حق	flower	زهرة
sad	حزين	How long...?	كم مدة...؟
high	مرتفع	top	قمة/أعلى الشيء
young	صغير في السن	communicate (d)	يتواصل
airport	مطار	add (ed)	يضيف
park	متنزه	stay (ed)	يبقى/يقيم

Countries and cities

Morocco	دولة المغرب	Oman	دولة عُمان
Egypt	مصر	Cairo	مدينة القاهرة
South Africa	دولة جنوب إفريقيا	Cape Town	مدينة كيب تاون
France	دولة فرنسا	Paris	مدينة باريس
Switzerland	دولة سويسرا	Port Said	مدينة بور سعيد



Words & Meanings

goats	ماعز	- animals that are like sheep - mountain animals you can eat or get milk from
orphan	يتيم	a child with no mother or father
attic	غرفة بأعلى المنزل	a room at the top of a house
city	مدينة	a place with lots of houses, shops and people
adventure	مغامرة	an exciting activity

Expressions & Prepositions

come home	يأتي للمنزل	by bus	بالأوتوبيس
catch a plane	يلحق بطائرة	away from ...	بعيد عن...
would like + to + inf.	يريد أن...	at home	بالمنزل
talk on the phone	يتحدث في التلفون	look at	ينظر إلى
make a video call	يقوم بعمل مكالمة فيديو	at the top of ...	في أعلى...
have adventures	يمر بمغامرات	at the end of ...	في نهاية...
feel + صفة	يشعر بـ	lots of	كثير من
a child with no mother	طفل بلا أم	live with / in	يعيش مع / في
a place with lots of houses	مكان به منازل كثيرة	walk with	يمشي مع
		communicate with	يتواصل مع

Word Differences

city	مدينة كبيرة	town	مدينة صغيرة
top	قمة - أعلى الشيء	tap	صنبور (حنفية)
park	متنزه	bark	ينبح (كلب)
sheep	خروف	shape	شكل
flower	زهرة	flour	دقيق
country	دولة / بلد / قطر	century	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
have / has	يملك / لديه	had	had
take	يأخذ / يستغرق	took	taken
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
get	يحصل على	got	got
fly	يطير / يسافر جواً	flew	flown
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
catch	يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught	caught

Language Notes

1) take

• take + time + to + inf. يستغرق لكى

Ex. It **takes** a long time **to go** to school.

2) country - the country "countryside"

• country دولة / بلد / قطر

Ex. I love my country, Egypt, very much.

• The country "countryside" الريف

Ex. Life in the country is very quiet.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It a long time to walk home.

a takes

b gives

c does

d has

2. Life in is comfortable.

a country

b the country

c century

d circle



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (7)



استمع إلى النص

Sami : My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France⁽¹⁾. He goes to the airport⁽²⁾ on Sundays and he catches a plane to Paris. It takes five hours to fly⁽³⁾ there. And then, he catches a plane home to Egypt on Thursday evening. He works very hard⁽⁴⁾. On Saturdays we play football in the park and we play chess. I love my dad and I'm happy when he is at home.

Aya : My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa⁽⁵⁾. They live next to the beach⁽⁶⁾ in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours to fly there!

I talk to them on the phone but they don't have a computer so we can't make a video call⁽⁷⁾. I would like to see them every day but I can't.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- دولة فرنسا
- ٢- مطار
- ٣- يسافر جوا
- ٤- بجد
- ٥- دولة جنوب إفريقيا
- ٦- شاطئ
- ٧- مكالمة فيديو



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (8)

Heidi: by Johanna Spyri

Heidi is the story of an orphan⁽¹⁾ girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland⁽²⁾. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains⁽³⁾ and he has lots of goats⁽⁴⁾. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic⁽⁵⁾ of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread⁽⁶⁾ and cheese.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- يتيم
- ٢- سويسرا
- ٣- جبال
- ٤- ماعز
- ٥- غرفة أعلى المنزل
- ٦- خبز

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very **sad**⁽⁷⁾ to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of **adventures**⁽⁸⁾ in the city.

٧- حزين
٨- مغامرات

WB Page (74)

I am Hassan. My family lives in Alexandria, but my dad doesn't work in Egypt. He works in London. He goes to the airport on Sunday evenings and he catches a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I don't go to school, and my father doesn't work. We play chess or we go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My brother is three and he doesn't swim. He watches us!



Videoscript

SB Page (6)

Narrator : **Senet**⁽¹⁾ is a very old Egyptian game. You can see it in this picture. It is about 3,000 years old.

Narrator : Look at these people at the **Pharaonic Village**⁽²⁾ museum in Cairo. They like senet, too.

Narrator : Today, people play a game like senet. It's called chess.

Narrator : Two people play chess. Each person has got white or black **pieces**⁽³⁾. It is not an easy game. Some people play it for six hours or more!

Narrator : Bassem Amin is an Egyptian chess player. He is from Tanta and he is very famous. He is very good at chess.

Narrator : Chess is a **popular**⁽⁴⁾ game in Egypt. There are many chess clubs and some children have chess lessons after school. They also play it at home with their parents.

Narrator : Do you play chess?



Arabic Meaning

- ١- لعبة قديمة
- تشبه الشطرنج
- ٢- القرية
- الفرعونية
- ٣- قطع
- ٤- شعبي / محبوب

Exercises on Lessons

3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The two men climbed a _____ last week.

a mountain

b river

c city

d well

2. _____ are animals that are like sheep.

a Dinosaurs

b Goats

c Parrots

d Monkeys

المنوفية / شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٢

SB

3. Aswan and Cairo are big _____.

الجيزة / العجوزة ٢٠٢١

- a** countries **b** streets **c** cities **d** lakes

4. Last week, I had a lot of _____ in dream park.

القاهرة / الشروق ٢٠٢٢

- a** adventures **b** stories **c** animals **d** mountains

5. Heidi is a story of a/an _____ girl. She had no mother or father.

سوهاج / طهطا ٢٠٢٢

SB

- a** happy **b** careful **c** cheerful **d** orphan

6. A/An _____ is a room at the top of a house.

الغربية / السنطة ٢٠٢١

SB

- a** stair **b** attic **c** kitchen **d** hall

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي في حراسة الواجب المنزلي

1. A _____ is a place with lots of houses and shops.

SB

- a** mountain **b** forest **c** city **d** desert

2. Yasmin _____ happy when she won the prize.

- a** filled **b** fell **c** failed **d** felt

3. This film is very exciting; it is full of _____.

- a** units **b** adventures **c** attics **d** orphans

4. It _____ twelve hours to fly to London.

الغربية / قطور ٢٠٢١

- a** takes **b** makes **c** gives **d** talks

5. Everest is a very high _____.

- a** desert **b** mountain **c** river **d** sky

6. He went so fast to _____ the plane to London.

- a** catch **b** miss **c** lose **d** hold

7. We always put our old things in the _____ at the top of the house.

- a** living room **b** dining room **c** bathroom **d** attic

8. There is snow _____ the top of that mountain.

- a** in **b** at **c** to **d** for

9. Dolphins use sounds to _____ with each other.

- a** communicate **b** punctuate **c** educate **d** transport

10. Salma is _____ a video call now.

القليوبية / طوخ ٢٠٢٢

- a** delivering **b** doing **c** making **d** eating



Grammar

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Form التكوين

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + inf. مصدر الفعل + s / es / ies

Ex. I **play** football on Fridays.

Ex. Hassan **comes** late.

١- يضاف للفعل (es) إذا انتهى بـ (ss / ch / sh / o / x)

cross → crosses

go → goes

watch → watches

do → does



٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies):

carry → carries

study → studies

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ y + حرف متحرك تبقى (y) ونضيف (s):

play → plays

buy → buys

هناك أفعال لها شكل خاص في زمن المضارع البسيط وتحفظ كما هي:

1 be يكون

(I)	am
(He / She / It)	is
(We / You / They)	are

2 have يمتلك

(I / You / We / They)	have
(He / She / It)	has

Negative النفي

• نفي الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلي:

(I / You / We / They / اسم جمع) → don't + inf.

(He / She / It / اسم مفرد) → doesn't + inf.

Ex. I **don't like** bad people.

Ex. She **doesn't watch** football matches.

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن:

Ex. I **am** twelve. / He **lives** in Cairo.

١- حقائق (facts)

Ex. She **watches** TV at night.

٢- عادات (habits)

Ex. They usually **sleep** early.

٣- الأعمال المعتادة (الروتينية) (daily routines)

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year) / always / usually /
often / sometimes / occasionally / never

Ex. Hala **always gets up** at six o'clock.

١- يمكن أن ننفي الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط بوضع كلمة (**never**) قبل الفعل دون تغيير فيه.

Ex. He **never** goes to school late.

٢- تذكر أن فعل (**Be** يكون) يأتي دائماً قبل (**never**).

Ex. Dad **is never** late for work.



Question السؤال

للسؤال بـ «هل...؟» في زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم **Do / Does** كما يلي:

Do + I / you / we / they اسم جمع + inf...?

Does + he / she / it اسم مفرد + inf?

Ex. **Do** you usually **watch** TV?

- **Yes**, I do. الإجابة في الاثبات

- **No**, I don't. الإجابة في النفي

Ex. **Does** he sometimes **listen** to music?

- **Yes**, he does. الإجابة في الاثبات

- **No**, he doesn't. الإجابة في النفي

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة السابقة مع وضع كلمة الاستفهام في أول السؤال.

Ex. **What** do they watch?

- They watch **films**.

Ex. **How many** lessons does he have?

- He has **eight** lessons.

Exercises on Lessons

3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I listen to music.

a aren't

b doesn't

c don't

d isn't

SB

2. he go to school late?

a Do

b Is

c Are

d Does

3. I the drums.

a play

b playing

c is playing

d plays

SB

4. He swimming.

a like

b likes

c liking

d to like

الجيزة / العجوزة ٢٠٢١

5. We go to school on Fridays.

a never

b sometimes

c always

d often

إدارة دمياط ٢٠٢٢

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What time does you get up? (.....)

2. They always helps their father. (.....)

سوهاج / طهطا ٢٠٢١

3. Sameh usually study English at night. (.....)

4. He doesn't like football. He always plays it. (.....)

البحيرة / دمنهور ٢٠٢٢

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

- What sport you like? الشرقية / أبو كبير ٢٠٢٢
 a don't b doesn't c aren't d not
- Amal is very good at English. She it every day.
 a study b studies c studying d is studying
- We football on Tuesdays. كفر الشيخ / أبو تشت ٢٠٢٢
 a play usually b plays usually c usually plays d usually play
- Shady usually up at 6:45. الغربية / قطور ٢٠٢١
 a get b is getting c getting d gets
- The school bus always near my house.
 a stops b stop c stopping d is stopping
- My daughter the drums very well.
 a plays b play c playing d are playing
- My aunt always me text messages. إدارة أسبوط ٢٠٢٢
 a send b sends c to send d sending
- We always swimming on Saturdays.
 a practise b practises c practised d practising
- They to work by bus every day.
 a going b go c goes d are going
- Where your father work? طنطا ٢٠٢٢
 a is b does c do d are

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Do he play football on Mondays? SB (.....)
- My cats doesn't sleep here. (.....)
- I play always the drums. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢ (.....)
- Hatem don't like sport. الأزهر الشريف / الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢١ (.....)

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

Karam and Nady are talking about the story "Heidi".

Karam : What are you reading, Nady?

Nady : I'm reading a story?

Karam : What 1

Nady : It's called "Heidi" ?

Karam : What is it about?

Nady : 2 an orphan girl.

Karam : Who does she live with?

Nady : She 3 her grandfather.

Karam : Is it an 4 story?

Nady : Yes, it 5 very interesting.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children had a/an in the forest. It was very dangerous.

- a** class **b** adventure **c** happiness **d** work

2. Some people spend hours talking phones.

- a** at **b** to **c** on **d** for

3. Salma to school on Fridays.

- a** never goes **b** goes never **c** never go **d** go never

4. He doesn't to music.

- a** listens **b** listened **c** listen **d** listening

5. the children like playing chess?

- a** Do **b** Does **c** Is **d** Are

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Why do Emad come to school late every day? (.....)
- This shirt is expensive, it cost 500 pounds. (.....)
- Ihab doesn't plays chess. (.....)
- There aren't any water in the bottle. (.....)
- Are your father a teacher? (.....)

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في كراسة التسميع.



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

gymnast	لاعبة جمباز	busy	مشغول / مزدحم
gymnastics	لعبة الجمباز	achieve (d)	يحقق / ينجز
athlete	لاعب رياضي	balance (d)	يوازن
the Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	train (ed)	يتدرب



Vocabulary

athletics	ألعاب قوى	mathematics	الرياضيات
physics	مادة الفيزياء	nearby	قريب
difficult	صعب	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
healthy	صحي	age	عمر
dream	حلم	team	فريق
best friend	أفضل صديق	top (adj)	أفضل / أول
family tree	شجرة العائلة	like (d)	يحب
Damietta	مدينة دمياط		



Words & Meanings

train	يتدرب	practise ⁽¹⁾ a sport	Arabic Meaning
busy	مشغول	spending a lot of time doing things	١- يمارس
gymnast	لاعبة جمباز	a person who does gymnastics	٢- مهارات
gymnastics	لعبة الجمباز	a sport which has a lot of different skills ⁽²⁾ , such as jumping	

Expressions & Prepositions

have the same hobbies	لديهم نفس الهوايات	in the evenings	في المساء
study hard	يذاكر بجد	for five hours	لمدة خمسة ساعات
achieve a dream	يحقق حلم	move to	ينتقل إلى
stay strong	يبقى قوي	fish with rice	سمك مع الأرز

Word Differences

athlete	لاعب رياضي	athletics	ألعاب القوى
hard	بجد	hardly	بصعوبة - بالكاد
top	قمة	tap	صنبور (حنفية)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
find	يجد	found	found
lose	يخسر	lost	lost
go	يذهب	went	gone
swim	يسبح	swam	swum

Language Notes

1) gymnastics - physics - mathematics - athletics

athletics / mathematics / gymnastics / physics مثل ics تنتهي بـ بعض الكلمات التي تعامل كمفرد:

Ex. Gymnastics **is** a difficult sport, but **it** makes me happy.

2) make

• make + مفعول + inf. يجعل

Ex. The teacher **made** Ali **write** the lesson again.

• make + مفعول + صفة يجعل

Ex. The good news **made** my brother **happy**.

• make + مفعول + شيء يصنع ل.....

Ex. I **made** my sister a toy horse.

3) so - so that

• so + subject + verb لذلك (للتعبير عن نتيجة)

Ex. He was ill, **so** he didn't go to school.

• so + adj جدًا

Ex. The tea is **so** hot.

• so that + فعل لكي

Ex. Habiba **eats** healthy food **so that she can** stay strong.

Ex. Habiba **ate** healthy food **so that she could** stay strong.

يأتي بعد **so that** التكوين (can/ will + inf.) إذا كان النصف الأول من الجملة مضارعاً ويأتي التكوين (could / would + inf.) إذا كان النصف الأول من الجملة ماضياً.

لاحظ أن

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sad film made the girl

- a cries b crying c cry d to cry

2. Ahmed trains hard so that he achieve his dream.

- a could b would c did d can

5. Physics a difficult school subject.

- a is b are c have d were

5. He couldn't answer the questions, he asked for help.

- a to b so c cause d reason



Reading

SB Page (10)

Habiba Marzouk achieves⁽¹⁾ her dreams

Habiba Marzouk is a **gymnast**⁽²⁾. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family.

Habiba has a very **busy**⁽³⁾ life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she **trains**⁽⁴⁾ for five or six hours. She is a **top gymnast**⁽⁵⁾ in Africa and she wants to go to **the Olympics**⁽⁶⁾.

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats **healthy**⁽⁷⁾ food so that she can stay **strong**⁽⁸⁾. **Gymnastics**⁽⁹⁾ is a difficult sport but it makes her happy.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- تحقق
- ٢- لاعبة جمباز
- ٣- مشغول
- ٤- تتدرب
- ٥- افضل لاعب جمباز
- ٦- الألعاب الأولمبية
- ٧- صحي
- ٨- قوي
- ٩- لعبة الجمباز

SB Page (11)

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I **live**⁽¹⁾ in Aswan with my family. My **parents**⁽²⁾ are teachers. My brother Ali is 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I **listen to**⁽³⁾ music with my brothers. Ali plays football at school and he watches football **matches**⁽⁴⁾ on TV. Khaled goes swimming every Friday. There is a **swimming pool**⁽⁵⁾ **near**⁽⁶⁾ our house. My best friend is called Aya. We play basketball at school, and we're both in the school **team**⁽⁷⁾. Our team is very good!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- يعيش
- ٢- والدان
- ٣- يستمع إلى
- ٤- مباريات
- ٥- حمام سباحة
- ٦- بالقرب من
- ٧- فريق

WB Page (77)

My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in **Damietta**⁽¹⁾. Her **favourite**⁽²⁾ food is fish. I like cheese. We have **the same**⁽³⁾ hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays **chess**⁽⁴⁾, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- مدينة دمياط
٢- مفضل
٣- نفس الشيء
٤- لعبة
الشطرنج

Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Her dream is to go to the She is a gymnast. القاهرة / الشروق ٢٠٢٢
 a Physics b Olympics c Mathematics d Gymnastics
- I can't meet you today. I'm too
 a free b empty c busy d helpful
- Ali very hard. He wants to get the first prize.
 a builds b trains c breaks d sleeps
- You can't work all the time. You need to your life. البحيرة / دمنهور ٢٠٢٢
 a balance b achieve c make d do
- Habiba is a top She wants to go to the Olympics. SB
 a gymnast b viewer c teacher d worker

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

- When you do exercise and eat well, you become المنوفية / شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٢
 a unhealthy b healthy c dirty d ugly
- Hassan works hard to his dreams.
 a break b lose c miss d achieve
- The opposite of "free" is
 a fast b careful c busy d sad
- A/An should have a strong body.
 a athlete b writer c singer d scientist
- is a difficult sport, but it makes your body strong. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
 a Gymnastics b Physics c Mathematics d Gymnast
- Athletes work hard to their studies, their sport and their friends and family. SB
 a break b answer c practise d balance

7. Hassan is the captain of our football

- a** classroom **b** player **c** team **d** sport

8. Bassim Amin is a chess player.

- a** bottom **b** top **c** tape **d** button



Speaking

Asking and answering questions about people

السؤال والاجابة عن الأشخاص

تذكر تكوين السؤال في زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلي:

1 2 3 4 5
الكلمة (كلمة إستفهام) → فعل مساعد / ناقص → فاعل → فعل رئيسي → التكملة?

Ex. What's his/her name?

- يمكن استخدام الصيغة السابقة لعمل أسئلة في

Ex. Where does he/she live?

زمن المضارع البسيط عن الأشخاص.

Ex. Do you listen to music?

Ex. His name is Alaa.

تذكر استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط

Ex. He lives in Al-Haram.

في الإجابة عن الأسئلة السابقة

Ex. Yes, I do.

General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7



1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

Dalida is talking about her cousin.

Dalida : This is a photo of my cousin.

Reem : 1 ?

Dalida : It's Fares.

Reem : 2 ?

Dalida : He's 14 years old.

Reem : Where does he live?

Dalida : He 3 in Giza.

Reem : What 4 does he like?

Dalida : He likes fish and rice.

Reem : 5 sport does he like?

Dalida : He likes basketball.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is a difficult sport.

- a** Gymnastics **b** Physics **c** Mathematics **d** Gymnast

Unit 1 My family and me

2. I study five or six hours a day.

a at

b on

c with

d for

3. We should eat food to keep fit.

a healthy

b bad

c cheap

d unhealthy

4. There're many people in my family

a leave

b tree

c flower

d land

5. The classroom is There are 80 students.

a free

b great

c busy

d balanced

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

SB

A person in your family

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Who is your favourite person?

- What does he / she do?

- What does he / she do every day?

- Why is he / she your favourite person?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- He / She is a/an

- He / She trains / works for

- He / She wants to be a/an

- I hope I will be like him / her.

- He / She eats healthy food to

Excel Yourself?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. Hamada careful when he drives.

a always has

b always is

c has always

d is always

2. I borrowed Ali's car because was at the mechanic's.

a my

b mine

c me

d I

3. The twins now ten years old.

a are

b is

c have

d has

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. When did you buy you're mobile?

(.....)

2. I couldn't buy the mobile because it's price was high.

(.....)

Unit 1

Review



Vocabulary

male	مذكر / ذكر	interview	مقابلة شخصية / حوار	aunt	عمة - خالة
female	مؤنث / أنثى	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي	uncle	عم - خال
drum	طبل	band	فرقة موسيقية	attic	غرفة بأعلى المنزل
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	twins	توائم	adventure	مغامرة
brother	أخ	sister	أخت	goats	ماعز
grandfather	جد	grandmother	جدة	city	مدينة
son	ابن	daughter	ابنة	mountain	جبل
great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر	mum = mother	أم	busy	مشغول / مزدحم
dad = father	أب	parent	أحد الوالدين	the Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية
athlete	لاعب رياضي	gymnast	لاعبة جمباز	hobby	هواية
orphan	يتيم	gymnastics	لعبة الجمباز	achieve (d)	يحقق / ينجز
cousin		great-grandchildren	أبناء الأحفاد	balance (d)	يوازن
				train (ed)	يتدرب



Grammar

1) Possessive adjectives and pronouns

Possessive adjectives صفات ملكية يتبعها اسم	my	his	her	its	our	your	their
Possessive pronouns ضمائر ملكية لا يتبعها اسم	mine	his	hers	-	ours	yours	theirs

2) The present simple tense

Subject الفاعل	I / You / We / They / اسم جمع	He / She / It / اسم مفرد
Form	inf.	inf. + s / es / ies
Negative	don't + inf.	doesn't + inf.
Question	Do + فاعل + inf...? (كلمة استفهام)	Does + فاعل + inf...? (كلمة استفهام)
Keywords	every...../ always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / never	



Speaking

1 Talking about your family

الحديث عن عائلتك

• استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن عائلتك:

Ex. My parents **are** teachers.

Ex. We **live** in Giza.

Ex. My brother **is** 13 years old.

Ex. We **have** one cousin, Khadeeja.

2 Asking and answering questions about people

السؤال والاجابة عن الأشخاص

تذكر تكوين السؤال في زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلي:

① (كلمة إستفهام) → ② فعل مساعد/ ناقص → ③ فاعل → ④ فعل رئيسي → ⑤ التكملة ؟

Ex. What's his/her name?

Ex. Where **does** he/she live?

Ex. **Do** you listen to music?

- يمكن استخدام الصيغة السابقة لعمل أسئلة في زمن المضارع البسيط عن الأشخاص.

Ex. His name **is** Alaa.

Ex. He **lives** in Al-Haram.

Ex. Yes, I **do**.

تذكر استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط في الإجابة عن الأسئلة السابقة

General Exercises on Unit 1

1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Hana and Nadia are talking about hobbies.

Hana : Hello! Nadia.

Nadia : Hello! Hana.

Hana : ① favourite hobby?

Nadia : I like sports. I play tennis ② Tuesdays.

Hana : ③ do you play it?

Nadia : In the club.

Hana : Who do you play with?

Nadia : With ④ friend Faten.

Hana : Do you have any other hobbies?

Nadia : Yes, ⑤ reading.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The children took _____ books from the teacher.
 a they b their c theirs d mine
- That television is _____.
 a our b we c ours d us
- I don't _____ to music. القليوبية / طوخ ٢٠٢٢
 a listens b listen c listening d listened
- We _____ go to school on Fridays. الأزهر الشريف / الغربية ٢٠٢١
 a never b ago c ever d always
- Mona _____ go to school on Friday. إدارة بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢
 a don't b doesn't c isn't d hasn't
- Mum never _____ football matches on TV.
 a listens b writes c watches d runs
- Your _____ is your aunt or uncle's child. كفر الشيخ / قلين ٢٠٢٢
 a son b cousin c grandfather d brother
- Samar wants to join the school music _____. القاهرة / الشروق ٢٠٢٢
 a pond b band c hole d dream
- The _____ asked the actor very good questions.
 a interviewer b interview c review d view
- A/An _____ has no mother or father. WB
 a gymnast b engineer c teacher d orphan
- Ahmed is a top tennis player. He wants to go to the _____ one day.
 a mall b Olympics c shop d attic
- I have a very _____ life. I can't find enough time to meet my friends.
 a busy b long c free d tall
- We'd like to have fish _____ rice for lunch.
 a about b of c with d on
- A _____ is very high. WB
 a river b valley c mountain d cave
- Hany loves basketball. He _____ it every day. WB
 a does b plays c goes d listens

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- She's my mum. I'm hers son. SB (_____)
- The girl like her teacher so much. (_____)
- It is me book. It is mine. كفر الشيخ / قلين ٢٠٢٢ (_____)
- Tell me about yours family. SB (_____)
- A:** Is there a mouse? **B:** Yes, there are. القاهرة / الشروق ٢٠٢٢ (_____)
- We play games with the children and read they stories. الشرقية / ابو كبير ٢٠٢٢ (_____)
- Which car is your? (_____)

8. He **never is** late for school.

أسوان / ادفو ٢٠٢١ ()

9. Every day, Fatima **help** with the housework.

القليوبية / طوخ ٢٠٢١ ()

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

[مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب]

Your best friend

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you have a friend? How old is he / she?
- Where does he / she live?
- What are his / her hobbies?
- What does he / she like / dislike?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have
- His / Her name is
- He/ She plays
- He / She likes
- He/ She doesn't like

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker's family is

- a** young **b** big **c** fast **d** old

2. The speaker's father is a

- a** doctor **b** teacher **c** student **d** pilot

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Salim :

Hamdy : My grandfather's name is Farid.

2- Zeinab : What does your father do?

Ashraqat :

3- Mariam : What is your favourite hobby?

Khadeeja :

4- Teacher : Who is your best friend?

Walaa :

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Hossam. My family and I live in the city. My father works in a big company. He is a manager. He likes his job very much. My mother is a doctor. She works at a nearby hospital. My grandparents live in the countryside. They are old. I am very proud of them. My grandfather is a farmer. He always gets up early to work on his farm. My grandmother is a housewife. She is really kind.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Hossam's father work?

2. Why does Hossam's grandfather get up early?

3. What do you think Hossam's grandfather does on his farm?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Hossam's ----- helps sick people.

a father

b mother

c sister

d grandfather

5. Hossam is very ----- of his grandparents.

a angry

b careless

c hungry

d proud

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"Your family"

الشرقية / اولاد صقر / الأزهر الشريف ٢٠٢١

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- How big is your family?

- What does your father do?

- Where does he work?

- What does your mother do?

- Where does she work?

- How many brothers and sisters do you have?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have family

- My father is

- He works

- My mother is.

- She works

Unit 1 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Hazem plays football on

- a** Monday **b** Sunday **c** Tuesday **d** Thursday

2. Ali likes

- a** basketball **b** volleyball **c** tennis **d** football

3. Ali plays the

- a** violin **b** drums **c** piano **d** guitar

4. Hazem plays chess with his

- a** parents **b** grandparents **c** friends **d** teachers

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Youssef asks Hazem about his family.

Youssef : Hi, Hazem. Can I ask you about your family?

Hazem : Sure.

Youssef : What is your father's ①

Hazem : He is called Amgad.

Youssef : ② is he?

Hazem : He's 39 years old.

Youssef : ③ your mum do?

Hazem : She is a ④ in a big school.

Youssef : Do you have any ⑤ ?

Hazem : Yes, I have one cousin.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

WB

My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in Damietta. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too. We live happily with our parents. My father is a teacher. My mother is a teacher, too. They work in the same school. They walk to the school every day. It's near our house.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What do Nabila and Omar like?
.....
2. Who does Omar live with?
.....
3. When do Nabila and Omar go swimming?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nabila likes fish but Omar likes
a fish, too
b cheese
c chess
d basketball
5. Nabila is Omar's
a cousin
b best friend
c twin
d uncle
6. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a Omar and Nabila
b the family
c the schools
d the parents

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can get milk and cheese from a/an
a elephant
b goat
c giraffe
d monkey
2. A / An is always at the top of the house.
a bathroom
b kitchen
c office
d attic
3. A football is a game for 22 people.
a match
b ball
c club
d player
4. Our parents are proud of because we work hard at school.
a my
b we
c I
d us
5. Omnia never to work on time. She is always late.
a come
b comes
c coming
d is coming

WB

WB

WB

WB

6. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go and meet

- a** her **b** him **c** he **d** his

7. My father and mother are my

- a** grandchildren **b** parents **c** cousins **d** daughters

WB الأزهر الشريف / الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

8. Samar wants to join the school music

- a** pond **b** band **c** hole **d** dream

اسيوط ٢٠٢٢

9. A person is always doing something.

- a** brave **b** funny **c** busy **d** friendly

دمياط ٢٠٢٢

10. I like reading stories.

- a** adventure **b** interview **c** twin **d** diary

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does you play chess?

SB (.....)

2. The girls met there friends at the club.

(.....)

3. I can't find mine mobile anywhere.

(.....)

4. Sleem don't play tennis after school.

دمياط ٢٠٢٢ (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Your usual week

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you do every day?

- What do you do in the evenings?

- How often do you do sports?

- How often do you do voluntary work?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I usually get up at o'clock

- I play on and

- I go swimming on

- I like watching on TV.

New Hello!

Prep. 1



UNIT 2 It's my favourite subject

Objectives

Reading:

Descriptions of schools around the world

Writing:

A paragraph about your journey to school; A paragraph about your daily life

Listening:

A discussion about timetables

Speaking:

Asking and answering about school and timetables

Language:

Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and s'

Life Skills:

Critical thinking; self-management

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

library	مكتبة (للقرأة واستعارة الكتب)	bell	جرس
playground	ملعب/ فناء	hall	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)
typical	نموذجي (معتاد)		

Adverbs of frequency

always	دائماً	sometimes	أحياناً
usually	عادةً	never	أبداً
often	غالباً		

School Subjects

maths	مادة الرياضيات	PE (Physical Education)	التربية البدنية (الرياضية)
social studies	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	drama	مادة الفن المسرحي
science	مادة العلوم	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
Arabic	اللغة العربية	home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلي
art	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)	music	التربية الموسيقية
computer studies	مادة الحاسب الآلي	religion	التربية الدينية



Vocabulary

difference	اختلاف	How often...?	كم عدد المرات.....؟
break	فترة استراحة/ فسحة	the world	العالم
thanks	شكراً	Kenya	دولة كينيا
timetable	جدول الحصص	Nairobi	مدينة نيروبي (عاصمة دولة كينيا)
way	طريقة	road	طريق
quarter	رُبُع	busy	مزدحم/ مشغول
half	نصف	trip	رحلة قصيرة
past	و (للساعة)	flying	الطيران
to	إلا (للساعة)	head teacher	ناظر المدرسة
finally	أخيراً	travel (led)	يسافر
daily	يوميّ	start (ed)	يبدأ
What time....?	ما الوقت.....؟	finish (ed)	ينتهي/ ينهي
usual	معتاد		



Words & Meanings

library	مكتبة	- a place where you can borrow ⁽¹⁾ or read books - You can find a lot of books here	Arabic Meaning ١- يستعير ٢- شيء ٣- التمثيل ٤- الطهي
playground	ملعب - فناء	- a place outside where children at school can play	
bell	جرس	- an object ⁽²⁾ that makes a noise when you ring it - It rings when a lesson starts and finishes.	
hall	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)	- a very big room for a lot of students and teachers - a large room where people can meet together	
drama	مادة الأدب المسرحي	- the subject of how to learn about acting ⁽³⁾	
home economics	مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي	- the subject for learning about cooking ⁽⁴⁾ and skills for the home	
typical	نموذجي (معتاد)	- usual	

Expressions & Prepositions

have breakfast	يتناول طعام الإفطار	good at	جيد في
have four lessons	لديه أربعة دروس	around the world	حول العالم
get home	يصل للمنزل	for me	بالنسبة لي
do the homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي	get up	يستيقظ - يصحو
watch TV	يشاهد التلفاز	at about ten	في حوالي الساعة العاشرة
It is time for	حان وقت	at break	في فترة الاستراحة
tell the time	يخبر عن الوقت	talk to / with	يتحدث إلى / مع
take a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً	go to bed	يذهب للنوم
See you later .	أراك لاحقاً.	on a Tuesday	في يوم من أيام الثلاثاء
		far away	بعيد

Word Differences

library	مكتبة «للقراءة - للاستعارة»	bookshop	مكتبة «لبيع الكتب»
bell	جرس	bill	فاتورة
hall	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)	hole	ثقب - حفرة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
see	يرى	saw	seen
ring	يرن	rang	rung
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
tell	يخبر	told	told



Language Notes

1) drive - ride

- drive (v) يقود (سيارة أو أتوبيس)

Ex. I can drive a car.

- drive (someone) to يوصل (شخص) بالسيارة

Ex. I drove Sameh to school yesterday.

- drive to يذهب لمكان بالسيارة

Ex. I drove to Alexandria last week.

- ride (v) (a horse / a camel / a bike / a bus) يركب (حيواناً/ دراجة/ أتوبيس)

Ex. Ali rode a very large camel.

2) trip - voyage - flight - picnic

- trip رحلة قصيرة (للاستمتاع أو لغرض معين)

a boat trip - a school trip - a business trip

Ex. We took a boat trip around the island.

- voyage رحلة (بحرية)

Ex. The voyage along the Red Sea took a month.

- flight رحلة (جوية)

Ex. At last we arrived at the airport. It was a long flight.

- picnic نزهة خلوية (في الهواء الطلق)

Ex. We had a picnic when the weather was nice.

3) by - in - on

- نستخدم by - in - on مع وسائل المواصلات كما يلي:

1- نستخدم by أمام كل وسائل المواصلات إذا لم يأتي بينهما فاصل.

by car - by train - by plane - by boat - by ship - by bus - by bike

لكننا نقول on foot بمعنى سيراً على الأقدام

2- إذا جاء بينهما فاصل مثل (a / the) أو أى صفة ملكية أو (s) الملكية:

نستخدم in مع (car - taxi)

in (a / the / my) car - in (a / the) taxi.

ونستخدم on مع باقى وسائل المواصلات.

on the bus - on the train - on a bike - on my horse - on Ahmed's bike

4) computer studies / social studies

- تذكر أن (computer studies / social studies) هي أسماء مواد وتعامل كمفرد:

Ex. Social studies **is** my favourite subject.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- During its _____, the plane fell into the sea.
a picnic **b** trip **c** flight **d** voyage
- A:** How did you go to the cinema?
B: _____ a taxi.
a By **b** In **c** On **d** At
- Tourists like to _____ camels at the Giza Pyramids.
a drive **b** run **c** ride **d** walk
- A:** What is your favourite school subject?
B: Social studies _____ my favourite.
a is **b** are **c** were **d** have



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (12)

Arabic Meaning

١- درس

٢- بعد

٣- مفضل

٤- مادة دراسية

٥- مادة الرياضيات

٦- مادة الدراسات

الاجتماعية

٧- مادة العلوم



Do we have an English **lesson**⁽¹⁾ tomorrow?



Yes. It's **after**⁽²⁾ Arabic.



Thanks. What's your **favourite**⁽³⁾ **subject**⁽⁴⁾?



I like **maths**⁽⁵⁾. Tuesday is my favourite day because we have two maths lessons! 😊 What's your favourite subject?



Hmm 🤔... I think my favourite subjects are **social studies**⁽⁶⁾ and **science**⁽⁷⁾.

Daily life around the world

"I'm Akeyo. I live in **Nairobi**⁽²⁾, in **Kenya**⁽³⁾. This is a **typical**⁽⁴⁾ day for me. On school days I **get up**⁽⁵⁾ at half past six. I usually have **breakfast**⁽⁶⁾ with my family. My school is **far away**⁽⁷⁾, so we never walk there. My mum and dad **drive**⁽⁸⁾ us there. It always takes a long time because the **roads**⁽⁹⁾ are **busy**⁽¹⁰⁾. When we hear the **bell**⁽¹¹⁾ at eight o'clock, we go to the school **hall**⁽¹²⁾. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the **playground**⁽¹³⁾, but sometimes we go to the **library**⁽¹⁴⁾ to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have **lunch**⁽¹⁵⁾ at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I **get home**⁽¹⁶⁾, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day!"



Arabic Meaning

- ١- يومي
- ٢- مدينة نيروبي
- ٣- دولة كينيا
- ٤- نموذجي
- ٥- يستيقظ
- ٦- الإفطار
- ٧- بعيدة
- ٨- يوصل
- ٩- بالسيارة
- ١٠- الطريق
- ١١- مزدحم
- ١٢- جرس
- ١٣- ردهة
- ١٤- ملعب - فناء
- ١٥- مكتبة
- ١٦- الغداء
- ١٧- يصل للمنزل



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



Amal : I like the new **timetable**⁽¹⁾. What's your favourite day, Injy?

Injy : I like Thursday. We have social studies first on Thursday. Then we have English and then we go to science. That's my favourite subject.

Amal : My favourite day's today. We have maths first and second lesson after **break**⁽²⁾ today. I love maths! Then we have science and **art**⁽³⁾.

Injy : I like art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow?

Amal : English, then **religion**⁽⁴⁾ is next, then Arabic and then **home economics**⁽⁵⁾. After break, we have social studies. Then we have science and **computer studies**⁽⁶⁾. Finally, we have **music**⁽⁷⁾.

Injy : When do we have **drama**⁽⁸⁾?

Amal : That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now! See you later!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- جدول الحصص
- ٢- فترة استراحة
- ٣- التربية الفنية
- ٤- التربية الدينية
- ٥- الاقتصادي المنزلي
- ٦- مادة الحاسب الآلي
- ٧- التربية الموسيقية
- ٨- مادة الفن المسرحي



SB Page (13)

استمع إلى النص



- 1 A quarter* past ten / Ten fifteen
- 2 Half past twelve
- 3 Half past five
- 4 Twenty - five past seven / Seven twenty - five
- 5 Five to twelve / Eleven fifty - five
- 6 A quarter to nine / Eight forty - five



Say it
correctly

* quarter four ينطق الجزء الملون (uar) مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة



Videoscript

SB Page (14)

Narrator :

In Africa, America, Asia⁽¹⁾, and Europe most children between the ages of four and eighteen go to school. They often study subjects such as maths, Arabic and English. Students study in the morning and sometimes in the afternoon, too. Some children go to school from Sunday to Thursday. Other children go to school from Monday to Friday. When they finish school, some students choose to go to university⁽²⁾. Some of the most important universities in Africa and the Arab region⁽³⁾ are in Egypt. There is the Al-Azhar University⁽⁴⁾. This is one of the oldest universities in the world. And there is Cairo University in Giza. Here, people study subjects like art, science and computer studies. Do you want to go to university? Which subjects do you want to study at university?

Arabic Meaning

- ١- قارة آسيا
- ٢- جامعة
- ٣- المنطقة العربية
- ٤- جامعة الأزهر

Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman is talking to Salah.

Ayman : Hello, Salah. How are you?

Salah : I'm fine, thanks.

Ayman : Do we ① a science lesson tomorrow?

Salah : Yes, it's after break.

Ayman : ② your favourite subject?

Salah : ③ I like to learn about numbers.

Ayman : What is ④ ?

Salah : I like Tuesday. We have maths, science and English.

Ayman : Do you like home ⑤ ?

Salah : Yes, I like to learn about cooking and skills for the home.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I can hear the It's time for the English lesson.
a bell **b** ball **c** hall **d** radio الشرقية / أبو كبيرة ٢٠٢٢
- Ali likes numbers so much. So, he is excellent at
a art **b** maths **c** music **d** social studies
- On a weekend, I visit my grandmother.
a typical **b** careful **c** helpful **d** famous WB سوهاج / إخميم ٢٠٢٢
- We sometimes go to the school to read books.
a hall **b** bell **c** uniform **d** library إدارة دمياط ٢٠٢٢
- Ahmed likes to draw and paint during the lessons.
a music **b** science **c** drama **d** art
- A is a very big room for a lot of students and teachers. SB
a hall **b** hole **c** hill **d** wall

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- How long is the at Amal and Injy's school?
a ruler **b** world **c** break **d** student
- We have our lessons at the laboratory (المعمل) next to class 2A.
a science **b** maths **c** Arabic **d** drama
- is the main language of Arab people.
a French **b** Spanish **c** English **d** Arabic
- In a school, students play games in a SB
a playground **b** theatre **c** museum **d** library
- Heba learned how to cook in the lesson.
a music **b** art **c** home economics **d** Arabic المنوفية / شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٢
- and science are school subjects.
a Social studies **b** Timetables **c** Trips **d** Bells إدارة أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
- A:** When do you home, Ahmed? **B:** At 3 p.m.
a build **b** get **c** break **d** take
- For homework, we often read books from the WB
a street **b** house **c** playground **d** library
- It always takes a long time to go to school because the roads are here.
a empty **b** clean **c** careful **d** busy
- All the children in our school go to the when the head teacher wants to talk to us. WB
a cave **b** hall **c** house **d** zoo



Grammar

Adverbs of frequency

ظروف التكرار

• نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

	always دائماً (طوال الوقت)	We always ask the teacher for help. دائماً نطلب من المدرس المساعدة.
	usually عادةً (في أوقات كثيرة)	Ahmed usually plays football. عادةً يلعب أحمد كرة القدم.
	often غالباً (في أغلب الأوقات)	Manal often watches TV. غالباً ما تشاهد منال التلفاز.
	sometimes أحياناً (نصف عدد مرات ذهابي للمدرسة)	My father sometimes takes me to school. أحياناً يأخذني والدي إلى المدرسة.
	never أبداً (لا يحدث مطلقاً)	We never go to school on Fridays. لا نذهب أبداً للمدرسة أيام الجمعة.



Ex. We **usually** play tennis.

• تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.

Ex. He **is never** late for school.

وبعد فعل يكون (Verb to be)

How often..?

كم عدد المرات.....؟

• نستخدم (How often....?) للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث فعل ما في زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلي:

How often + do / does + فاعل + inf.....?

Ex. How often do you play tennis?

• للإجابة نستخدم ظرف التكرار المناسب حسب درجة تكرار الفعل.

- I **always** play tennis. (100%)

- I **never** play tennis. (0%)

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I _____ late on Sundays.

a get up usually

b usually gets up

c get usually up

d usually get up

2. Do you _____ on Fridays?

القليوبية / شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٠

a often travels

b travel often

c often travel

d travels often

3. Ahmed is a good boy. He _____ shouts at his mother.

a always

b never

c usually

d often

4. It is _____ very hot in the summer.

a never

b not

c hardly

d usually

WB

5. Omar is a good student. He _____ late for his school.

a is never

b never is

c is always

d always is

6. The sun _____ comes up in the west.

الأزهر الشريف / الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

a always

b often

c sometimes

d never

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Amir drinks often milk before he goes to bed.

(_____)

2. He reads never stories.

كفر الشيخ / قلين ٢٠٢٢

(_____)

3. I like fish very much, so I never eat it.

(_____)

4. Mr Omar always is active.

(_____)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hassan is a clever boy. He _____ does his homework.

a never

b not

c sometimes

d always

2. Hanaa always gets the full mark in English. She _____ makes mistakes.

وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١

a never

b usually

c sometimes

d often

3. We _____ speak in English during the English classes.

a usually

b no

c not

d doesn't

4. Shahd to people she doesn't know.

- a** talks never **b** never talks **c** talks often **d** talks always

5. Nadi likes music, so he plays it at home.

- a** always **b** never **c** however **d** although

6. How do the children go to the park?

- a** always **b** usually **c** never **d** often

7. I can't drive. I drive a car.

- a** often **b** sometimes **c** never **d** usually

8. We go to the beach in winter. It's too cold there.

- a** always **b** never **c** usually **d** sometimes

WB

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Do you clean usually your room? (.....)
2. Mr Ali always travels by bus. He likes travelling by train. (.....)
3. I go sometimes running in the morning. (.....)
4. Polite boys are usually rude. (.....)
5. That healthy man always smokes. (.....)



Speaking

1 Asking about the time

السؤال عن الوقت

• للسؤال عن وقت حدوث شيء نستخدم أحد الاساليب الآتية:

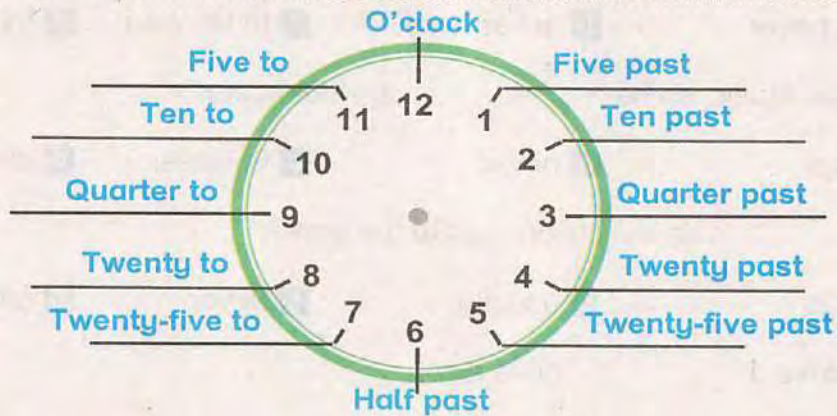
متى ؟ ؟... فعل + فاعل + do/ does + What time

Ex. What time does science start on Sunday?

متى تكون ؟ ؟... فاعل + What time is

Ex. What time is the break?

Response الرد



Quarter of an hour



Half an hour

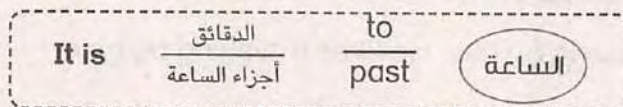


Three-quarters of an hour



One hour

• نستخدم (past) للتعبير عن الوقت بمعنى (و) ونستخدم (to) للتعبير عن الوقت بمعنى (إلا) كما يلي:



09:15

= It is quarter past nine.

- كما يمكن قراءة رقم الساعة ثم عدد الدقائق:

Ex. It is nine fifteen.

2) Asking and answering about timetables السؤال والإجابة عن جداول المواعيد

• للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء في المضارع البسيط نستخدم:

How often + do / does + فاعل + inf....? كم مرة يحدث.....؟

Ex. How often do you get up at 6.30 am?

• للرد نستخدم:

فاعل + adverb of frequency + verb

Ex. I never get up at 6.30 am! I usually get up at 7 am.

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Saad are talking about their school.

Saad : Hi Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hi Saad. Have we got English tomorrow?

Saad : ① _____, it's the first lesson.

Ahmed : ② _____ do we read English books?

Saad : We usually read English books on Sundays.

Ahmed : What subjects have we got after English?

Saad : ③ _____ science, maths and Arabic.

Ahmed : ④ _____ is the break?

Saad : It is ⑤ _____ 11,00 o'clock.

Ahmed : OK! Goodbye.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A _____ rings when a break starts or finishes.

a ball

b bell

c hall

d bill

2. You can find a lot of books in a _____.

a hospital

b cinema

c playground

d library

القليوبية / الخصوص ٢٠٢٠

SB

3. I usually _____ lunch with my family at 5 p.m.

a build

b do

c have

d watch

4. Students learn about different countries in _____ lessons.

a science

b maths

c social studies

d art

شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢١

5. At break, I eat, talk and play with my friends in the _____.

a bell

b library

c classroom

d playground

سوهاج / طهطا ٢٠٢١

6. Ziad doesn't like films. He _____ goes to the cinema.

a usually

b always

c never

d not

7. Nada is helpful at home; she's very lazy.

a never

b usually

c always

d every

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Clever students always fail exams. (.....)
- My teacher never is rude to me. (.....)
- How many do you watch TV? (.....)
- I usual clean my room. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Your day

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you usually do every day?
- What time do you do this?
- What do you always do?
- What do you never do?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I usually
- I always
- I go to
- I often at o'clock.
- I never

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



transport	النقل والمواصلات	bike	دراجة (هوائية)
canoe	قارب صغير خفيف	cycle (d)	يقود دراجة
snowmobile	زحافة جليد		



Vocabulary

form	شكل	shirt	قميص
village	قرية	pencil case	مقلمة
cheap	رخيص	motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)
healthy	صحي	Whose.....?	ملك من.....؟
Lake Bunyoni	بحيرة بانيني	How long....?	كم طول (المدة الزمنية)....؟
Uganda	دولة أوغندا	notebook	دفتر/كراس
The USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	cap	قبعة
side	جانب - ناحية	jacket	جاكيت
snow	جليد	school rules	قواعد مدرسية
towel	منشفة (فوطية)	school uniform	زي مدرسي
fun	ممتع	safe	آمن
dangerous	خطير	again	مرة أخرى
outside	بالخارج	camel	جمل
quick	سريع	follow (ed)	يتبع
important	هام	rain (ed) (n)	تمطر - مطر
office	مكتب		



Words & Meanings

canoe	قارب صغير خفيف	a small, narrow ⁽¹⁾ boat for one or two people	Arabic Meaning
snowmobile	زحافة جليد	a vehicle ⁽²⁾ that you can drive on snow	١- ضيق ٢- مركبة
cycle	يقود دراجة	ride a bicycle	

Expressions & Prepositions

take a journey	يقوم برحلة طويلة	travel to	يسافر إلى
take to school	يأخذ إلى المدرسة	go in a canoe	يذهب في قارب
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد	on a snowmobile	على زحافة جليد
wear the school uniform	يرتدى الزي المدرسي	on time	في الوقت المحدد
help each other	يساعد بعضنا البعض	on the right	على اليمين
say unkind things	يقول أشياء غير مهذبة	on the other side	على الجانب الآخر
live a long way from	يعيش على مسافة بعيدة من	cycle to school	يركب دراجة إلى المدرسة

Word Differences

snow	جليد (من السماء)	ice	ثلج (ماء متجمد)
fun	ممتع	funny	مضحك
quite	إلى حد ما / إلى حد كبير	quiet	هادئ
boat	قارب	boot	حذاء برقبة طويلة
office	حجرة مكتب	desk	مكتب (طاولة)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Language Notes

1) shoes - trousers - shorts - glasses

تعامل هذه الكلمات كجمع:

Ex. My new shoes are expensive. I bought them last week.

Ex. Whose glasses are these?

لاحظ أننا عندما نقول (a pair of.....) مع الكلمات السابقة، يتبعها فاعل مفرد:

Ex. My new pair of trousers is expensive. I bought it last week.

2) arrive in - arrive at - get to

• **arrive** يصل (بدون حرف جر)

Ex. When are they **arriving**?

• **arrive at** يصل إلى مكان صغير «مدرسة - مستشفى...»

Ex. I **arrive at** school early.

• **arrive in** يصل مكان كبير «دولة - مدينة...» جر

Ex. When does the plane **arrive in** London?

• **get to** يصل إلى «مكان كبير أو صغير»

Ex. He **got to** Cairo / the hospital early.

لاحظ أنه عند استخدام الأفعال السابقة مع كلمات (home / there) لا نستخدم حرف جر:

Ex. He **got home** at 6.

Ex. When did you **arrive there**?

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** How much do these trousers cost?

B: _____ cost me L.E 300.

a It

b They

c He

d She

2. We arrived _____ at 6 o'clock.

a at home

b in home

c home

d for home

3. The king arrived _____ France last week.

a in

b at

c for

d with

4. He arrived _____ Alexandria Airport to meet his cousin.

a in

b on

c to

d at

القليوبية / طوخ ٢٠٢١



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (18)

How do they go to school?

In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or **train**⁽¹⁾.

1- Every morning, children from this village in Egypt **cycle**⁽²⁾ to school.

It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive **on time**⁽³⁾.

2- These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda*. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a



Arabic Meaning

١- قطار

٢- يركب دراجة

٣- في الوقت

المحدد

canoe⁽⁴⁾. The canoe takes the children to school and home again⁽⁵⁾ every day.

3- This boy lives in the USA⁽⁶⁾. In winter, there is a lot of snow⁽⁷⁾. The children travel to school on a snowmobile^{(8)*}!



- ٤- قارب صغير خفيف
- ٥- مرة أخرى
- ٦- الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
- ٧- جليد
- ٨- زحافة جليد

Say it correctly

* snowmobile (ie) في كلمة (field) ينطق صوت (i) في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ie) في كلمة (field)
* Uganda (u) في كلمة (uniform) ينطق صوت (u) في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (u) في كلمة (uniform)



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (18)

استمع إلى النص



Narrator 1 : Every morning, children from this village⁽¹⁾ in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap⁽²⁾ and healthy⁽³⁾ way to travel.

Boy : When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick!

Narrator 2 : These children live next to Lake⁽⁴⁾ Bunyonyi in Uganda. Their school is on the other side⁽⁵⁾ of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

Boy : Sometimes, when it rains a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't get to school that day.

Narrator 3 : This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile!

Boy : It's cold, but it's fast - and fun!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- قرية
- ٢- رخيص
- ٣- صحي
- ٤- بحيرة
- ٥- جانب



WB Page (81)

استمع إلى النص



Fatma : Hi Mariam. Is this Malak's pen?

Mariam : No, that's Judy's pen. She always uses that pen.

Fatma : OK. Whose bag is this?

Mariam : That's Huda's bag.

Fatma : No, it's not Huda's bag. Her bag is red. This bag is blue.

Mariam : Oh, OK. Then it's Malak's bag.

Fatma : There's a book on the desk. Is that your book?

Mariam : No, it's the teachers' book. All the teachers use that book.

Fatma : Ah, I know whose ruler this is. It has Dalia and Azza's names on it.



Exercises on Lessons

3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Cars, buses and bikes are forms of
a books **b** trains **c** bicycles **d** transport
القليوبية / شبين القناطر ٢٠٢١
- A takes people from one side of a lake to another.
a bike **b** snowmobile **c** canoe **d** car
الشرقية / أبو كبير ٢٠٢٢
- When the ground is covered with ice, we can go around on a
a canoe **b** snowmobile **c** bike **d** bus
البحيرة / دمنهور ٢٠٢٣
- The children got on their and rode away.
a bikes **b** ships **c** canoes **d** cars
- When Ali arrived in Europe, was falling from the sky.
a rock **b** soil **c** sand **d** snow
- Some children in Egypt to school.
a cycle **b** circle **c** recycle **d** tricycle
الغربية / السنطة ٢٠٢١

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He goes to school by bike. He likes
a cycling **b** walking **c** driving **d** running
القليوبية / بنها ٢٠٢١
- Students always wear their school
a books **b** uniforms **c** pens **d** rulers
القليوبية / الخصوص ٢٠٢١
- I always put my pencils in my pencil
a classroom **b** rubber **c** case **d** sharpener
- The canoe the students to school and home again every day. **WB**
a takes **b** gives **c** drives **d** rides
- A is a form of transport.
a snow **b** mobile **c** snowmobile **d** fan
- Planes, trains and cars are means of
a roads **b** streets **c** ports **d** transport
الشرقية / أبو كبير ٢٠٢٢
- We never unkind things to other students.
a listen **b** talk **c** say **d** speak
جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١
- Students should follow the school
a rules **b** roles **c** rolls **d** rulers
القليوبية / بنها ٢٠٢١
- It is to sleep early and get up early.
a bad **b** healthy **c** unhealthy **d** harmful
- The trains are slow but buses are **WB**
a quick **b** busy **c** late **d** early



Grammar

The possessive ('s /')

الملكية

• تستخدم ('s) للتعبير عن الملكية في الحالات الآتية:

١- إذا كان المالك «الذي يسبقها» اسماً مفرداً «إنسان - حيوان»:

Ex. It is Ali's room.

Ex. The dog's tail is long.

٢- إذا كان المالك اسم جمع غير منتظم «لا ينتهي بـ s»:

Ex. The children's books are here.

Ex. The men's clothes are clean.

• تذكر بعض الأسماء ذات الجمع غير المنتظم

child → children woman → women man → men

٣- مع بعض الأسماء «المفردة» التي تشير إلى الوقت / الكمية / القياس:

Ex. We will do our homework in an hour's time.

Ex. A week's holiday is good for you.

• تستخدم (') فقط للتعبير عن الملكية في الحالات الآتية:

١- إذا كان المالك اسم جمع منتهى بـ (s):

Ex. The girls' school is clean.

Ex. The boys' bags were lost.

٢- مع بعض الأسماء «الجمع» التي تشير إلى الوقت / الكمية / القياس:

Ex. We finished the text in two hours' time.

Ex. A three weeks' holiday is good for you.



١- تستخدم (') أو (s) إذا كان المالك اسم مفرد منتهى بـ (s).

Ex. Lamees's shirt is nice.

Ex. Lamees' shirt is nice.

٢- إذا كان من يملك الشيء أكثر من شخص نضيف ('s) لآخر اسم:

Ex. Salma and Dina's father is a teacher. (هذا يعني أنهم أخوة وأن أباهم معلم)

٣- إذا كان المملوك ينتمي لعدة أشخاص نضع (s) لكل شخص:

Ex. Salma's and Dina's fathers are teachers. (هذا يعني أن آبائهم معلمون)

٤- تستخدم أداة الاستفهام (Whose) للسؤال عن الملكية ويتبعها غالباً الاسم الذي نسأل عنه:

Ex. Whose book is that?

للإجابة نستخدم (ضمائر الملكية / صفات الملكية belong to) كما سبق شرحه.

Exercises on Lessons

3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The _____ names are Mena and Soha. SB
 a girl's b girls c girl d girls'
- That car is mine, and that one over there is _____.
 a Hossam b Hossam's c Hossams d the Hossam
- A: Where are the _____ books? B: They took them outside. أسوان / ادفو ٢٠٢١
 a pupils' b pupils c pupil's d pupil
- That is not the children's notebook. It is the _____. SB
 a teacher b teachers c teacher's d teachers's
- A: _____ car is this? B: It's my father's.
 a Who's b Who c Who is d Whose
- Tamer finished his homework in an _____ time.
 a hour's b hour c hours d hours'

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- You mustn't take people things without asking them. (_____)
- The girls' name is Noha. وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١ (_____)
- I couldn't find the boy's toys, so they were sad. (_____)
- Tamer boots are new. (_____)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This is the _____ room. They always have rest there. SB
 a teacher b teachers c teacher's d teachers'
- A: _____ books are these? B: They are mine.
 a Whose b Where c Who's d Who
- My _____ favourite food is pizza. They get three every week.
 a brothers b brother's c brothers' d brother
- These are the _____ football shirts. They will wear them tomorrow. SB
 a boy's b boy c boys's d boys'
- That is not Mr Abdelaziz's ball. It is the _____ ball. SB
 a children b children's c childrens' d child's
- The _____ tail is very long.
 a cat b cats' c cat's d cats's

7. mother is a nurse.

a Ola and Leila

b Ola and Leila's

c Ola's and Leila

d Ola's and Leila's

8. The W.C is next to the library.

a men's

b mens'

c men

d mens

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This is Alis phone. It's new!

WB (.....)

2. These are my sisters shoes. Her name is Huda.

WB (.....)

3. Who's pencil is this?

(.....)

4. I can't find my book. I'll take my friend book.

(.....)



Speaking

1 Asking about possession

السؤال عن الملكية

• نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (Whose) للسؤال عن الملكية:

Whose + الشيء/الأشياء + is / are ?

Ex. Whose pencil is that?

• للإجابة نستخدم (ضمائر الملكية / صفات الملكية / 's):

Ex. It's mine.

Ex. It's my pencil.

Ex. It's Ali's.

2 Talking about journeys to school:

الحديث عن رحلات الذهاب الى المدرسة

Question	Answer
How do you travel to school?	I travel to school by bus.
How long does it take?	It takes about half an hour.
Why do some children need to take difficult journeys to school?	Because this is the only way they can go to school.
Why is it important to go to school?	Because we all need to learn and study.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hisham and Sherif are talking about their journeys to school.

Hisham : Hello! Sherif. How are you?

Sherif : Hi, Hisham. I'm ①

Hisham : Tell me, ② you travel to school?

Sherif : I travel to school by bus.

- Hisham** : How long ③ ?
Sherif : It takes about half an hour. How about you?
Hisham : ④ by car.
Sherif : Is it important ⑤ ?
Hisham : Yes, it is. We must come to school to learn.
Sherif : You are right.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: Did you travel on your ?
 B: No, there wasn't any snow outside.
 a car b rocket c snowmobile d bus
2. Some children in Uganda usually cross the river in a الشرقية / الحسينية ٢٠٢٠
 a train b taxi c bus d canoe
3. I've bought a new bike; I like to to school.
 a cycle b follow c walk d fly
4. Don't eat that; it's the food.
 a dog b dogs c dog's d dogs's
5. I can use all my clothes. Theirs fit me.
 a brothers' b brothers c brother's d brother

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I took my friend book with me home. (.....)
 2. Who books do you carry, Ahmed? (.....)
 3. The childrens' toys are all new. (.....)
 4. Mona's and Huda's house is near their school. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Your journey to school

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- When do you get up on school days? - When do you get to school?
 - How do you go to school?
 - What do you do on your journey to school?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- On school days, I get up at - I like to arrive before the bell rings.
 - I always go to school by
 - I always talk to my friends on the bus.

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في كراسة التسميع.



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

subject	مادة دراسية	quite	إلى حد ما / إلى حد كبير
favourite	مفضل		



Vocabulary

French language	(مادة) اللغة الفرنسية	flag	علم
only	لغة	Hooray!	صيحة للتعبير عن الفرح
really	فقط	too	أيضاً
shower	حقاً	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة
dinner	دُش	end	نهاية
mouse	وجبة العشاء	preparatory 1	الصف الأول الاعدادي
Scotland	فأرة الكمبيوتر	best wishes	أفضل الأمنيات
project	دولة اسكتلندا	England	دولة إنجلترا
	مشروع		

Expressions & Prepositions

Let's + inf.	هيا بنا	in bed	في الفراش
have a shower	ياخذ دُش	wake up	يستيقظ
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
It's my favourite.	إنها المفضلة لدى.	work with computers	يتعامل مع الكمبيوتر
good at	جيد في	at the end of	في نهاية
bad at	سيء (ضعيف المستوى) في	put on	يرتدي (ملابس مثلاً)

Word Differences

too	أيضاً	two	اثنان
only	فقط	alone	بمفرده

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
read	يقرأ	read	read
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn



Language Notes

1) Indirect questions

- لاحظ أنه عندما يتحول سؤال من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر يأتي بعد كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل ثم الفعل :

Ex. I want to know **where you will** go.

Ex. We want to know **what your parents do** at the weekend.

2) very - quite

- يستخدم ظروف الدرجة Adverb of degree قبل الصفة لتبين درجة حدوثها :

very	جدا	quite	إلى حد ما / إلى حد كبير
------	-----	-------	-------------------------

Ex. I'm good at maths.

Ex. I'm **quite** good at maths.

Ex. I'm **very** good at maths.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you tell me _____ ?

a where Ali lives

b where Ali does live

c where Ali live

d where does Ali lives

2. Hala is _____ good at French.

a much

b very

c more

d many



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (19)

Leila : There's the **bell** ⁽¹⁾.

Aya : What subject have we got next?

Leila : Let's look at the timetable. We've got computer studies next, in the **hall** ⁽²⁾. Hooray!

Aya : Computer studies... I'm not very good at computer studies!

Leila : I love it! It's my favourite! What's your favourite subject, Aya?

Aya : I like science and languages.

استمع إلى النص



Arabic Meaning

١- جرس

٢- ردهة

Leila : Are you good at languages?

Aya : I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.

Leila : Who's our English teacher this year?

Aya : It's Mrs Amal.

Leila : Oh, good. She is really friendly. When have we got English?

Aya : It's after break.

Leila : What time is break?

Aya : It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground and go to the library.

Leila : OK!



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (20)

A Day in My Life!

Amira is from Egypt.

Q : How old are you, and where are you from?

A : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurghada.

Q : What subjects do you like?

A : This year, I'm in **preparatory 1⁽¹⁾** at school. My favourite subjects are science, computer studies and maths. We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, **too⁽²⁾**, but I'm not very good at it!

Q : What do you usually do after school?

A : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework before I have **dinner⁽³⁾**. After dinner, I usually **have a shower⁽⁴⁾** and read my book in bed. What time do you **wake up⁽⁵⁾** and go to bed?



Arabic Meaning

١- الصف الأول

الإعدادي

٢- أيضا

٣- وجبة العشاء

٤- يأخذ دُش

٥- يستيقظ

WB Page (83)

Hatem : What's your favourite subject, Hazem?

Hazem : I like English.

Hatem : Who's our English teacher this year?

Hazem : It's Mrs Eman.

Hatem : She's a good teacher. And when have we got English?

Hazem : We have it today, after break. Then we have maths.

Hatem : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths?

Hazem : I'm quite good at maths. I'm not bad at science, too.

Hatem : Yes, you're good at science. What time is break?

Hazem : Now. Let's go to the playground.

New Message
— / ✕

Hi Nagwa

How are you? You want to know what my parents⁽¹⁾ do at the weekend. My father works with⁽²⁾ computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping⁽³⁾. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. My brother always plays football when we go there! He is very good at⁽⁴⁾ football. What about you? What do you do at the weekend?

Best wishes
Nesma

Send
A | 📎 🖼️ 🔍 😊 🗑️

Arabic Meaning

١- الوالدان
٢- يتعامل مع
٣- نذهب للتسوق
٤- جيد في

Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

○ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: What _____ have we offer break? B: It is math.
a language b timetable c school d subject
2. I'm _____ good at English, and I'm not bad at social studies.
a quiet b quit c quite d quietly
3. What's your _____ subject? SB
a favourite b favour c fat d heavy
4. My mother goes _____ once a week.
a the shop b shops c shop d shopping
5. What time do you usually get _____ ?
a up b to c of d under

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Swimming is my hobby. I like it.

الشرقية / أبو كبير ٢٠٢٢

- a busy b fast c expensive d favourite

2. We study six at school.

- a objects b subjects c buildings d jobs

3. Adel is polite.

- a quit b quiet c quick d quite

4. Mr Ashraf is , so all the students like him.

- a friend b unfriendly c friendly d friendship

5. Ahmed always a shower when he gets home from school.

- a has b makes c builds d does

6. My father always works computers.

- a about b with c for d over

7. Egypt's has three colours; red, white and black.

- a boat b fly c flag d journey



Speaking

Asking and answering about a school day: السؤال والاجابة عن يوم مدرسي

Question	Answer
What subject have we got next?	It's computer studies next.
What is your favourite subject?	I like science.
Are you good at languages?	I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.
Who is our English teacher this year?	It's Mrs Amal.
When have we got science?	It is after break.

General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem and Imad are talking about school.

Hatem : What is your ① _____, Imad?

Imad : I like English.

Hatem : ② _____ English teacher this year?

Imad : It's Mrs Eman.

Hatem : She's a good teacher. And when ③ _____ English?

Imad : We ④ _____ got English today, after break.

Hatem : Are you ⑤ _____ English?

Imad : Yes, I am.

Hatem : What about science?

Imad : I'm good at it, too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What _____ have we got next? **B:** It is computer studies next. SB

a language **b** timetable **c** school **d** subject

2. We're late. Let's _____ now.

a left **b** leave **c** leaving **d** leave's

3. Tamer wants to know where _____ spend the weekend.

a will I **b** will **c** won't **d** I will

4. **A:** What is your _____ food? **B:** I like fish.

a favourite **b** bad **c** favour **d** kind

5. This problem is _____ difficult to solve.

a quiet **b** quiz **c** quite **d** quit

Excel Yourself?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. Home economics _____ an important subject.

a is **b** are **c** have **d** were

2. I visit my uncle _____.

a everyday **b** daily **c** slowly **d** dairy

3. We took a taxi to the airport. It was far _____.

a way **b** road **c** away **d** a long

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The mens' bags are over there. (_____)

2. What time is the English lesson start? (_____)



Vocabulary

library	مكتبة	typical	نموذجي (معتاد)	snowmobile	زحافة جليد
hall	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)	transport	النقل والمواصلات	quite	إلى حد ما / إلى حد كبير
canoe	قارب صغير خفيف	playground	ملعب / فناء	bike	دراجة (هوائية)
subject	مادة دراسية	bell	جرس	cycle (d)	يقود دراجة
favourite	مفضل				

Adverbs of frequency

always	دائماً	sometimes	أحياناً	never	أبداً
often	غالباً	usually	عادةً		

School Subjects

maths	مادة الرياضيات	science	مادة العلوم
social studies	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلي
drama	مادة الفن المسرحي	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
music	التربية الموسيقية	Arabic	اللغة العربية
art	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)	computer studies	مادة الحاسب الآلي
religion	التربية الدينية	PE (Physical Education)	التربية البدنية (الرياضية)



Grammar

1) Adverbs of frequency

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل:

always	دائماً	usually	عادةً
often	غالباً	sometimes	أحياناً
never	أبداً		

Ex. I **always** help my mother at home.

Ex. We **never** make noise in the library.

How often....?

كم عدد المرات.....؟

Ex. How **often** do you go to the cinema?

2) The possessive ('s / ')

- Ali's book.
- The dog's food
- The boy's books
- James' (James's) car
- The dog's food
- The children's toys



Speaking

1 Asking about the time:

• للسؤال عن وقت حدوث شيء نستخدم أحد الأساليب الآتية:

متى ؟؟ فعل + فاعل + do/ does + What time

Ex. What time does science start on Sunday?

متى تكون ؟؟ فاعل + is + What time

Ex. What time is the break?

2 Asking and answering about timetables:

• للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء في المضارع البسيط نستخدم:

كم مرة يحدث ؟؟ فعل + فاعل + do / does + How often

Ex. How often do you get up at 6.30 am?

• للرد نستخدم:

..... + adverb of frequency + verb + فاعل

Ex. I never get up at 6.30 am! I usually get up at 7 am.

3 Asking about possession:

• نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (Whose) للسؤال عن الملكية:

..... ؟ is / are + الشيء/ الأشياء + Whose

Ex. Whose pencil is that?

• للإجابة نستخدم (ضمائر الملكية / صفات الملكية / 's):

Ex. It's mine.

Ex. It's my pencil.

Ex. It's Ali's.

4 Talking about journeys to school:

الحديث عن رحلات الذهاب إلى المدرسة :

Question	Answer
How do you travel to school?	I travel to school by bus.
How long does it take?	It takes about half an hour.
Why do some children need to take difficult journeys to school?	Because this is the only way they can go to school.
Why is it important to go to school?	Because we all need to learn and study.

5 Asking and answering about a school day: السؤال والاجابة عن يوم مدرسي:

Question	Answer
What subject have we got next?	It's computer studies next.
What is your favourite subject?	I like science.
Are you good at languages?	I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.
Who is our English teacher this year?	It's Mrs Amal.
When have we got science?	It is after break.

General Exercises on Unit 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Hala is talking to Omar.

Hala : Good morning, Omar.

Omar : Good morning, Hala.

Hala : What subject have we got next, Omar?

Omar : ① ----- next.

Hala : I like science. ② ----- is your favourite subject?

Omar : It's English.

Hala : ③ ----- at languages?

Omar : ④ -----, I'm quite good at English and French.

Hala : I'm not very good at them.

Omar : OK! ⑤ ----- help you.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Egypt, students ----- go to school on Fridays.

القليوبية / بنها ٢٠٢١

a often b usually c always d never

2. A: What time does science start on Tuesday? B: It starts at half ----- eleven.

a to b past c o'clock d on

3. A: Are you ----- at science? B: Yes, I'm not bad at it.

القليوبية / شبين القناطر ٢٠٢١

a good b bad c sad d hot

4. Hassan is a hard worker. He ----- works hard.

a not b doesn't c always d never

5. We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the ----- .

WB

a bell b plane c gate d class

6. _____ is the subject of how to learn numbers.

القليوبية / طوخ ٢٠٢٢

- a** Drama **b** Arabic **c** Maths **d** English

7. Some children in Uganda go to school _____ a canoe.

WB

- a** for **b** of **c** at **d** in

8. What time _____ the break?

- a** is **b** does **c** has **d** have

9. A _____ travels on water.

القليوبية / الخانكة ٢٠٢١

- a** motorbike **b** bike **c** canoe **d** break

10. The children in the USA _____ to school on a snowmobile.

WB

- a** take **b** travel **c** arrive **d** fly

11. What subject have we _____ next?

- a** got **b** broken **c** lost **d** cared

12. Students can play games in the _____.

الجيزة / العمرانية ٢٠٢٢

- a** library **b** bell **c** playground **d** corridor

13. The _____ food was under the table.

- a** dog **b** dog's **c** dogs **d** dogs's

14. I arrived _____ Uganda last week.

WB

- a** in **b** on **c** at **d** of

15. This programme is about _____ rights.

- a** women **b** womens **c** womens' **d** women's

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali is a kind man. He is never good to poor people. (.....)
2. The kid's uncle gave them some money. They were happy. (.....)
3. My uncle is my fathers brother. (القليوبية / الخصوص ٢٠٢١) (.....)
4. He never is late for school. (أسوان / ادفو ٢٠٢١) (.....)
5. We found Mona bag. (كفر الشيخ / قلين ٢٠٢٢) (.....)
6. Do you think good people always are happy? (وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١) (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

What you usually do at the weekend

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- How often do you study?
- Do you like to do your homework?
- Do you study at the weekend?
- What do you often do at the weekend?
- What do you do when it is not hot?
- Do you often meet your friends?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I am a student at school.
- I often study every day.
- I like to do my homework.
- I never at the weekend.
- I often go shopping with my mum.
- When it is not very hot, we usually

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker goes to his school
a by bus **b** by taxi **c** on foot **d** in a car
- The speaker likes his teachers because they are
a fast **b** kind **c** slow **d** new

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- Ashraf** : How do you go to school?
Salim :
- Fatima** : ?
Aya : My favourite hobby is playing music.
- Karim** : What subject have we got next?
Ahmed :
- Samar** : ?
Walaa : English class starts at quarter past ten.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I'm thirteen years old. I go to preparatory school. I'm in the first grade. My father is an engineer. He designs machines. My mother is a doctor. She works in a hospital. I have a brother and a sister. My brother Ali is older than me, but my sister Mai is younger.

A. Answer the following questions:

- How old is Mona?
- Where does a doctor work?
- How many members are there in Mona's family?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mona's sister is than her.
a older **b** fatter **c** taller **d** younger
- A/An designs machines.
a engineer **b** doctor **c** architect **d** dentist

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

SB

"What you do every day"

[مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب]

Unit 2 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. They have after Arabic.

a maths

b English

c science

d social studies

2. Ali likes

a maths

b science

c English

d Arabic

3. is Ali's favourite day.

a Monday

b Tuesday

c Saturday

d Wednesday

4. likes Social Studies.

a Ali

b Omar

c Maher

d Salah

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Imad and Hatem are at school.

Imad : We have got English today, after break. Then we have maths.

Hatem : Good, I like maths. ① maths?

Imad : Yes, I'm quite good at maths. I'm not bad at science, too.

Hatem : ② is the break?

Imad : It's at eleven. Now, let's ③ to the playground.

Hatem : ④ ?

Imad : We can play games with our friends.

Hatem : I ⑤ playing with them.

Imad : Me too.

Hatem : OK! Let's go.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

WB

My name is Omar. I enjoyed reading books. One day, I went to the school library to read a book about space travel. Mr Nader, our teacher of science, asked us to read it. On my way to it, I found a small bag on the ground. I opened it to see if I could read the name of its owner. Inside the bag there was an expensive watch and a lot of money. I didn't find any name so I took it to the headmaster who was pleased because I was honest. Later on, Mr. Nader went to my classroom and thanked me because the bag I found was his.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Mr Nader ask the students to do?

2. Why did Omar open the bag?

3. Who was the owner of the bag?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Omar gave the bag to

- a** Mr Nader **b** the headmaster **c** its owner **d** his neighbour

5. Mr Nader was a

- a** librarian **b** scientist **c** headmaster **d** teacher

6. The underlined word "it" refers to the

- a** bag **b** book **c** watch **d** library

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The room is upstairs. You can go up to see them.

- a** child's **b** child **c** children **d** children's

2. Mr Ali doesn't like flying, so he travels by plane.

- a** always **b** not **c** never **d** often

3. What school should you follow?

- a** games **b** rules **c** gates **d** classes

4. is the language of England.

- a** French **b** English **c** Arabic **d** Spanish

WB

5. Sameh goes to his school on his

- a** bike **b** brick **c** break **d** back

6. At break, I play games with my friends in the

- a** classroom **b** cinema **c** playground **d** theatre

WB

7. Our school has many books in its

- a** library **b** gym **c** office **d** hall

8. My little son is learning to the time.

أسوان / انفو ٢٠٢١

- a** say **b** take **c** draw **d** tell

9. When we hear the, we go to the school hall.

الشرقية / منشأة أبو عمر ٢٠٢١

- a** radio **b** noise **c** ball **d** bell

10. We speak English in our English lessons. It's very useful for us.

WB

- a** never **b** sometimes **c** always **d** does not

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That is Ahmed and Hossam house.

WB (.....)

2. We say never unkind things.

(.....)

3. That building is a boy's school.

(.....)

4. We are good students. We always forget our homework.

(.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

SB

مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب

Your daily life

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

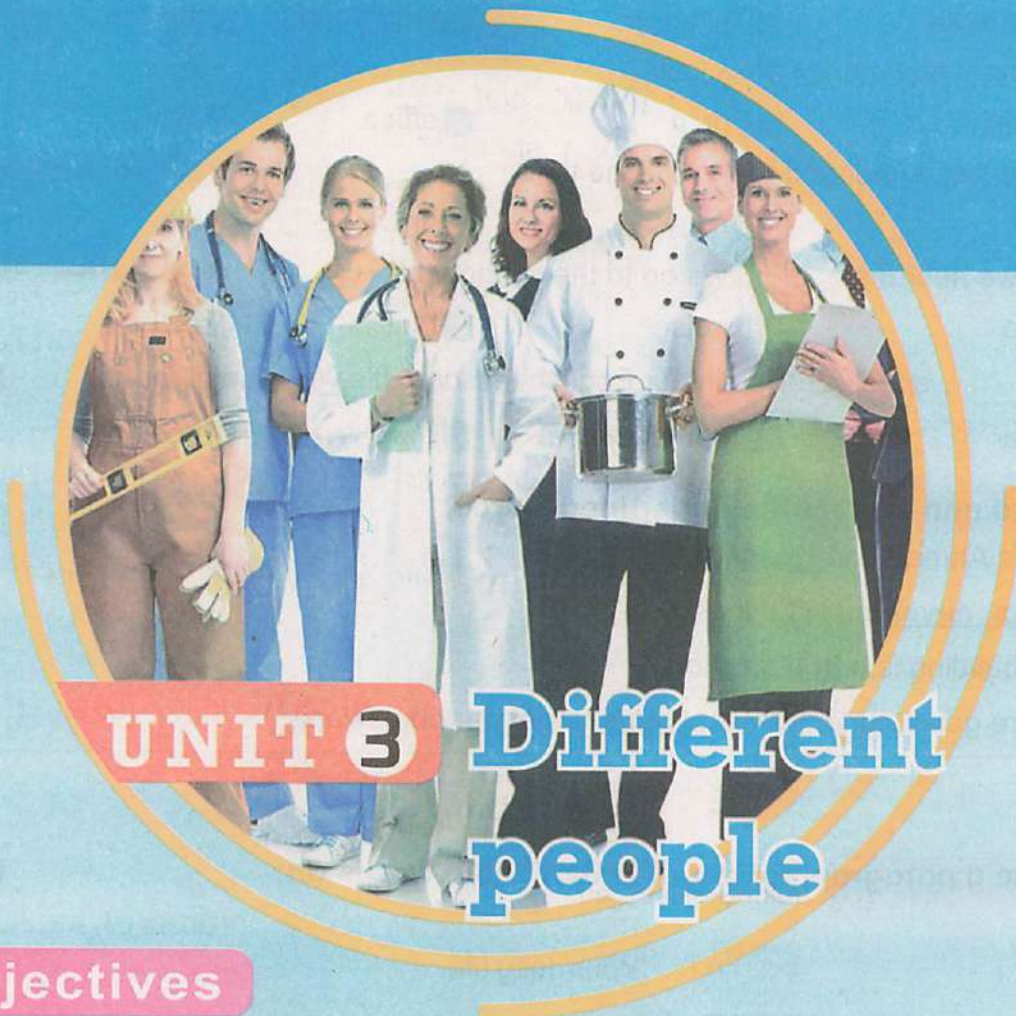
- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| - Do you usually have a busy day? | - When do you usually get up? |
| - Who do you usually have breakfast with? | - How do you usually go to school? |
| - When do you get home? | - When do you go to bed? |

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| - I always have a busy day. | - I get up at |
| - I usually have breakfast with | |
| - We have lessons every school day. | |
| - I go home at o'clock. | - I go to bed at o'clock. |

New Hello!

Prep. 1



UNIT 3 Different people

Objectives

Reading:

A description of a sports star; a blog post; *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*.

Writing:

A blog post about a friend.

Listening:

Descriptions of people.

Speaking:

Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes.

Language:

have / has got; can / can't

Life Skills:

Respect for diversity; resilience.



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

goal	هدف (في مباراة)	scarf (scarfs/ scarves)	وشاح (طرحة)
Europe	قارة أوروبا	sports star	نجم رياضي
glasses	نظارة	fan	معجب / مشجع
beard	لحية (شعر الذقن والوجه)	smile (n) (d)	ابتسامة / يبتسم
moustache*	شارب (شنب)	score (d)	يحرز / يسجل (أهداف / نقاط)
grey	رمادي اللون		

Hair Styles

straight hair	شعر غير مجعد	curly hair	شعر مجعد
dark hair	شعر داكن	blond* hair	شعر أشقر
long hair	شعر طويل	short hair	شعر قصير

Adjectives & Opposites

tall	طويل	↔	short	قصير	straight	ناعم	↔	curly	مجعد (ملتف)
fast	سريع	↔	slow	بطيء	poor	فقير	↔	rich	غني
strong	قوي	↔	weak	ضعيف	friendly	ودود	↔	unfriendly	غير ودود
kind	عطوف	↔	unkind	غير عطوف					



Vocabulary

features	سمات / صفات	nicely	بلطف
famous	مشهور	present	هدية
fast runner	شخص سريع الجري	queen	ملكة
metre	متر (وحدة طول)	arm	ذراع
kilo (kilogram)	كيلو (وحدة وزن)	giraffe	زرافة
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم	jump (ed)	يقفز
baby bird	صغير الطائر	help (ed)	يساعد
Italy	إيطاليا	watch (ed)	يشاهد
Italian	اللغة الإيطالية	talk (ed)	يتحدث
the Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	enjoy (ed)	يستمتع بـ
normal life	حياة عادية	carry (ied)	يحمل
video games	ألعاب الفيديو		

Sports

football	كرة القدم	volleyball	الكرة الطائرة
running	الجرى	tennis	التنس
basketball	كرة السلة	squash	الإسكواش



Words & Meanings

English	Arabic	Meaning	Arabic Meaning
beard	لحية	hair that grows on a man's face or chin ⁽¹⁾	١- ذقن
blond	أشقر	yellow or light ⁽²⁾ brown hair	٢- فاتح
curly	مجعد	hair that has turns ⁽³⁾	٣- التفافات
dark	داكن	brown or black	٤- شفافه عليا
moustache	شارب [شنب]	hair that grows above a man's top lip ⁽⁴⁾	
score	يحرز / يسجل	win points in a game or match	
straight	غير مجعد	without any turns	
kind	عطوف	wanting to help and be good to people	
smile	يبتسم / ابتسامة	when the corners of your mouth turn up to show that you are happy	

Expressions & Prepositions

score goals	يسجل أهداف	easy for	سهل لـ
give money	يمنح مالا	for many days	لعدة أيام
give presents	يمنح هدايا	time for hobbies	وقت للهوايات
play / do a sport	يلعب رياضة	a lot of	كثير من
jump high	يقفز عاليًا	of course	بالطبع
take a holiday	ياخذ أجازة	talk to	يتحدث إلى
speak a language	يتحدث لغة	(be) able to	قادر على
play video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو	at home	في المنزل
short for	قصير علي (ممارسة رياضية)	go at 900 km/h	تسير بسرعة ٩٠٠ كم/الساعة
play for	يلعب لصالح	pick up	يلتقط
		look like	يشبه

Word Differences

beard	لحية «شعر الذقن والوجه»	bread	خبز
straight	ناغم «للشعر» / مستقيم	street	شارع
weak	ضعيف	week	أسبوع
present	هدية	prize	جائزة
hair	شعر	here	هنا
		hear	يسمع
glasses	نظارة	a glass	كوب زجاجي
		glass	الزجاج

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
give	يعطي / يمنح	gave	given
build	يبني	built	built



Language Notes

1) Asking for and giving measurements

نسأل عن المقاسات بالصيغة الآتية:

How + الصفة + be + الشخص / الشيء ؟

Ex. How tall is Salah?

نصف مقاس شخص / شيء كالتالي:

الصفة + وحدة القياس + المقاس + be + الشخص / الشيء

Ex. Salah is 1.75 metres tall.

ويمكن استخدام صيغة أخرى للوصف.

Ex. He is a 1.75-metre-tall player.

2) - help + مفعول + (to) + inf.

يأتي بعد الفعل help مفعول ثم (المصدر + to) أو (المصدر بدون to):

Ex. Salah helped people (to) build schools and hospitals.

3) fast

- تستخدم fast كصفة وكحال.

لاحظ أن الصفة تصف الاسم والحال يصف الفعل.

Ex. Salah is a fast runner.

صفة بمعنى (سريع)

Ex. Salah runs fast.

حال بمعنى (بسرعة)

هذه الكلمات أيضًا تستخدم كصفات وأحوال.

• early • late

4) tall - long

• **tall (adj)** طويل (تستخدم مع الأشخاص والحيوانات والمباني والأشجار)

Ex. She is a **tall girl**.

Ex. New York has a lot of **tall buildings**.

Ex. There are many **tall trees** in this garden.

• **long (adj)** طويل (تستخدم مع المسافات والأشياء والوقت وأجزاء الجسم)

Ex. It's a **long way** to Aswan.

Ex. They sat at a **long table**.

Ex. It took me a **long time** to answer the test.

- نسأل عن طول المدة الزمنية بـ (How long..?)

Ex. A: **How long** did you stay in Alexandria?

B: I stayed there **for two weeks**.

5) like - look like

What is (somebody / something) like?

- تستخدم هذه الصيغة للسؤال عن الرأي في شخص أو شيء.

Ex. What **is** Ahmed **like**?

- للإجابة نذكر وصف عام للشخص أو الشيء.

- Ahmed's **funny and smart**.

What does (someone / something) look like?

- تستخدم هذه الصيغة للسؤال عن مظهر شخص أو شيء:

Ex. What **does** Ahmed **look like**?

- للإجابة نذكر وصف لمظهر الشخص أو الشيء.

- Ahmed's **tall with curly hair**.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omnia always helps her mum the house.

a cleans

b cleaning

c clean

d to cleaning

2. How is the building over there?

a long

b deep

c many

d tall

3. The table dad bought had legs.

a deep

b tall

c long

d far

4. A: What is Sameh ? B: He is brave and honest.

a like

b likes

c liking

d look like



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (23)

استمع إلى النص



- Mazin** : There's my friend, Samir.
Mum : I don't know Samir. What does he **look like**⁽¹⁾?
Mazin : He's got short, **dark hair**⁽²⁾.
Mum : Oh, I **think**⁽³⁾ I can **see**⁽⁴⁾ him. Has he got **glasses**⁽⁵⁾?
Mazin : No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.
Mum : Has Samir's dad got a **beard**^{(6)*}?
Mazin : Yes, he has.
Mum : Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- يبدو
- ٢- شعر داكن
- ٣- أعتقد
- ٤- أرى
- ٥- نظارة
- ٦- لحية

Say it correctly

- * **moustache** (must) في هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة
- * **blond** (long) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطقهما في كلمة
- * **beard** (here) في كلمة



SB Page (25)

استمع إلى النص



My **favourite**⁽¹⁾ **sports star**⁽²⁾ is Doad Elghobashy. She plays **volleyball**⁽³⁾ for Egypt. She's very **tall**⁽⁴⁾. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's **strong**⁽⁵⁾ and she's **fast**⁽⁶⁾. She can **jump**⁽⁷⁾ very high! She's **friendly**⁽⁸⁾. She always has a big **smile**⁽⁹⁾.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- مفضل
- ٢- نجم رياضي
- ٣- الكرة الطائرة
- ٤- طويلة
- ٥- قوية
- ٦- سريعة
- ٧- تقفز
- ٨- ودودة
- ٩- ابتسامة



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (24)

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good **team**⁽¹⁾ in **Europe**^{(2)*}. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at **scoring**⁽³⁾ **goals**⁽⁴⁾. He is a **fast runner**⁽⁵⁾.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is **quite**⁽⁶⁾ short for a **footballer**⁽⁷⁾. He is 1.75 metres tall. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, **curly hair**⁽⁸⁾ and a beard.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- فريق
- ٢- أوروبا
- ٣- إحراز / تسجيل
- ٤- أهداف
- ٥- شخص سريع الجري
- ٦- إلى حد ما
- ٧- لاعب كرة قدم
- ٨- شعر مجعد

He is a **kind**⁽⁹⁾ person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his **fans**⁽¹⁰⁾.

٩- عطوف / حنون
١٠- مشجعون

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

Say it
correctly

* Europe

حروفى ال (e) فى أول وآخر هذه الكلمة لا ينطقان

* curly

(bird) فى كلمة (ir) ينطق الحرفان (ur) فى هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الحرفان

WB Page (87)

Mohamed Salah can score lots of goals and he can run very fast. He lives in England. He can speak English, **of course**⁽¹⁾. He lived in Italy for two years, so he can speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he can't have a **normal life**⁽²⁾. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He can't take many holidays.

Arabic Meaning

١- بالطبع
٢- حياة طبيعية



Videoscript

SB Page (24)

Of course, football is a **popular**⁽¹⁾ sport in Egypt. There are many **excellent**⁽²⁾ Egyptian footballers. Mohammed Salah is one of the best players in the world. He's played for some famous football clubs in England and Italy.

Hossam Hassan, Mido and Essam el Hadary are all famous Egyptian footballers. They played football for teams in Africa and Europe.

People love playing it... and watching it.

Thousands of people go to see football clubs like Al Ahly.. and El-Zamalek.

The country's **national side**⁽³⁾ are known as the **Pharaohs**⁽⁴⁾. They often play in the **World Cup**⁽⁵⁾. This is a **tournament**⁽⁶⁾ for the best teams in the world.

The Pharaohs sometimes win a tournament called the **Africa Cup of Nations**⁽⁷⁾.

This is a **competition**⁽⁸⁾ for countries in Africa. In 2019, it was in Egypt!

Do you like playing football?

Do you like watching football?



Arabic Meaning

١- شعبى / محبوب
٢- ممتاز
٣- الجانب الوطنى
٤- الفراعنة
٥- كأس العالم
٦- دورة
٧- كأس الأمم
الأفريقية
٨- مسابقة

Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hossam and Kamal are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Hossam : Who is your favourite sports star?

Kamal : Mohamed Salah.

Hossam : Why is he famous?

Kamal : He is famous because he is good at scoring ①

Hossam : Can he run fast?

Kamal : Yes, he is a fast ②

Hossam : What does he ③

Kamal : He has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

Hossam : ④ he like?

Kamal : He is a ⑤ person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohamed Salah a lot of goals.

المنوفية / شيبين الكوم ٢٠٢٢

SB

- a** records **b** plays **c** scores **d** gives

2. A plane is very It can go at 900 km/h.

WB

- a** tall **b** weak **c** slow **d** fast

3. This old man has got a white long

- a** board **b** beard **c** bread **d** bad

4. A baby bird is very It cannot fly for many days.

WB

- a** weak **b** poor **c** strong **d** tall

5. My hair isn't curly. It is

البحيرة / دمنهور ٢٠٢٢

- a** blonde **b** dark **c** straight **d** long

6. What your cousin look like?

- a** is **b** do **c** are **d** does

7. The girls of that school always wear grey on their heads.

- a** scarves **b** shirts **c** shoes **d** glasses

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "stong" is the opposite of الأزهر الشريف / طنطا ٢٠٢٢
 a weak b rich c slow d kind
2. This kind man always money to poor people.
 a wins b gives c takes d does
3. My favourite team won yesterday. Its best player scored two
 a matches b presents c cups d goals
4. How is the Cairo Tower? - It is 187 metres. WB
 a long b strong c tall d fast
5. My aunt is very She always gives me presents. WB
 a kind b poor c unkind d weak
6. A successful footballer always talks to his الأزهر الشريف / الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
 a fins b fans c fats d figs
7. Camels are very They can carry 200 kilos of bags. WB
 a weak b low c strong d poor
8. The woman in the picture has got long hair. WB
 a street b straight c star d small
9. My grandfather has got a big on his mouth. جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١
 a hair b beard c ear d moustache
10. Salah gives money to help people schools and hospitals. SB
 a to building b to build c building d built
11. A: How tall is Mohamed Salah? SB
 B: He is 1.75 tall.
 a kilometres b kilograms c centimetres d metres

Grammar

1 have / has got

Form التكوين

I / You / We / They اسم جمع → have('ve) got
He / She / It اسم مفرد → has('s) got

Usage الاستخدام

١- نستخدم (have / has got) عندما نصف السمات الشخصية لشخص/ شيء/ حيوان بمعنى (لديه/ يمتلك).

Ex. I / You / We / They **have got ('ve got)** dark hair.

Ex. He / She **has got ('s got)** curly hair.

٢- نستخدم (have / has got) لتعبر عن الملكية بمعنى (لديه - يملك).

Ex. I **have got ('ve got)** a car.

Ex. She **has got ('s got)** a villa.

Negative النفي

• للنفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

have not (haven't) got
has not (hasn't) got

Ex. I / You / We / They **have not (haven't)** got blond hair.

Ex. He / She / It **has not (hasn't)** got curly hair.

Question السؤال

• للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

Have / Has + فاعل + got? (كلمة إستفهام)

Ex. **Have** you **got** glasses?

• Yes, I **have**. - No, I **haven't**.

Ex. How many sisters **have** you **got**?

• I **have got** two sisters.

١- يمكن أن نستخدم (have / has got) عندما نجيب عن السؤال على شكل شخص:

Ex. What **do** they **look like**?

- They **have got** short hair. They **haven't got** glasses.

Ex. What **does** your uncle **look like**?

- He **has got** a beard and a moustache.

٢- من الممكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار بعد (have / has).

Ex. Salah **has usually got** a big smile



Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Has your friend straight hair? SB
 a get b getting c to get d got
- My grandfather a long white beard.
 a have got b get c has got d are getting
- These players got strong legs.
 a has b are c have d can

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Has your brother get long hair? (.....)
- They has got big smiles. (.....)
- Have we getting English today? (.....)

2 can / cannot (can't)

Form & Usage التكوين والاستخدام

مصدر الفعل + can + inf. (إثبات)
 فاعل + cannot (can't) + inf. (نفي)

- نستخدم can / cannot (can't) للتعبير عن القدرة / عدم القدرة على فعل شيء.

Ex. We **can** give money to help poor people.

Ex. I **cannot (can't)** pick up that box. My arms are weak.

Question السؤال

- للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

Can + فاعل + inf? (كلمة إستفهام)

Ex. Can you speak English? • Yes, I **can**. - No, I **can't**.

Ex. What sport can you play? • I **can** play volleyball.

- يمكن أيضاً التعبير عن القدرة / عدم القدرة على فعل شيء باستخدام:

فاعل + be + able to + inf.

Ex. Ahmed **is able to** run very fast.

Ex. I **am not able to** stand on one hand.

Ex. Are you **able to** run fast?



Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: _____ you help me carry this box? B: Yes, sure.

a Are

b Does

c Can

d Did

2. I _____ got glasses.

a haven't

b has

c hasn't

d don't

SB

3. My best friend _____ short dark hair.

a have got

b has got

c get

d is

الأزهر الشريف / سوهاج ٢٠٢٢

4. Samir _____ got short hair.

a is

b have

c has

d was

SB

5. This team _____ win the match. The players are very slow.

a can

b have

c do

d can't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Tarek's uncle has got a beard, but he has got a moustache. WB (_____)

2. We can giving money to help poor people. SB (_____)

3. The students in this class can spoke French. (_____)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohamed Salah _____ score lots of goals.

a has

b do

c can

d have

WB

2. _____ you and your brother got strong arms?

a Has

b Have

c Does

d Are

3. A: _____ you climb a tree? B: No, I can't.

a Can

b Are

c Have

d Does

4. How _____ you get the full mark in the test?

a have

b can

c are

d does

5. Can your sister _____ in English?

a sang

b to sing

c singing

d sing

6. He is weak but he _____ carry the heavy box.

a can

b can't

c mustn't

d doesn't

7. My brother has _____ a laptop.

a gets

b got

c gets

d getting

إدارة بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢

8. You _____ speak to your friends during an exam.

a can

b will

c can't

d doesn't

9. We _____ go out today because we have too much homework.
a will **b** haven't **c** must **d** can't
10. She _____ long hair.
a hasn't got **b** get **c** haven't got **d** have got

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Have you got dark hair? - Yes, I do. **WB** (_____)
2. All my brothers and sisters have get dark curly hair. **WB** (_____)
3. Doda can't play volleyball very well. She always wins. (_____)
4. Can Sara spelt English words? (_____)
5. I cannot lifting that table. (_____)



Speaking

1 Describing people

وصف الناس

Question	Answer
- Has/Have + فاعل + got...? هل ... لديه...؟	- Yes, فاعل + (has / have). - No, فاعل + hasn't / haven't.
- What + do / does + فاعل + look like? كيف يبدو...؟	- فاعل + (have/has) got...
- Am/ Is/ Are + فاعل + the same or different from / to...? هل ... متماثل أم مختلف عن...؟	- فاعل + am / is / are the same as... / different from / to

Ex. A : What do you look like?

B : I'm tall. I have got short, curly hair.

Ex. A : Are your brothers the same or different to you?

B : They're different to me. They've got straight hair.

2 Describing your favourite sports star وصف نجمك الرياضي المفضل

Question	Answer
- Who is your favourite sports star? من نجمك الرياضي المفضل؟	- My favourite sports star is نجمي الرياضي المفضل هو/ هي
- What sport does he / she do? ما الرياضة التي يمارسها/ تمارسها؟	- He/ She plays يلعب/ تلعب
- What does your favourite star look like? كيف يبدو نجمك الرياضي المفضل؟	- He's/She's got (quite/very) long/ short hair and ... - لديه/ لديها شعر طويل/ قصير الى حد ما و.....
- What can he/ she do? ماذا بمقدوره/ بمقدورها أن يفعل/ تفعل؟	- He/ She can jump high/score goals. يستطيع أن يقفز عاليا/ يحرز أهدافا.

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazin is talking with his mum about his friend Samir.

SB

Mazin : Hello, mum!

Mum : Hello, Mazin!

Mazin : There's my friend, Samir.

Mum : I don't know Samir. ①

Mazin : He's got short, dark ②

Mum : Oh! I think I can see him. Has he ③ glasses?

Mazin : No, he ④ His dad's with him.

Mum : Has Samir's dad got a beard?

Mazin : ⑤ , he has.

Mum : Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Yunis has got short, dark hair.

a fast

b kind

c boring

d curly

2. Everyone likes Amira because she is very

a busy

b scary

c unfriendly

d friendly

وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١

3. I'm too busy. I visit my aunt today.

a can

b can't

c will

d have

4. Hala is wearing a nice on her head.

a beard

b scarf

c sock

d earring

5. What your uncle look like?

a is

b do

c does

d was

6. This shelf is too high; I reach it.

a can't

b am

c can

d could

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Our house has getting five windows.

(.....)

2. I can't answer this question, it's very easy.

(.....)

3. A: What does Omar look like?

B: He get short hair and glasses.

(.....)

(مجاہد عنہ فی آخر الكتاب)

Your favourite sports star

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- Who is your favourite sports star?
- Why is he/she your favourite star?
- What is he/she like?
- What nationality is he/she?
- What does he/she look like?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- is my favourite sports star.
 - He plays for
 - He is very kind. He's very
- He plays very well.
 - He has got
 - He gives money to poor people.

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



boring

ممل twice

مرتان

School Subjects

history

مادة التاريخ

art

الرسم

painting

الرسم بالألوان

maths

مادة الرياضيات

drawing الرسم بالقلم الرصاص / الجاف

science

مادة العلوم



Vocabulary

blog post

منشور في مدونة

computer games

الالعاب الكمبيوتر

learning

تعلم

online

متصل بالإنترنت

regularly

بانتظام

story

قصة

swimming

السباحة

diary

يوميات

website

موقع على الإنترنت

paint (ed)

يرسم بالألوان



Words & Meanings

blog

مدونة

a website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary

Expressions & Prepositions

twice a week

مرتان في الأسبوع

go swimming

يذهب للسباحة

do the homework

يعمل الواجب المنزلي

learn about

يتعلم عن

do maths

يدرس مادة الرياضيات

all about me

كل شيء عني

do art

يرسم

look at

ينظر إلى

Well done!

أحسن!

good / bad at

جيد / سيء في

how things work

كيف تعمل الأشياء

Word Differences

twice

مرتان

double

ضعف

game

لعبة / مباراة

gym

صالة ألعاب

diary

يوميات

dairy

مزرعة الألبان

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
learn	يتعلم	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)



Language Notes

• It

- المعروف أن الضمير **it** هو ضمير يستخدم لغير العاقل، ولكن يمكننا أن نستخدمه مع العاقل في الحالات الآتية:

١- عندما نسأل عن شخص مجهول لا نعرفه نقول:

Ex. Who is **it**?

- وللإجابة نقول:

It's + name الاسم

٢- عند التحدث عن طفل رضيع أو لا نعرف نوعه ذكر أم أنثى.

Ex. Your **baby** was sick yesterday. How is **it** today?



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (26)

All about me

Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark curly hair. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite **school subject**⁽¹⁾ is **history**⁽²⁾. I love learning about the past. I like **maths**⁽³⁾ and **science**⁽⁴⁾, too. I do not like **art**⁽⁵⁾ because I am not very good at **drawing**⁽⁶⁾ or painting.

I **often**⁽⁷⁾ play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming **twice**⁽⁸⁾ a week.

At home, I like reading and playing **video games**⁽⁹⁾. I do not like watching TV. I think it is **boring**⁽¹⁰⁾.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- مادة دراسية
- ٢- مادة التاريخ
- ٣- مادة الرياضيات
- ٤- مادة العلوم
- ٥- مادة الرسم
- ٦- الرسم
- ٧- غالباً
- ٨- مرتان
- ٩- ألعاب الفيديو
- ١٠- مملاً

WB Page (88)

1- What is your favourite subject?

My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.

2- Which sport do you like?

I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

3- What do you do in the evening?

I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (27)

استمع إلى النص



Girl 1 : Let's play a **game**⁽¹⁾. I'm looking at a girl. Who's it?

Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV?

Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 : Does she like **swimming**⁽²⁾?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Noha.

Girl 1 : Good! OK. Number two. Who is it?

Girl 2 : Does she like swimming?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does. She loves swimming!

Girl 2 : Does she like playing **basketball**⁽³⁾?

Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 : It's Dina.

Girl 1 : **Well done**⁽⁴⁾! Three. Who is this?

Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Eman.

Girl 1 : No, it isn't!

Girl 2 : Does she like basketball?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Maya.

Girl 1 : Yes!

Girl 2 : OK, so **the last**⁽⁵⁾ one loves **painting**⁽⁶⁾, she likes watching TV and she doesn't like playing basketball. It's Eman.

Girl 1 : Yes again!



Arabic Meaning

١- لعبة / مباراة

٢- السباحة

٣- كرة السلة

٤- أحسنت!

٥- الأخير

٦- الرسم بالألوان



Exercises on Lesson

3

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I don't want to watch this film; it's very
 a boring b good c high d straight
- I go swimming a week.
 a two b twenty c twice d one
- Yunis loves Art because he is good at
 a drawing b shouting c running d swimming
- Mrs Sama teaches at our school.
 a date b history c time d hour
- My hobbies are reading and
 a points b painted c paint d painting

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A blog is a/an diary. جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١
 a paper b online c offline d plastic
- After I my homework, I like reading a book. WB
 a make b go c score d do
- A: I won the race yesterday. B: Well!
 a do b done c did d does
- I like doing sport. I go swimming
 a regularly b carelessly c rarely d weakly
- Omar is writing about his weekend in his online إدارة سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
 a printer b diary c dairy d mouse
- He likes to write in his blog daily.
 a posts b cinemas c screens d mobiles
- She likes doing experiments, so she likes
 a history b maths c art d science
- We like maths at school.
 a building b doing c painting d swimming



Grammar

Verbs + v-ing / Prepositions + v-ing

- إذا أتى فعل بعد الأفعال (like - love - enjoy) نضيف له (ing).

Ex. Samy enjoys playing video games.

Ex. I love learning about the past.

- إذا أتى فعل بعد حروف الجر نضيف له (ing) عدا حرف جر (to) الذي يأتي بعده عادةً مصدر الفعل.

Ex. He is good at running.

Ex. She is bad at drawing.

Ex. She wants to buy a new dress.

- نسأل عن حب / استمتاع شخص بفعل شيء بالصيغة الآتية:

Do (you / they) like / love / enjoy + V-ing...?

Does (he / she) like / love / enjoy + V-ing...?

- وللإجابة نقول:

- Yes, (I / we / they) do.

- No, (I / they / we) don't.

- Yes, (he / she) does.

- No, (he / she) doesn't.

Ex. Do they enjoy swimming?

- Yes, they do.

- No, they don't.

Ex. Does he like playing basketball?

- Yes, he does.

- No, he doesn't.

Exercises on Lesson

3

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salah likes _____ video games when he is at home.

a play

b playing

c plays

d to playing

SB

2. I quite like _____ sport. My favourite sport is tennis.

a to doing

b does

c doing

d do

WB

3. Soha is good at _____ clothes.

a making

b makes

c make

d to make

4. Do you enjoy _____ at home?

a stay

b to stay

c stays

d staying

5. Do you like _____ films?

a watching

b watches

c watch

d is watching

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- I'm not good at run. I'm very slow. SB ()
- We love go to the cinema. ()
- Does your father like eat pizza? ()

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mustafa loves _____ Art at school. WB
 a doing b do c does d to doing
- I like _____ English stories.
 a reads b read c reading d to reads
- I don't like painting, but I love _____. WB
 a swimming b swim c to swimming d swam
- A: Does she love cooking? B: Yes, she _____.
 a to do b do c doing d does
- _____ you like playing tennis? WB
 a Does b Is c Do d Have
- Noha is bad at _____ pictures.
 a to draw b drawing c draw d to drawing

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- My brother and I don't like watch TV after school. WB ()
- Does your sister enjoy play games? ()
- A: Does Sameh like studying maths? B: Yes, he do. ()

General Exercises on Lesson 3



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ola likes history because she loves _____ about the past. إدارة سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
 a learns b learning c to learning d learnt
- A: Who's _____? B: It's me.
 a you b him c it d your

3. My grandfather usually tells me real stories from his

- a** date **b** dear **c** diary **d** dairy

4. He loves nature. He likes the trees and animals. القليوبية / كفر شكر ٢٠٢٠

- a** watching **b** watches **c** watch **d** is watching

5. Kids usually like, they usually like colours.

- a** painting **b** reading **c** playing **d** sleeping

6. If you want to swimming; go to the Red Sea.

- a** enjoying **b** enjoy **c** enjoyed **d** enjoys

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He is good at play tennis?

دمياط / فارسكور ٢٠٢٢ (.....)

2. Hossam is clever at jumps high.

(.....)

3. Tourists come to Egypt to enjoy visit the Pyramids.

(.....)

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

A blog post about yourself

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What's your name?

- What's your favourite subject?

- What's your favourite sport?

- What do you enjoy doing?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My name is

- My favourite subject is

- My favourite sport is

- I enjoy doing

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



adventure	مغامرة	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
wonderland	أرض العجائب	together	معا/ سويا
fun (n)	متعة - شخص أو شيء ممتع	appearance	المظهر
personality	شخصية	(be) called	يسمى/ يدعى
character	شخصية (في كتاب/ فيلم)	shout (ed)	يصرخ

Adjectives

sensible	عقل/ رزين	busy	مشغول
brave	شجاع	angry	غاضب
clever	ماهر	scary	مخيف / مرعب
funny	فكاهي / مضحك	interesting	شيق
strange	غريب	nice	لطيف
frightened	خائف / مرعوب	dangerous	خطير
exciting	مثير	cool	رائع / بارد
late	متأخر		



Vocabulary

person	شخص	Treasure Island	جزيرة الكنز (اسم رواية)
main	رئيسي/ أساسي	orphan girl	بنت يتيمة
important	مهم	the country	الريف
difference	اختلاف	storm	عاصفة
brown eyes	عينان بنية اللون	gable	جملون (سقف منزل مثلث الشكل)
pool	حوض «سباحة»	walk (ed)	يمشي
even	حتى	open (ed)	يفتح
decision	قرار		

Characters in the secret story

Alice	أليس	The Cheshire Cat	قط تشيشاير
The White Rabbit	الأرنب الأبيض	The Queen of Hearts	ملكة القلوب



Words & Meanings

sensible	عقل / رزين	- thinking carefully ⁽¹⁾ before you do the right thing - makes good decisions	Arabic Meaning ١- بعناية ٢- غير سعيد ٣- صحيح ٤- عجالات
brave	شجاع	- not easily frightened - is happy to do something dangerous	
clever	ماهر	- good at learning things - knows a lot	
busy	مشغول	spending a lot of time doing things	
angry	غاضب	is unhappy ⁽²⁾ about something	
scary	مخيف / مرعب	something that makes you feel frightened	
character	شخصية (في كتاب/فيلم)	a person in a book or film	
late	متأخر	arriving after the correct ⁽³⁾ time	
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	a chair with wheels ⁽⁴⁾ , for people who cannot walk	

Expressions & Prepositions

He is a lot of fun .	إنه شخص مسلي جدًا.	happy/unhappy about	سعيد/غير سعيد بشأن
It's easy for...	من السهل على ...	shout at	يصرخ في
open doors for	يفتح الأبواب لـ	frightened of	خائف / مرعوب من
do things	يقوم بعمل أشياء	different from / to	مختلف عن
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	travel around	يتجول
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	far from	بعيداً عن
feel frightened	يشعر بالخوف	in / on a boat	في/على قارب
feel happy	يشعر بالسعادة	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
get angry	يغضب	in a wheelchair	على كرسي متحرك

Word Differences

cool	بارد / رائع	cold	بارد جدًا / بارد
strange	غريب	strong	قوى
busy	مشغول (للأشخاص) / مزدحم (للأماكن)	crowded	مزدحم (للأماكن فقط)
angry	غاضب	hungry	جائع
wonder	يتعجب	wander	يتجول
scary	مخيف	scared	خائف

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
run	يجري	ran	run
know	يعرف	knew	known
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
meet	يقابل	met	met



Language Notes

1) Joining words (and - but - because)

الكلمات السابقة هي كلمات رابطة في الجملة لها معاني مختلفة كالآتي:

- and (و) حرف عطف يستخدم للربط بين كلمات أو عبارات أو جمل

Ex. Magda likes reading **and** sport.

Ex. She likes playing basketball **and** she likes playing tennis.

- but (الكن) تستخدم للربط بين جملتين متناقضتين

Ex. I'm short, **but** I can play basketball.

- because (الأن) تستخدم للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح السبب

Ex. I like Basel **because** he is a lot of fun.

2) fun - funny

- fun (n) متعة / لهو

Ex. There was a lot of **fun** in the park yesterday.

- have fun يستمتع

Ex. We **had** a lot of **fun** in Tamer's birthday party.

- be a (great / good) fun تعبير يفيد أن الشخص ممتع / مسلي

Ex. I like my friends because **they are** a lot of **fun**.

- funny (adj) مسلي (فكاهي / مضحك)

- **funny story / joke / film etc.**

Ex. I didn't laugh because his joke wasn't **funny**.

3) (-ed) and (-ing) adjectives

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية ب (-ed) والصفات المنتهية ب (-ing) لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.

- تشير الصفات المنتهية ب (-ing) إلى من/ ما يسبب الصفة:

Ex. I think watching TV is **boring**. [ممل]

- تشير الصفات المنتهية ب (-ed) إلى أن الموصوف يشعرون لديه هذه الصفة:

Ex. I want to go out. I feel **bored**. [شاعر بالملل]

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The children had so much _____ at the zoo.
 a fun b fan c funny d fans
- That film is really _____. I like to watch it.
 a interested b to interest c interests d interesting
- Hassan felt ill, _____ he went to school.
 a because b but c so d as
- We didn't enjoy the day _____ the weather was bad.
 a but b however c because d so



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (28)

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland by Lewis Carroll



Alice's **Adventures**⁽¹⁾ in **Wonderland**⁽²⁾ is a famous children's story. Alice's adventure begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is **interesting**⁽³⁾, but it is a **strange**⁽⁴⁾ place. She is a **sensible**⁽⁵⁾ girl, but she does not understand Wonderland! Alice is also **brave**⁽⁶⁾ and **clever**⁽⁷⁾. She meets a lot of interesting **characters**⁽⁸⁾.

Alice often sees the **White Rabbit**⁽⁹⁾. The White Rabbit is very **busy**⁽¹⁰⁾ - and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

The **Cheshire Cat**⁽¹¹⁾ is a **funny**⁽¹²⁾ animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.

The **Queen of Hearts**⁽¹³⁾ is not very nice. She is a **scary**⁽¹⁴⁾ person. She is always **angry**⁽¹⁵⁾ and she **shouts at**⁽¹⁶⁾ people. Alice is brave, so she is not **frightened of**⁽¹⁷⁾ her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- مغامرات
- ٢- أرض العجائب
- ٣- شيقة
- ٤- غريب
- ٥- عاقلة/ رزينة
- ٦- شجاعة
- ٧- ماهرة
- ٨- شخصيات
- ٩- الأرنب الأبيض
- ١٠- مشغول
- ١١- قط تشيشاير
- ١٢- مضحك
- ١٣- ملكة القلوب
- ١٤- مخيفة
- ١٥- غاضبة
- ١٦- تصيح في
- ١٧- خائفة من

SB Page (30)

Who's your best friend?

My **best friend**⁽¹⁾ is **called**⁽²⁾ Basel. He has got straight hair and **brown eyes**⁽³⁾. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too!

Basel has got a **wheelchair**⁽⁴⁾ because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to **travel around**⁽⁵⁾ school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the **classroom**⁽⁶⁾.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a **problem**⁽⁷⁾. We do a lot of things **together**⁽⁸⁾. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we **even**⁽⁹⁾ play football in the **playground**⁽¹⁰⁾. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because he is a lot of **fun**⁽¹¹⁾. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady, 12



Arabic Meaning

- ١- أفضل صديق
- ٢- يُدعى
- ٣- عينان بنية اللون
- ٤- كرسي متحرك
- ٥- يتجول
- ٦- حجرة الفصل
- ٧- مشكلة
- ٨- معا / سويا
- ٩- حتى
- ١٠- ملعب / فناء
- ١١- شخص ممتع

SB Page (31)

Magda has got a lot of hobbies. She likes reading and sport. She likes playing basketball and she likes playing tennis, but her favourite sport is swimming. She loves swimming! Magda doesn't like playing video games and she also doesn't like playing chess.

WB Page (90)

- ① My favourite book is **Treasure Island**⁽¹⁾. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very **far from**⁽²⁾ his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very **exciting**⁽³⁾.
- ② My favourite book is **Anne of Green Gables**⁽⁴⁾ by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an **orphan girl**⁽⁵⁾ called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in **the country**⁽⁶⁾. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- جزيرة الكنز
- ٢- بعيد عن
- ٣- مثير
- ٤- جملون (سقف)
- منزل مثلث
- (الشكل)
- ٥- بنت يتيمة
- ٦- الريف

- ③ My favourite book is called **Gulliver's Travels**⁽⁷⁾, by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat, but there is a big **storm**⁽⁸⁾. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.



٧- رحلات جاليش
٨- عاصفة



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

WB Page (90)



استمع إلى النص

- ① My name's Nevine. I like **sports**⁽¹⁾ and I love playing tennis.
② I'm Sayed. My favourite **subject**⁽²⁾ is English and I like writing **stories**⁽³⁾.
③ Hi! I'm Maya. I like **art**⁽⁴⁾. I don't like drawing but I love painting.
④ I'm Rami. I love **swimming**⁽⁵⁾, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's **cold**⁽⁶⁾.
⑤ My name's Lina and this is my sister Maya. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- الرياضة
٢- مادة دراسية
٣- قصص
٤- الرسم
٥- السباحة
٦- بارد

Exercises on Lessons

4,5,6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An person makes good decisions.
a safe **b** sensible **c** strange **d** exciting
2. My best friend and I love playing chess
a others **b** another **c** together **d** whether
3. Never at your parents, Ahmed.
a shout **b** damage **c** hurt **d** shock
4. The strange of that man frightened me.
a appear **b** kindness **c** fun **d** appearance
5. Alice had interesting in Wonderland.
a boards **b** adventures **c** classes **d** sports
6. My little brother is a lot of I like him so much.
a funny **b** fan **c** fun **d** fat
7. A/An person knows a lot.
a clever **b** scary **c** sensible **d** angry

WB

WB

الغريبة / قطور ٢٠٢١

WB

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A _____ person is always doing something.

WB

a frightened

b scary

c busy

d free

2. Osama likes playing football, basketball _____ tennis.

WB

a but

b and

c so

d because

3. My favourite book is _____ "Treasure Island".

بورسعيد ٢٠٢٠

a travelled

b scored

c pulled

d called

4. It's _____ to take your umbrella; it's raining outside.

a brave

b sensible

c busy

d sensitive

5. We often get _____ when we are unhappy about something.

WB

a angry

b hungry

c scary

d clever

6. Hani uses a _____ to go to school because he can't walk.

إدارة بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢

a pencil case

b wheelchair

c sharpener

d pencil

7. Tarek broke his leg so he couldn't travel _____ the school.

a around

b about

c above

d over

8. Leila is a/an _____ girl. She has no father or mother.

شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١

a unkind

b ugly

c old

d orphan

9. A _____ person is happy to do something dangerous.

WB

a sensible

b busy

c brave

d scary

10. I like swimming in the pool _____ it is nice and cool.

WB

a but

b before

c because

d ago

11. The _____ in that book are fantastic.

a characters

b posts

c eyes

d centuries



Speaking

1 Describing a character from a story

وصف شخصية من قصة

- للسؤال عن الرأي في شخص نستخدم:

- What + be + فاعل + like?

ما رأيك في ... ؟

- وللإجابة نستخدم:

- He's/ she's + صفة

Question	Answer
What is Alice like? ما رأيك في أليس؟	Alice is a sensible girl, but she doesn't understand Wonderland. أليس فتاة عاقلة ولكنها لا تفهم أرض العجائب.
What do you think of Rami? ما رأيك في رامي؟	I think he is a brave person. أعتقد أنه شخص شجاع.
What is Seham like? ما رأيك في سهام؟	She is a clever girl. أعتقد أنها فتاة شجاعة.

2 Expressing likes and dislikes

التعبير عن ما نحب وعن ما لا نحب

- نسأل عن ما يحب/لا يحب شخص بالأسئلة الآتية:

- What do/ does + فاعل + like / love (doing)? (فعله) ؟ ماذا تحب/ يحب/ يحبون ... (فعله) ؟
- What (food) do / does + فاعل + like / love? ما (الطعام) الذي تحبه/ يحبه/ يحبونه ؟
- Which (book) do / does + فاعل + like / love? أي (الكتب) تحب/ يحب/ يحبونه ؟
- What's (your / his) favourite....? ما المفضل لديك/ لديه/ لديهم ؟
- Do / Does + فاعل + like / love...? هل تحب/ يحب/ يحبون ؟

◀ وللإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

- I / We / They like / love (doing)..... - My / His favourite.... is / are.....
- He / She likes / loves (doing)..... - I'm / He's good / bad at (n / v-ing) ...

◀ لإبداء سبب حبنا لشيء ما نستخدم **because** :

- I like / love..... because
- He likes / loves..... because

١- للتعبير عما لا نحب نستخدم صيغة النفي كالاتي:

- (No,) + فاعل + **don't / doesn't** like

- Yes, I do. / No, I don't. (✓)

- Yes, I like. (x)

٢- للإجابة المختصرة نستخدم

لاحظ الاتي:

• **A** : What does Mohamed Salah like (doing)?

B : He likes football / playing football.

• **A** : What food do you like / love?

B : I like / love rice.

• **A** : Which sport do you like?

B : I like tennis.

• **A** : What's your favourite subject?

B : I like / love Maths. / I'm good at Maths.

• **A** : Do you like stories?

B : Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

General Exercises on Lessons 4,5,6 & 7



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina introduces Noha to Maya.

Dina : Hi, Maya. This is my friend Noha.

Maya : Hi, Noha! What do you have?

Noha : A book. I ① reading.

Maya : Who's your ② writer?

Noha : Naguib Mahfouz. ③ reading, too?

Maya : ④ , I do.

Noha : What's your ⑤ ?

Maya : Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.

Noha : Is it interesting?

Maya : Yes, of course.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather moves in a/an ; he can't walk.

a appearance

b adventure

c wheelchair

d character

2. The sharks we saw at the film were really

a scary

b cheerful

c cheap

d low

3. These drawings made us laugh.

a final

b fallen

c funny

d flat

4. Our new teacher, Mrs Mona, has a kind, friendly

- a** personality **b** adventure **c** person **d** difference

5. The child is by the ugly man.

- a** interesting **b** funny **c** cool **d** frightened

6. Sailing across the Atlantic is a great

- a** adventure **b** appearance **c** character **d** personality

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

A character in a book or film

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What is your favourite book called? - What is it about?
- Who is your favourite character? - What does he/she do in that book?
- What is your favourite character like?
- Why is he/she your favourite character?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My favourite book is - It's about a boy/girl who
- is a brave boy/girl.
- I like because he/she is a brave boy/girl.

Excel Yourself?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. My uncle's twins got blond hair.

- a** is **b** has **c** have **d** are

2. I met a two- -tall man yesterday.

- a** metres **b** metre **c** metre's **d** metres'

3. Many people stood in a/an line to get tickets for the show.

- a** blond **b** hard **c** easy **d** straight

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Amira 've got long straight hair. (.....)

2. Good students like to learning about many things. (.....)



Vocabulary

goal	هدف (في مباراة)	scarf	وشاح (طريقة)	sports star	نجم رياضي
Europe	قارة أوروبا	glasses	نظارة	personality	شخصية
moustache	شارب (شنب)	beard	لحية (شعر الذقن والوجه)	fun	متعة - شخص أو شيء ممتع
twice	مرتان	fan	معجب / مشجع	(be) called	يُسمى / يدعى
character	شخصية (بكتاب/فيلم)	adventure	مغامرة	score (d)	يحرز / يسجل
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	wonderland	أرض العجائب	shout (ed)	يصيح
boring	ممل	together	معا / سويا	smile (n)(d)	ابتسامة / يبتسم
appearance	المظهر	grey	رمادي اللون		

Hair Styles

straight hair	شعر غير مجعد	long hair	شعر طويل	blond hair	شعر أشقر
short hair	شعر قصير	dark hair	شعر داكن	curly hair	شعر مجعد

School Subjects

history	مادة التاريخ	art	الرسم	painting	الرسم بالألوان
maths	مادة الرياضيات	drawing	الرسم بالقلم الرصاص / الجاف	science	مادة العلوم

Adjectives

sensible	عقل / رزين	exciting	مثير	dangerous	خطير
brave	شجاع	busy	مشغول	clever	ماهر
funny	فكاهي / مضحك	scary	مخيف / مرعب	nice	لطيف
angry	غاضب	cool	رائع / بارد	interesting	شيق
strange	غريب	frightened	خائف / مرعوب		

Adjectives & Opposites

tall	طويل	↔	short	قصير	straight	ناعم	↔	curly	مجعد (ملتف)
fast	سريع	↔	slow	بطيء	poor	فقير	↔	rich	غني
strong	قوي	↔	weak	ضعيف	friendly	ودود	↔	unfriendly	غير ودود
kind	عطوف	↔	unkind	غير عطوف					



Grammar

1 have / has got

إثبات

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → have('ve) got
 He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has('s) got

نفي

have not (haven't) got
 has not (hasn't) got

استفهام

Have / Has + فاعل + got? (كلمة استفهام)

- تستخدم لوصف السمات الشخصية لشخص / شيء / حيوان:

Ex. She **has got** ('s got) blond hair.

Ex. Her dog **has got** ('s got) long tail.

2 can / cannot (can't)

- تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة / عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ويأتي بعدهما المصدر.

Ex. Sally **can** help many people.

Ex. Sally **can't** drive the new car.

3 Verbs + v-ing / Prepositions + v-ing

- يأتي بعد الأفعال (like / love / enjoy) فعلاً مضاف له (ing)

- يأتي بعد حروف الجر فعلاً مضاف له (ing)

Ex. Do you **like / love / enjoy watching** TV?

- Yes, I do.



Speaking

1 Describing people

وصف الناس

Question	Answer
- Has/Have + فاعل + got....?	- Yes, فاعل + (has / have). - No, فاعل + haven't / haven't.
- What + do / does + فاعل + look like?	- فاعل + (have/has) got....
- Am/ Is/ Are + فاعل + the same or... / different from / to...?	- فاعل + am, is, are the same as... / different from / to

2) Describing your favourite sports star وصف نجمك الرياضي المفضل

Question	Answer
- Who is your favourite sports star?	- My favourite sports star is
- What sport does he / she do?	- He/ She plays
- What does your favourite star look like?	- He's/She's got (quite/very) long/ short hair and ...
- What can he/ she do?	- He/ She can jump high/score goals.

3) Describing a character from a story وصف شخصية من قصة

- للسؤال عن الرأي في شخص نستخدم:

- What + be + فاعل + like?

- He's/ She's + صفة

- وللإجابة نستخدم:

4) Expressing likes and dislikes التعبير عن ما نحب وعن ما لا نحب

◀ نسال عن ما يحب/لا يحب شخص بالأسئلة الآتية:

- What do/ does + فاعل + like / love (doing)? (فعله) ... يحب/يحبون ...
- What (food) do / does + فاعل + like / love? (الطعام) الذي تحبه/يحبه/يحبونه؟
- Which (book) do / does + فاعل + like / love? أي (الكتب) تحب/يحب/يحبونه؟
- What's (your / his) favourite....? ما المفضل لديك/لديه/لديهم؟
- Do / Does + فاعل + like / love...? هل تحب/يحب/يحبون؟

◀ وللإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

- I / We / They like / love (doing) - My / His favourite.... is / are.....
- He / She likes / loves (doing) - I'm / He's good / bad at (n / v-ing)

◀ لإبداء سبب حبنا لشيء ما نستخدم **because** :

- I like / love..... because
- He likes / loves..... because

١- للتعبير عما لا نحب نستخدم صيغة النفي كالاتي:

- (No,) + فاعل + don't / doesn't like

- Yes, I do. / No, I don't. (✓)

- Yes, I like. (x)

٢- للإجابة المختصرة نستخدم

لاحظ الآتي:

General Exercises on Unit 3

1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Ziad and Ahmed are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Ziad : Hello! Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hello! Ziad.

Ziad : Do you like ① football?

Ahmed : Yes, ②

Ziad : Who is your ③ ?

Ahmed : Mohamed Salah. He ④ a lot of goals.

Ziad : What does he look like?

Ahmed : ⑤ a beard and curly hair.

Ziad : Why do people like him?

Ahmed : He has usually got a big smile.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A giraffe is a animal.

SB

- a rich b tall c poor d long

2. Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very

SB

- a slow b unfriendly c unkind d friendly

3. Has Samir's dad got a ?

الأزهر الشريف / الغربية ٢٠٢١

- a beard b bread c planet d dairy

4. I need my, please. I want to read the newspaper.

- a glass b socks c glasses d gloves

5. Leila play basketball. She's too short.

- a can b could c have d can't

6. My friend Ali and I got straight hair.

- a has b have c do d does

7. your father got a moustache?

WB

- a Have b Do c Has d Does

8. How many did your team score?

- a goals b fans c metres d presents

Unit 3 Different people

- 9 What does your teacher of English look ?
 a off b like c to d about
10. Nevine loves tennis. WB
 a played b to playing c playing d plays
11. Maya tennis, but she likes basketball. WB
 a likes b don't like c like d doesn't like
12. sport do you like? القليوبية / كفر شكر ٢٠٢١
 a Which b Who c Where d When
13. What your maths teacher look like?
 a do b is c does d are
14. I can drive a car, but I ride a bike.
 a can b can't c does d have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I like watch football matches. سوهاج / طهطا ٢٠٢١ (.....)
2. We enjoyed stay at the park yesterday. (.....)
3. Mary doesn't got dark hair, she has got blond hair. (.....)
4. Has your dad get a moustache? (.....)
5. A: Can you telling me a story, mum? B: Yes, I can. (.....)
6. We can live without air. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

A blog post about a friend

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What does he / she look like?
- What is he / she like?
- What does he / she like doing?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My friend has got
- He / she is
- He / she likes doing

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1- The speaker's name is

a Sherif

b Farid

c Kamal

d Rami

2- The speaker goes to the club every

a Monday

b Friday

c Sunday

d Tuesday

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Fatima : What is your favourite school subject?

Shimaa :

2- Walid :

Mahmoud : People like Mohamed Salah because he has a nice smile.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hello, everybody. My name is Ahmed. I was born in 2008. I live in Aswan. My address is 16, Oraby Street. I'm not good at English, but I'm excellent at Arabic and Science. I like writing emails, taking photos with my new camera, reading and swimming. In my free time, I help my father with his work on the farm. He grows crops and keeps animals.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What does Ahmed like doing?

.....

2- Where does Ahmed live?

.....

3- What do you think Ahmed's father's job is?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Ahmed is years old.

a four

b fourteen

c fifteen

d five

5- Ahmed is bad at

a English

b Arabic

c Maths

d Social Studies

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

A person in your family "your grandfather"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What is your grandfather called?
- What does he look like?
- What does he do?

- What is he like?
- Why do you like him?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My grandfather is called
- He's very kind and
- He has got short hair.
- He is a person.

- I like him very much.
- He is tall. He has got a
- I want to be like him.

Unit 3 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Magid is a

a teacher

b doctor

c farmer

d student

2. He likes

a playing

b working

c reading

d writing

3. He doesn't like playing games.

a video

b computer

c sports

d Olympic

4. He likes writing

a stories

b emails

c books

d letters

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rania and Naglaa are talking about hobbies.

Rania : Hi, Naglaa.

Naglaa : Hi, Rania.

Rania : What's your favourite hobby?

Naglaa : I ¹ reading and sports.

Rania : ² do you like playing?

Naglaa : I like ³ tennis. Do you like it, too?

Rania : ⁴ , I like playing basketball.

Naglaa : Where do you play it?

Rania : ⁵

Naglaa : Nice, I'll come with you and try it.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

WB

My sister's name is Judy. She is 13 years old. She has got long brown hair and green eyes. She's very friendly. All her friends love her. She's also clever. She studies hard. She always comes first at school. Her teachers say she'll be a doctor one day. Judy likes sports. She plays tennis in the club every week. She also watches football matches on TV. She likes reading books when she doesn't study. She is also a very funny person. She has got a big, friendly smile. I am very happy that she is my younger sister!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Judy look like?

2. Why do people like Judy?

3. How old is Judy?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer his sister.

a hates

b likes

c helps

d reads

5. The writer is than Judy.

a younger

b slower

c older

d shorter

6. Judy goes to the club every

a day

b week

c month

d year

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brothers and I don't like TV after school.

a watching

b watch

c watches

d watched

2. Nada always answers questions in class. She is

a scary

b angry

c clever

d slow

3. you use your new computer well?

a Does

b Can

c Have

d Has

4. My best friend got short dark hair.

a has

b to have

c having

d have

5. How _____ is that tree? - It's 5 metres tall.

- a** big **b** long **c** strong **d** tall

6. My sister Lina has got long hair _____ glasses.

- a** because **b** and **c** as **d** but

7. Social studies and science are school _____ .

- a** objects **b** teams **c** subjects **d** groups

8. My father is very busy, _____ he plays sports every day.

- a** from **b** but **c** so **d** so that

9. My grandmother gives me useful advice. She is really _____ .

- a** scary **b** frightening **c** sensible **d** dark

10. Something scary makes you feel _____ .

- a** sad **b** bad **c** funny **d** frightened

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Rabbits like eat carrots. (_____)
- Tamer's leg is broken, so he can play football. (_____)
- Do your father like driving cars? (_____)
- My sister Noha have got a big smile. (_____)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Your favourite book

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- Who is your favourite writer?
- What is your favourite book called?
- What is it about?
- Who are the characters?
- Why do you like that book?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I love reading books by
- My favourite book is
- It's about
- The other characters are
- I like that book because

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

scientist	عالم	chart	رسم بياني
family tree	شجرة عائلة	theatre	مسرح
million	مليون	pop music	موسيقى البوب
ankle	كاحل القدم	coat	معطف (بالطو)



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (32)

My Family By Lina

- 1 This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark curly hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.



- 2 This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall! He's a teacher and he's very clever.

- 3 Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children - a son and a daughter. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly.



- 4 Malak is two. She's got short, straight hair. She likes playing with her toys. She usually has a big smile. I think she's very funny.

WB Page (93)

Teacher : OK children. It's time to go home. I've got four school bags here.

Magda : Huda's bag has got flowers on it. That's her bag there.

Maya : That's Amal's bag. It has got birds on it.

Nevine : Lina's bag is red. It hasn't got any pictures on it.

Teacher : Good, but I've now got one bag with tennis balls on it. Is it your bag, Magda?

Magda : No, it isn't my bag. I think it's one of the twins' bags.

Teacher : Yes, but which twin, Azza or Dalia?



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (33)

استمع إلى النص



Woman : What time do you get up, Shady?

Shady : I usually get up at quarter to seven on a school day.

Woman : How do you travel to school?

Shady : I always walk to school with my brother. We never go by car.

Woman : Do you like school?

Shady : Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

Woman : And what do you do after school?

Shady : I sometimes play sport. On Mondays, I play football and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

Woman : Do you have any other hobbies? Do you play chess?

Shady : No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music or watch TV.



WB Page (93)

استمع إلى النص



Aya : Hi, My name's Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I've got short curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject is Art. I love drawing. I'm not very good at it, but I want to be! We have Art at quarter to eleven, after Maths and before English. I've got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever.



WB Page (94)

استمع إلى النص



Boy 1 : I often go to the cinema with my uncle.

Girl 1 : Do you like playing chess?

Girl 1 : I've got a long, white coat.

Boy 1 : After break, we go to the hall.

Girl 1 : My uncle has got glasses and a beard.

Revision on Units 1, 2 & 3



Vocabulary

male	مذكر / ذكر	interview	مقابلة شخصية / حوار	appearance	المظهر
female	مؤنث / أنثى	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي	aunt	عمة - خالة
drum	طبل	band	فرقة موسيقية	uncle	عم - خال
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	twins	توائم	attic	غرفة بأعلى المنزل
brother	أخ	sister	أخت	grey	رمادي اللون
grandfather	جد	grandmother	جدة	goats	ماعز
son	ابن	daughter	ابنة	city	مدينة
great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر	mum = mother	أم	mountain	جبل
dad = father	أب	parent	أحد الوالدين	the Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية
athlete	لاعب رياضي	gymnast	لاعب جمباز	hobby	هواية
orphan	يتيم	gymnastics	لعبة الجمباز	quite	إلى حد ما / إلى حد كبير
library	مكتبة	typical	نموذجي (معتاد)	bike	دراجة (هوائية)
hall	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)	transport	النقل والمواصلات	sports star	نجم رياضي
canoe	قارب صغير خفيف	playground	ملعب / فناء	personality	شخصية
subject	مادة دراسية	bell	جرس	fun	متعة - شخص أو شيء مسلي
favourite	مفضل	snowmobile	زحافة جليد	achieve(d)	يحقق / ينجز
goal	هدف (في مباراة)	scarf	وشاح (طرحة)	balance(d)	يوازن
Europe	قارة أوروبا	glasses	نظارة	train(ed)	يتدرب
moustache	شارب (شنب)	beard	لحية (شعر الذقن والوجه)	cycle(d)	يقود دراجة
twice	مرتان	fan	معجب / مشجع	(be) called	يُسمى / يدعى
character	شخصية (بكتاب/فيلم)	adventure	مغامرة	score(d)	يحرز / يسجل
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	wonderland	أرض العجائب	shout(ed)	يصيح
boring	ممل	together	معاً / سوياً	smile(n) (d)	ابتسامة / يبتسم
cousin	ابن / ابنة (العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة)	great-grandchildren	أبناء الأحفاد		

Adverbs of frequency

always	دائماً	sometimes	أحياناً	never	أبداً
often	غالباً	usually	عادةً		

School Subjects

maths	مادة الرياضيات	home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلي
social studies	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
drama	مادة الفن المسرحي	Arabic	اللغة العربية
music	التربية الموسيقية	computer studies	مادة الحاسب الآلي
art	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)	history	مادة التاريخ
religion	التربية الدينية	drawing	الرسم بالقلم الرصاص / الجاف
science	مادة العلوم	painting	الرسم بالألوان
PE (Physical Education)	التربية البدنية (الرياضية)		

Hair Styles

straight hair	شعر غير مجعد	long hair	شعر طويل	blond hair	شعر أشقر
short hair	شعر قصير	dark hair	شعر داكن	curly hair	شعر مجعد

Adjectives

sensible	عقل / رزين	exciting	مثير	dangerous	خطير
brave	شجاع	busy	مشغول / مزدحم	clever	ماهر
funny	فكاهي / مضحك	scary	مخيف / مرعب	nice	لطيف
angry	غاضب	cool	رائع / بارد	interesting	شيق
strange	غريب	frightened	خائف / مرعوب		

Adjectives & Opposites

tall	طويل	↔	short	قصير	straight	ناعم	↔	curly	مجعد (ملتف)
fast	سريع	↔	slow	بطئ	poor	فقير	↔	rich	غني
strong	قوي	↔	weak	ضعيف	friendly	ودود	↔	unfriendly	غير ودود
kind	عطوف	↔	unkind	غير عطوف					

Expressions & Prepositions

do a sport	يمارس رياضة	proud of	فخور بـ...
do the homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي	at the end of ...	في نهاية ...
make (a) noise	يحدث ضوضاء	good at	جيد في
make a video call	يقوم بعمل مكالمة فيديو	arrive at	يصل إلى
come home	يأتي للمنزل	at the top of ...	في أعلى ...
achieve a dream	يحقق حلم	communicate with	يتواصل مع
have breakfast	يتناول طعام الإفطار	far away	بعيد
have a shower	يأخذ دُش	go in a canoe	يذهب في قارب
		on a snowmobile	على زحافة جليد

Revision on Units 1, 2 & 3

tell the time	يخبر عن الوقت	on time	في الوقت المحدد
take a journey	يقوم برحلة طويلة	put on	يرتدي ملابس
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد	cycle to school	يركب دراجة إلى المدرسة
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	wake up	يستيقظ
score goals	يسجل أهداف	work with computers	يتعامل مع الكمبيوتر
take a holiday	ياخذ أجازة	play for	يلعب لصالح
do maths	يدرس مادة الرياضيات	look like	يشبه
He is a lot of fun .	إنه شخص مسلي جدًا.	happy about	سعيد بشأن
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	frightened of	خائف من
get angry	يغضب	different from / to	مختلف عن
		in a wheelchair	على كرسي متحرك



Grammar

1) Possessive adjectives and pronouns

Possessive adjectives

صفات ملكية يتبعها اسم

Possessive pronouns

ضمائر ملكية لا يتبعها اسم

my	his	her	its	our	your	their
mine	his	hers	-	ours	yours	theirs

2) The present simple tense

Subject الفاعل	I / You / We / They / اسم جمع	He / She / It / اسم مفرد
Form	inf.	inf. + s / es / ies
Negative	don't + inf.	doesn't + inf.
Question	Do + فاعل + inf...? (كلمة استفهام)	Does + فاعل + inf...? (كلمة استفهام)
Keywords	every.... / always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / never	

3) Adverbs of frequency

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل:

always	دائمًا	usually	عادةً
often	غالبًا	sometimes	أحيانًا
never	أبداً		

Ex. I **always** help my mother at home.

Ex. We **never** make noise in the library.

How often....?

كم عدد المرات.....؟

Ex. How often do you go to the cinema?

4 The possessive ('s / ')

- Ali's book.
- The dog's food
- The boys' books
- The dogs' food
- The children's toys
- James' (James's) car

5 have / has got

إثبات

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → have('ve) got
 He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has('s) got

نفي

have not (haven't) got
 has not (hasn't) got

استفهام

Have / Has + فاعل + got? (كلمة استفهام)

- تستخدم لوصف السمات الشخصية لشخص / شيء / حيوان:

Ex. I have got ('ve got) curly hair.

Ex. My cat has got ('s got) long tail.

6 can / cannot (can't)

- تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة / عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ويأتي بعدهما المصدر.

Ex. She can help old people.

Ex. She can't give them money.

7 Verbs + v-ing / Prepositions + v-ing

- يأتي بعد الأفعال (like / love / enjoy) فعلاً مضاف له (ing)

- يأتي بعد حروف الجر فعلاً مضاف له (ing)

Ex. Do you like / love / enjoy playing music?

- Yes, I'm good at playing music.

Speaking

1 Talking about your family:

الحديث عن عائلتك:

• استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن عائلتك:

Ex. My parents **are** teachers.Ex. We **live** in Giza.Ex. My brother **is** 13 years old.Ex. We **have** one cousin, Khadeeja.

2 Asking and answering questions about people: السؤال والاجابة عن الأشخاص:

تذكر تكوين السؤال في زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلي:

① (كلمة إستفهام) → ② فعل مساعد/ ناقص → ③ فاعل → ④ فعل رئيسي → ⑤? التكملة

Ex. What's his/her name?

Ex. Where **does** he/she live?Ex. **Do** you listen to music?

يمكن استخدام الصيغة السابقة لعمل أسئلة في زمن المضارع البسيط عن الأشخاص.

Ex. His name **is** Alaa.Ex. He **lives** in Al-Haram.Ex. Yes, I **do**.

تذكر استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط في الإجابة عن الأسئلة السابقة

3 Asking about the time:

السؤال عن الوقت:

• للسؤال عن وقت حدوث شيء نستخدم أحد الاساليب الآتية:

متى؟ ؟.....؟ فعل + فاعل + do/ does + What time

Ex. What time **does** science **start** on Sunday?

متى تكون.....؟؟ فاعل + What time is +

Ex. What time **is** the break?

4 Asking and answering about timetables: السؤال والاجابة عن جداول المواعيد:

• للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء في المضارع البسيط نستخدم:

كم مرة يحدث.....؟؟ فاعل + inf....? + do / does + How often

Ex. How often **do** you **get up** at 6.30 am?

• للرد نستخدم:

adverb of frequency + verb فاعل

Ex. I **never** **get up** at 6.30 am! I **usually** **get up** at 7 am.

5 Asking about possession:

السؤال عن الملكية:

نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (Whose) للسؤال عن الملكية:

Whose + الشئ / الأشياء + is / are ?

Ex. Whose pencil is that?

للإجابة نستخدم (ضمائر الملكية / صفات الملكية / 's):

Ex. It's mine.

Ex. It's my pencil.

Ex. It's Ali's.

6 Talking about journeys to school:

الحديث عن رحلات الذهاب الى المدرسة:

Question	Answer
How do you travel to school?	I travel to school by bus.
How long does it take?	It takes about half an hour.
Why do some children need to take difficult journeys to school?	Because this is the only way they can go to school.
Why is it important to go to school?	Because we all need to learn and study.

7 Asking and answering about a school day:

السؤال والالجابة عن يوم مدرسي:

Question	Answer
What subject have we got next?	It's computer studies next.
What is your favourite subject?	I like science.
Are you good at languages?	I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.
Who is our English teacher this year?	It's Mrs Amal.
When have we got science?	It is after break.

8 Describing people

وصف الناس:

Question	Answer
- Has / Have + فاعل + got....?	- Yes, فاعل + (has / have). - No, فاعل + haven't / haven't.
- What + do / does + فاعل + look like?	- (have/has) got.... فاعل
- Am/ Is/ Are + فاعل + the same or... / different from / to...?	- am, is, are the same as... / different from / to فاعل

9 Describing your favourite sports star

وصف نجمك الرياضى المفضل:

Question	Answer
- Who is your favourite sports star?	- My favourite sports star is
- What sport does he / she do?	- He/ She plays
- What does your favourite star look like?	- He's/She's got (quite/very) long/ short hair and ...
- What can he/ she do?	- He/ She can jump high/score goals.

10 Describing a character from a story:

وصف شخصية من قصة:

- للسؤال عن الرأي في شخص نستخدم:

- What + be + فاعل + like?

- وللإجابة نستخدم:

- He's/ She's + صفة

11 Expressing likes and dislikes

التعبير عن ما نحب وعن ما لا نحب:

◀ نسال عن ما يحب/لا يحب شخص بالأسئلة الآتية:

- What do/ does + فاعل + like / love (doing)? (فعله) ... يحب/ يحبون ...
- What (food) do / does + فاعل + like / love? ما (الطعام) الذي تحبه/ يحبه/ يحبونه؟
- Which (book) do / does + فاعل + like / love? أي (الكتب) تحب/ يحب/ يحبونه؟
- What's (your / his) favourite....? ما المفضل لديك/ لديه/ لديهم؟
- Do / Does + فاعل + like / love...? هل تحب/ يحب/ يحبون؟

◀ وللإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

- I / We / They like / love (doing)..... - My / His favourite.... is / are.....
- He / She likes / loves (doing)..... - I'm / He's good / bad at (n / v-ing)

◀ لإبداء سبب حبنا لشيء ما نستخدم because :

- I like / love..... because
- He likes / loves..... because

1- للتعبير عما لا نحب نستخدم صيغة النفي كالاتي:

- (No,) + فاعل + don't / doesn't like
- Yes, I do. / No, I don't. (✓)
- ~~Yes, I like.~~ (×)

2- للإجابة المختصرة نستخدم

لاحظ الآتي:



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Ahmed is talking to his

- a** uncle **b** father **c** aunt **d** granddad

2. Ahmed's granddad is playing

- a** tennis **b** chess **c** games **d** football

3. Ahmed is doing his homework.

- a** Arabic **b** English **c** science **d** maths

4. Ahmed's mum and sister are taking

- a** showers **b** meals **c** selfies **d** trips

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir is speaking about himself.

Salah : Good morning, Samir.

Samir : Good morning, Salah.

Salah : How many sisters **1**?

Samir : I've got three sisters.

Salah : **2** do you like?

Samir : I like swimming.

Salah : **3**?

Samir : Yes, I go to the club every week.

Salah : **4** you climb a tall tree?

Samir : No, I **5**

C Reading Comprehension

WB

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Sameh. I was born in Tanta. My family lives in a big family house. There is a big garden behind the house. My mum is called Soha. She's 33 and she works in an office. My father is called Youssry. He is 36 and he is a science teacher. I am 12 years old and I have got two brothers and a sister. My brothers are twins. They are Ahmed and Salah. They are 8 years old. My sister is Safaa and she is 3.

My father's parents live in the USA. We visit them every summer. They live on a farm and they have got horses and cows.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where do Sameh's parents live?

2. Where does Sameh's mother work?

3. How old is Youssry?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Sameh is _____ than Safaa.

☐ a younger

☐ b older

☐ c shorter

☐ d weaker

5. Sameh's grandparents live in _____.

☐ a Australia

☐ b Giza

☐ c London

☐ d America

6. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to _____.

☐ a Sameh's sisters

☐ b Sameh's parents

☐ c Sameh's grandparents

☐ d Samah's brothers

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wore a heavy _____ because it was really cold.

☐ a cover

☐ b coat

☐ c canoe

☐ d paper

2. I never listen _____ music.

☐ a to

☐ b at

☐ c of

☐ d by

3. I go swimming _____ a week.

☐ a two

☐ b one

☐ c three

☐ d twice

4. A: Is that your _____ car? B: Yes, it's theirs.

- a** parents' **b** parent's **c** parents **d** parent

5. French is an easy school _____.

- a** game **b** subject **c** timetable **d** sport

6. The book belongs to the girl. It's _____.

- a** she **b** her **c** hers **d** his

7. We sometimes _____ Computer Studies at school.

- a** has **b** have **c** having **d** to have

8. I like _____ films. They are really exciting.

- a** adventure **b** chart **c** feature **d** character

9. He does some _____ work in a hospital.

- a** useless **b** house **c** voluntary **d** dirty

10. I rang the _____, but no one was in the house.

- a** bill **b** ball **c** boat **d** bell

5 Read and correct the underlined words

1. Ali room is bigger than mine. (_____)
2. My sister doesn't likes milk. (_____)
3. This is mine school bag. (_____)
4. This man is strong. He can't carry this box. (_____)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

SB

Your family

The world around us



UNIT 4 We're using technology!

Objectives

Reading:

A text message conversation; a text about hobbies

Writing:

A paragraph and a poster about online safety

Listening:

A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call

Speaking:

Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions

Language:

There is / There are; the present continuous

Life Skills:

Problem solving: resilience

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

laptop computer	كمبيوتر محمول (لاب توب)	website	موقع على الإنترنت
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى (تابليت)	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء
mobile phone	هاتف جوال (محمول)	online (adv) (adj)	عبر الإنترنت / متصل بالإنترنت
mouse (mouses)	فأرة الكمبيوتر (ماوس)	selfie (selfies)	صورة سيلفى
MP3 player	مشغل ملفات الصوت	video call	مكالمة فيديو
phone charger	شاحن الهاتف	charge (d)	يشحن
printer	طابعة	print (ed)	يطبع
3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد		

Verbs & nouns

that come together

play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	click on an icon	ينقر أيقونة «بالموس»
take a selfie	يلتقط صورة سيلفى	tap on an icon	يضغط على أيقونة «بالإصبع»
make a video call	يجرى مكالمة فيديو	win a game	يفوز بمباراة
make a cake	تصنع كعكة	print the homework	يطبع الواجب المنزلى
make a model	يصنع نموذج	charge the phone	يشحن الهاتف
write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني	design an icon	يصمم أيقونة
look at a website	يتصفح موقع الإنترنت	do Computer Studies homework	يقوم بعمل واجب الحاسب الآلى
send (a photo / a text message)	يرسل (صورة / رسالة نصية)		



Vocabulary

technology	التكنولوجيا	planet	كوكب
picture	صورة (طبيعية أو مرسومة)	chair	كرسى
objects	أشياء	classmate	زميل الفصل
information	معلومات	plastic model	نموذج بلاستيكي
icon	أيقونة / رمز	design (ed)	يصمم «شيء»
text message	رسالة نصية	click (ed) (n)	يضغط على زر / نقرة «على الماوس»
chess piece	قطعة شطرنج	tap (ped)	يضغط برفق «على أيقونة»
modern	حديث / معاصر		

Adverbs of place

next to بجوار



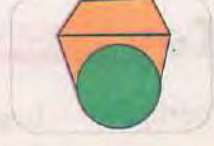
Ex. The ball is **next to** the box.

behind خلف



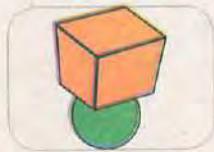
Ex. The ball is **behind** the box.

in front of أمام



Ex. The ball is **in front of** the box.

under تحت



Ex. The ball is **under** the box.

near قريب من



Ex. The ball is **near** the box.



Words & Meanings

charge	يشحن	increase ⁽¹⁾ the power ⁽²⁾ of a battery ⁽³⁾	Arabic Meaning
click	ينقر	press ⁽⁴⁾ a mouse or icon to make something happen on a computer	١- يزيد ٢- طاقة
icon	أيقونة	a small picture on a computer screen ⁽⁵⁾	٣- بطارية ٤- يضغط
MP3 player	مشغل ملفات صوت	a machine ⁽⁶⁾ that can play music	٥- شاشة
online	عبر الإنترنت	using the internet	٦- آلة
3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	a machine that can print documents ⁽⁷⁾ from a computer	٧- وثائق
selfie	صورة سيلفي	a photo you take to yourself	٨- متنقل
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى	a flat, mobile ⁽⁸⁾ computer that is smaller than a laptop computer	٩- متصل
tap	يضغط برفق	touch quickly with your finger	
website	موقع على الإنترنت	an internet page with information about something	
phone charger	شاحن الهاتف	you use a phone charger to increase the battery power of a mobile phone	
whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	a classroom board that is sometimes connected ⁽⁹⁾ to a computer	

Expressions & Prepositions

use tablets	يستخدم الأجهزة اللوحية	at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة
What time? = When...?	فى أى وقت...؟ متى...؟	look for	يبحث عن
It's quite easy to use.	إنه سهل الاستخدام تمامًا.	charge.... with	يشحن... باستخدام
I don't know why	لا أعرف لماذا...	on the phone	على الهاتف

Word Differences

tap	يضغط برفق	tape	شريط (لاصق - كاسيت)
mouse	فأرة «الكمبيوتر» / فأر «حيوان»	mouth	فم
homework	الواجب المنزلي	housework	الأعمال المنزلية
model	نموذج	medal	ميدالية
printer	طابعة	painter	رسام

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sit down	يجلس	sat down	sat down
send	يرسل	sent	sent
make	يصنع	made	made
do	يفعل	did	done



Language Notes

1) charge - recharge - charger

- **charge (d)** يشحن / يمد بالطاقة (بطارية / جهاز)

Ex. You need to **charge** your new mobile phone battery now.

- **recharge (d)** يعيد شحن (بطارية / جهاز)

Ex. You need to **recharge** your mobile phone. The battery is only 2%.

- **charger (n)** شاحن (جهاز لشحن بطارية / جهاز)

Ex. He's charging his phone with a phone **charger**.

2) a or an

تستخدم أداة النكرة (an) أمام بعض الأسماء التي تبدأ بحرف ساكن لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك، ومن أمثلة هذه الكلمات:

SMS / MP3 player

Ex. I bought **an MP3 player** last week.

Ex. When you get home, send me **an SMS**.

3 click - tap

• click (ed) (on) ينقر (زر فأرة الكمبيوتر / أيقونة)

Ex. Click twice on the mouse to open this image.

Ex. I clicked on the icon to listen to the song.

• tap (ped) (on) يضغط برفق (على شاشة / أيقونة)

Ex. Tap the messages icon to start writing a message.

Ex. I tapped on the icon many times but the mobile didn't work.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I forgot the _____ for my mobile phone at home.
 a charge b charger c laptop d website
- You must _____ your mobile phone battery before you leave.
 a listen b type c choose d recharge
- I will send my dad _____ SMS tomorrow.
 a an b a c many d much
- You can choose the photo you want by _____ on it.
 a checking b clicking c listening d making



موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (34)

I am Ziad and this is a **picture**⁽¹⁾ of my **classroom**⁽²⁾. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, **too**⁽³⁾. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it's **called**⁽⁴⁾ a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer, too.

My friend, Omar, is **printing**⁽⁵⁾ his homework. I have got a mobile phone, but it's in my bag - we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's **charging**⁽⁶⁾ his phone with a **phone charger**⁽⁷⁾. And he's got a new **MP3 player**⁽⁸⁾, it's small and blue. Can you see it?

Arabic Meaning

- ١- صورة
- ٢- حجرة الفصل
- ٣- أيضاً
- ٤- يُسمى
- ٥- يطبع
- ٦- يشحن
- ٧- شاحن هاتف
- ٨- مشغل ملفات الصوت

SB Page (36)



Hi, Granddad⁽¹⁾. It's Adam. What are you doing?

I'm playing chess⁽²⁾ online⁽³⁾. I'm winning at the moment!



Are you using your new laptop?



Yes, it's quite easy to use. What are you doing?



I'm doing my computer studies⁽⁴⁾ homework. I'm looking at websites⁽⁵⁾ for information⁽⁶⁾ about 3D printers⁽⁷⁾.



What are your mum and Alia doing?



They're taking selfies⁽⁸⁾. I'm sending you one of their photos⁽⁹⁾ now.



Oh yes! That's a great photo.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- جد
- ٢- الشطرنج
- ٣- عبر الإنترنت
- ٤- مادة الحاسب الآلي
- ٥- مواقع على الإنترنت
- ٦- معلومات
- ٧- طابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
- ٨- صور سيلفي
- ٩- صور



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (35)

There's a laptop computer⁽¹⁾ on the table. Under⁽²⁾ the table there's a printer⁽³⁾. There isn't an MP3 player⁽⁴⁾, but there are two mobile phones⁽⁵⁾ near⁽⁶⁾ the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse⁽⁷⁾.



استمع إلى النص



Arabic Meaning

- ١- كمبيوتر محمول
- ٢- تحت
- ٣- طابعة
- ٤- مشغل ملفات الصوت
- ٥- هاتف محمول
- ٦- بالقرب من
- ٧- فأرة الكمبيوتر



Videoscript

SB Page (36)

Narrator : We use technology every day. **Modern**⁽¹⁾ technology is very different from technology in the past. The **ancient Egyptians**⁽²⁾ used their own forms of technology to do a lot of different things. For example, ancient Egypt was the first **civilization**⁽³⁾ to use **calendars**⁽⁴⁾. This is a calendar in the Temple of Karnak in Luxor.

Today, we can use our phones to find our way. The ancient Egyptians used **astronomy**⁽⁵⁾ to find their way in the desert and at sea. Astronomy is the study of stars and **planets**⁽⁶⁾.

How do you tell the time? Have you got a phone.. or a watch?

The ancient Egyptians had the first clocks. They were called **sundials**⁽⁷⁾, like this one in Alexandria. They used the sun to tell the time.

Hieroglyphics⁽⁸⁾ is the oldest writing in the world. The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphics to **communicate**⁽⁹⁾.

And of course, the ancient Egyptians used a plant called **papyrus**⁽¹⁰⁾ to make the first kind of paper.

This is papyrus. It grows along the River Nile. Today, we use different technology to the ancient Egyptians. This woman is writing a text message on her phone. And this man is writing a story. He is not using paper at all!

Today, we have calendars on our phones, computers and tablets. Today's technology is different, but we can thank the ancient Egyptians for starting the **ideas**⁽¹¹⁾ for our technology too.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- حديث
- ٢- المصريون
- ٣- حضارة
- ٤- نتيجة «تقويم»
- ٥- علم الفلك
- ٦- الكواكب
- ٧- مزولة «ساعة شمسية»
- ٨- اللغة
- ٩- يتواصل
- ١٠- نبات البردي
- ١١- أفكار

Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is talking to his granddad.

Omar : Hi, Granddad. It's Omar. What are you doing?

Granddad : I'm playing chess online.

Omar : Are you using your new 1?

Granddad : Yes, it's easy to use. What are you doing?

Omar : I'm sending ②

Granddad : ③ are you sending the email to?

Omar : I'm sending it to one of my friends.

Granddad : Where does he live?

Omar : He lives in England. I'm sending you ④ of him now.

Granddad : Oh, yes! That's a ⑤ photo.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ziad has got a new MP3

SB

- a** teacher **b** listener **c** player **d** printer

2. Our teacher writes clearly on the classroom

- a** whiteboard **b** printer **c** MP3 player **d** charger

3. on the icon to show the picture on the screen.

- a** Look **b** Block **c** Take **d** Click

4. Nadia is sitting next her best friend in the classroom.

- a** at **b** to **c** on **d** under

5. There is a mouse to the laptop on the teacher's desk.

إدارة بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢ WB

- a** there **b** next **c** between **d** far

6. I can't use my tablet. I need to it.

- a** wave **b** finish **c** print **d** charge

7. the icon on your mobile phone.

سوهاج / اخميم ٢٠٢٢ WB

- a** Type **b** Call **c** Tap **d** Tie

8. You can use the front camera of your mobile to take

شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١

- a** selfies **b** messages **c** calls **d** shelves

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Adam is sending _____ messages to his grandfather now. **SB**
a test b text c selfie d icon
- You can _____ a new icon on the tablet. **أسوان / ادفوا ٢٠٢١**
a design b print c charge d fly
- Soha looks at a _____ for information about her new 3D printer.
a charger b mouse c chess d website
- _____ at the website and find information. **WB**
a Look b Tap c Charge d Use
- I usually put my shoes _____ my desk.
a next b here c under d between
- We _____ many selfies when we were in the park.
a made b designed c used d took
- A blog is a/an _____ diary. **جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١**
a paper b online c click d print
- There are three laptop _____ in the classroom. **SB**
a players b videos c computers d phones
- The whiteboard is _____ the teacher's desk. **WB**
a between b behind c with d inside
- A _____ is a photo you take to yourself. **الغربية / زفتى ٢٠٢٢**
a door b printer c selfie d castle
- Ziad has got a _____ phone. **SB**
a mobile b mouse c icon d chair
- A _____ is easier to use and carry than a laptop.
a table b white board c tap d tablet
- Soha is making a video _____. **إدارة سوهاج ٢٠٢٢**
a cell b photo c call d line
- I use the _____ to recharge my mobile phone. **كفر الشيخ / قلين ٢٠٢٢**
a tablet b charger c mouse d earphone



Grammar

1 There is / There are

Remember: A- Countable nouns الأسماء التي تعد

• الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبقها (a / an) أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة (a / an).

• توضع a أمام الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن consonant sound وتوضع an أمام الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك vowel sound مثل: (a, e, i, o, u).

singular مفرد	plural جمع
a book	books
an apple	apples

B- Uncountable nouns الأسماء التي لا تعد

• الأسماء التي لا تعد لا تجمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد مثل:

bread / tea / rice / milk

Ex. The bread is next to the meat.

C- some / any بعض / أي

• تستخدم some بمعنى «بعض» في الجملة المثبتة أمام الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والذي لا يعد.

Ex. She bought some pens / meat.

• تستخدم any بمعنى «أي» في الجملة المنفية وفي السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والذي لا يعد.

Ex. I don't have any apples / rice.

Ex. Did you buy any pens / pasta?

يوجد / لا يوجد (للمفرد) There is / isn't

يوجد / لا يوجد (للجمع) There are / aren't

• تستخدم There is / isn't مع الأسماء التي تعد المفردة والأسماء التي لا تعد.

Ex. There is a printer / water on the table.

Ex. There isn't a phone charger / water on the table.

• تستخدم There are / aren't مع الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع):

Ex. There are two laptops on the table.

Ex. There aren't tablets on the table.

• للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

Is there...?

هل يوجد...؟

Are there...?

هل يوجد...؟

Ex. Is there any water on the table?

Ex. Are there any tablets on the desk?

Answer

Yes, there is / are.

No, there isn't / aren't.

• سيتم شرح الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة
Countable / Uncountable nouns في Unit 6 بالتفصيل.

ملحوظة

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ there many cars in the street?

a Is

b Do

c Does

d Are

2. There _____ any rice in the kitchen.

a don't

b aren't

c isn't

d doesn't

3. My neighbour asked me for _____ bread.

a any

b a

c some

d an

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Mona brought any cheese from the kitchen.

(_____)

2. Did Ali get some books from the bookshop?

(_____)

3. There are a lot of sugar in that juice.

(_____)

2

The present continuous tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

I

→ am

He / She / It / اسم مفرد

→ is

We / They / You / اسم جمع

→ are

V - ing.

Ex. I am playing football now.

Ex. Look! He is reading a book.

Usage الاستخدام

١- يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (في وقت الكلام).

Ex. Sara **is watching** TV now.

٢- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة تستغرق فترة من الوقت ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام.

Ex. He **is learning** German.

(أي أنه يتعلم الألمانية لفترة معينة من الوقت)

٣- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مرتب لها من قبل ستحدث في المستقبل.

Ex. Tomorrow, my dad **is taking** the bus to Giza.

٤- يستخدم لوصف صورة.

Ex. My little sister **is smiling** in this photo.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look!	انظر!	Watch out!	احترس!	still	ما زال
Listen!	استمع!	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	now	الآن
Look out!	احترس	at present	في الوقت الحاضر		

١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن

الأخير عند إضافة (ing) (مع بعض الأفعال ذو المقطع والواحد):

sit → sitting tap → tapping

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) غير منطوق يحذف الـ (e) ثم تضاف (ing) إلى الفعل:

use → using make → making

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) منطوق لا تحذف عند إضافة (ing):

see → seeing be → being

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (ie) تحول إلى (y) عند إضافة (ing):

lie → lying die → dying



Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She's you a photo now.

a send **b** sends **c** sent

d sending

WB

2. There any tablets in my classroom.

a aren't **b** is **c** isn't

d are

الغربية / زفتى ٢٠٢٢

3. there any printers in your school?

a Is **b** Am **c** Are

d Do

الشرقية / الحسينية ٢٠٢١

4. A: Is there teacher?

a any **b** a **c** an

B: No, there isn't.

d some

WB

5. Listen! A nice singer on the radio.

a sang **b** is singing **c** sing

d would sing

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Are there some tomatoes in the fridge? (إدارة سوهاج ٢٠٢٢) (.....)
- There is any tablets on the students' desks. (.....)
- They is watching TV in their room. (.....)
- Look! Adel was coming over there. (.....)
- My mother is cook lunch now. (قنا / دشنا ٢٠٢٢) (.....)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Look! My grandma a book. (WB)
 - read
 - is reading
 - have read
 - will read
- George his exercises now.
 - is doing
 - doing
 - does
 - was doing
- There aren't any in the kitchen.
 - water
 - tomatoes
 - juice
 - milk
- aren't any doctors in my family.
 - Here
 - Which
 - There
 - What
- Marwa a book now. (دمياط / كفر سعد ٢٠٢٢)
 - is reading
 - reads
 - reading
 - read
- They at websites for information. (WB)
 - 's looking
 - 's looked
 - 're looking
 - looking
- There is milk in the fridge. (الأزهر الشريف / الغربية ٢٠٢١)
 - some
 - any
 - a lot
 - a
- There a lot of water on the floor of the bathroom. (القليوبية / بنها ٢٠٢١)
 - has
 - are
 - were
 - is

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- There are an MP3 player behind the laptop. (WB) (.....)
- I'm play chess online now. (WB) (.....)
- Is there any chairs in the room? (.....)
- Ali read his English book at the moment. (الشرقية / المنشأة ٢٠٢١) (.....)
- Look! Ahmed and Ali eat. (.....)



Speaking

Asking and answering questions about your classroom

السؤال والإجابة عن فصلك الدراسي

للسؤال والإجابة عما يحتويه الفصل الدراسي من الممكن أن تقول:

A: What's in your classroom?

B: There are some laptops and a whiteboard. There aren't any tablets.

A: Is there a printer?

B: Yes, there is one.

A: Are there any mobile phones?

B: No, there aren't.

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Medhat and his mother are talking about his classroom.

Mother : Welcome back, Medhat. How is your new school?

Medhat : It is very nice and my friends are friendly.

Mother : How is your classroom?

Medhat : It's clean and there is a ① to write on.

Mother : Good! ② any tablets in the classroom?

Medhat : Yes, ③ four tablets.

Mother : Are there ④

Medhat : No, we don't take mobile phones to school.

Mother : ⑤ ?

Medhat : Yes, there's one.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I bought a new that can play music easily.

القلوبية / الخانكة ٢٠٢١

a printer b charger c MP3 player d mouse

2. There any laptops on the desk.

a aren't b is c isn't d have

3. She is an apple now.

سوهاج / طهطا ٢٠٢١

a eating b eats c eaten d ate

4. Computers and mobile phones are examples of

الأزهر الشريف / سوهاج ٢٠٢٢

a nature b farming c technology d subjects

5. When the battery of the mobile is low, I can use the

إدارة دمياط ٢٠٢٢

a cook

b printer

c charger

d keyboard

6. A lot of people are fond of selfies.

الجيزة / العمرانية ٢٠٢٢

a clicking

b tapping

c buying

d taking

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There was a lot of souvenirs at the market.

القليوبية / كفر شكر ٢٠٢١ (.....)

2. She can't talk to you now because she does her homework.

القليوبية / الخانكة ٢٠٢١ (.....)

3. Are there any sugar in the kitchen?

(.....)

4. Watch out! A car comes!

(.....)

5. I put any books on that shelf.

(.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Your classroom

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة المنشائية:

- Where is your classroom?
- Do you have many classmates?
- Are there any computers in your classroom?
- Do you have tablets in your classroom?
- Do you like your classroom? Why? Why not?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My classroom is in
- I have many classmates in
- We have three
- We have two in
- I like my classroom because

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



nature	الطبيعة	video call	مكالمة فيديو
hobby	هواية	break (n) (broke)	فترة راحة (فسحة) / يكسر



Vocabulary

conversation	محادثة	dancer	راقصة
flower	زهرة	programme	برنامج
bird	طائر	dictionary	قاموس
animal	حيوان	similar	متشابه
insect	حشرة	sunny	مشمس
garden	حديقة	black shoes	حذاء أسود
sky	السماء	shop	متجر - محل
eagle	الغُقاب (طائر جارح)	wave (d)	يلوح بيده
outside (adv/adj)	في الخارج / خارج	mime (d)	يمثل بالإشارة
video games	ألعاب الفيديو	guess (ed)	يخمن
school uniform	زي مدرسي		



Words & Meanings

nature	الطبيعة	the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us
videocall	مكالمة فيديو	a way to talk to and see people online

Expressions & Prepositions

take notes	يُدوّن ملاحظات	write with a pen	يكتب بقلم
have a hobby	لديه هواية	put his hand up	يرفع يده
all around us	حولنا	on the laptop	على اللاب توب
need help	يحتاج للمساعدة	smile at	يتسّمّل
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	at school	في المدرسة
fly a kite	يُطير طائرة ورقية	at break/lunchtime	في وقت الراحة/وقت الغداء
The programme is on	البرنامج معروض	at home	بالمنزل
aged 13	يلبغ من العمر ١٣ عامًا	listen to	يستمع إلى
		in the park	في المتنزه

Word Differences

advice (n)	نصيحة	advise (v)	ينصح
hobby	هواية	happy	سعيد
garden	حديقة	park	متنزه
flower	زهرة	flour	دقيق
		floor	أرضية الحجرة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
give	يعطى	gave	given
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
bring	يُحضِر	brought	brought



Language Notes

1) like - would ('d) like

- like + n / V-ing/ to + inf.

يحب

Ex. I like films.

Ex. I like watching films.

Ex. I like to watch films.

- would ('d) like + (to + inf. /n) = want + (to + inf. /n)

يرغب في / يود

Ex. Would you like some tea?

Ex. I'd like to use a 3D printer.

2) a lot of - lots of

تستخدمان عادةً في الإثبات مع الأسماء التي تُعد في صيغة الجمع وكذلك أمام الأسماء التي لا تُعد.

Ex. There are a lot of / lots of flowers and insects in the park.

Ex. Sarah bought a lot of / lots of sugar.

3) "always" with the present continuous

يمكن أن نستخدم always مع زمن المضارع المستمر لتعبير عن الشكوى من تكرار عمل شيء.

Ex. My sisters are always taking selfies. That's annoying.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are _____ of books on my desk.
 a a lot b a lots c much d any
2. We'd like _____ out in the evening.
 a to going b goes c going d to go
3. I don't like _____ in the house.
 a be b being c am d to being
4. Omnia is really careless. She _____ the door open.
 a always leave b always leaving c is always leaving d is always leaves



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (38)

استمع إلى النص



Randa : Hi, Sherifa, It's Randa.

Sherifa : Oh, hello Randa. Where are you? Are you at home?

Randa : Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our **cousins**⁽¹⁾ Ola, Reem and Samira.

Sherifa : What's mum doing?

Randa : She's looking at a **website**⁽²⁾. She wants to make a cake.

Sherifa : Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the **tablet**⁽³⁾?

Randa : No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an **email**⁽⁴⁾.

Sherifa : Is grandmother watching TV?

Randa : Yes, she is. It's her favourite **programme**⁽⁵⁾ on now.

Sherifa : **Of course**⁽⁶⁾. What're Ola and Samira doing?

Randa : They're taking selfies in the garden.

Sherifa : **Again**⁽⁷⁾? They're always taking selfies!

Randa : I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she's listening to music on her MP3 player.

Sherifa : She's a good **dancer**⁽⁸⁾! What are you doing, Randa?

Randa : I'm talking to you!

Sherifa : Oh yes!

Arabic Meaning

١- أبناء العم /

الخال

٢- موقع على

الإنترنت

٣- كمبيوتر

لوحي

٤- رسالة بريد

إلكتروني

٥- برنامج

٦- بالطبع

٧- مرة أخرى

٨- راقصة



WB Page (97)

- Judy** : Hi, Leila. Where are you?
Leila : Hi, Judy. I'm in the park with my family.
Judy : What are you doing there?
Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very **sunny**⁽¹⁾.
Judy : Are your brothers sitting too?
Leila : No, they aren't. They're playing football.
Judy : Is your dad playing football with them?
Leila : No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!
Judy : What's your mother doing?
Leila : Er, wait... here she is. She's **bringing**⁽²⁾ me a drink of water. **Thanks**⁽³⁾, Mum!

استمع إلى النص



Arabic Meaning

- ١- مشمس
 ٢- يُحضّر
 ٣- شكرًا



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (39)

Soha is not making a **video call**⁽¹⁾ but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology.

Fatma has got long, **curly hair**⁽²⁾. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone to send a **text message**⁽³⁾. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- اتصال فيديو
 ٢- شعر مجعد
 ٣- رسالة نصية

SB Page (40)

I love technology! My favourite **hobby**⁽¹⁾ is playing **video games**⁽²⁾. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Can you **guess**⁽³⁾ my favourite lesson at school? Yes, it is computer studies! At **break**⁽⁴⁾ and **lunchtime**⁽⁵⁾ I stay in the classroom and I look at video game websites on my phone.

Wael, age 12

I love **nature**⁽⁶⁾. I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and **insects**⁽⁷⁾ all **around**⁽⁸⁾ us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the **garden**⁽⁹⁾ and looking at the **sky**⁽¹⁰⁾. At school, I always go **outside**⁽¹¹⁾ at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!



Arabic Meaning

- ١- هواية
 ٢- ألعاب الفيديو
 ٣- يخمن
 ٤- وقت الراحة (فسيحة)
 ٥- وقت الغداء
 ٦- الطبيعة
 ٧- حشرات
 ٨- حول
 ٩- حديقة
 ١٠- السماء
 ١١- للخارج

I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, age 13



Say it correctly

* guess

لا ينطق حرف ال (u) في هذه الكلمة

WB Page (98)

In this picture, there is a big park. There are lots of flowers and insects and there is a big tree. A girl is sitting under the tree. Her mother is taking a photo of her. Her father is not sitting under the tree. He is flying a kite! The girl's brothers are playing tennis.

Exercises on Lessons

3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are _____ of flowers and insects in the park.

a much

b lot

c a lots

d lots

2. He loves _____. He likes watching birds and trees.

a history

b maths

c football

d nature

3. Adel has many _____ like playing video games and tennis.

a hobbies

b colours

c instructions

d subjects

4. It's hot in here; I'll go walking _____.

a side

b inside

c outside

d beside

5. We have lunch and talk at _____ at school.

a break

b class

c park

d street

6. My father always gives me good _____.

a advise

b device

c advice

d voice

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The boy is _____ a kite in the park.

- a turning b boiling c flying d adding

2. Ants and bees are _____.

- a insects b birds c gardens d posters

3. When you leave someone, you can _____ goodbye to them.

- a wave b take c put d get

4. I love technology! My favourite _____ is playing video games.

- a blog b website c hobby d nature

5. People like to see the _____ around the River Nile.

- a nature b icon c break d hobby

6. We always sit in the playground _____ break.

- a in b on c to d at

7. A _____ call is a way to talk to and see people online.

- a radio b video c game d telephone

8. I _____ like to see an elephant one day.

- a 're b 've c 'd d 'm

9. Can you _____ the meaning of this new word?

- a turn b guess c break d stay

10. I like watching the trees, animals and insects all _____ us.

- a alive b away c without d around



كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات



Grammar

The Present Continuous (Negative & Question)

Negative النفي

لنفي فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر نستخدم (not) بعد (am / is / are) كما يلي:

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + V-ing.

Ex. I'm not working today.

Ex. He isn't (is not) going on a school trip today.

Question السؤال

نسأل عن فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغة الآتية:

1- للسؤال بـ «هل» Yes / No question

Am → I

Is → he - she - it / فاعل مفرد غائب

Are → we - you - they / فاعل جمع

+ (V-ing)...?

Ex. Is he playing tennis now?

- Yes, he is.

- No, he isn't.

Ex. Are they studying their lessons?

- Yes, they are.

- No, they aren't.

2- للسؤال بكلمة استفهام Wh-question نضع كلمة الاستفهام قبل الصيغة السابقة:

Ex. A: What are you doing?

B: I am reading a book.

• بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم عادةً في زمن المضارع المستمر ولكن تستخدم في زمن المضارع البسيط مثل:

يحتاج need - يريد want - يملك have - يحب like - يحب love

Ex. I want to see Ali now.



Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What _____ they studying now?
a are **b** have **c** is **d** do
- Ali _____ a video call but he is talking to his friend. القليوبية / شبين القناطر ٢٠٢١
a isn't making **b** making **c** is making **d** are making
- What _____ you reading these days, Mona?
a have **b** were **c** are **d** be
- My family members _____ sports at present.
a isn't doing **b** won't do **c** is doing **d** aren't doing
- Is this boat _____ now?
a move **b** moving **c** moves **d** to move
- A:** Are they studying Arabic now? **B:** No, they _____.
a are **b** isn't **c** aren't **d** don't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Hello! Adel. What are people in your family do? WB (_____)
- Are the students in your classroom work? WB (_____)
- Nadeen is sending letters at present; she is writing emails. (_____)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I _____ not reading any books at present.
a is **b** are **c** am **d** have
- _____ you listening to music now?
a Will **b** Is **c** Have **d** Are
- He _____ my mobile phone at the moment. It's broken.
a is not using **b** not using **c** is using **d** not is using
- _____ your father working on his office now?
a Are **b** Is **c** Has **d** Was
- He _____ to pop music on his MP3 player now.
a is listening **b** listens **c** has listened **d** will listen
- We _____ sitting in the garden of our house at the moment.
a 'm **b** 's **c** 've **d** 're

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What are you do now? (إدارة بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢) (.....)
2. A: What is you writing? B: I'm writing a new story. (.....)
3. He is walking at present. He is really ill. (.....)
4. A: Were you waiting for Hossam? B: Yes, I'm. (.....)



Speaking

Talking about what people are doing

الحديث عما يفعله شخص

- للسؤال عما يفعله شخص الآن نستخدم صيغة السؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر:

Am / Is / Are + فاعل + V-ing

Question	Answer
Is Hala making a video call?	No, she isn't. She's writing a text message.
Are you waving?	No, I'm not. I'm putting my hand up.
Are you sitting next to your best friend?	Yes, I'm sitting next to my best friend.
Is he wearing black shoes?	Yes, he's wearing black shoes.
Is Soha taking a selfie?	No, she isn't. She's talking on her mobile phone/ to a friend.
Is Fatma writing an email?	Yes, she is.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Judy is talking to Leila on the phone.

Judy : Hi Leila. Where are you?

Leila : Hi Judy. I'm in the park with my family.

Judy : What 1 there?

Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny.

Judy : 2 your brothers sitting, too?

Leila : No, they 3 They're playing football.

Judy : Is your dad playing football with them?

Leila : No, he 4 He's not here. He's working today.
But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!

Judy : 5 your mother doing?

Leila : Er, wait ... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks Mum!

Unit 4 We're using technology!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hana loves birds, trees, flowers etc. She loves

- a** technology **b** insects **c** food **d** nature

2. My favourite is playing chess.

إدارة دمياط ٢٠٢٢

- a** hobby **b** subject **c** size **d** colour

3. At, I play games with my friends in the playground.

الأزهر الشريف-سوهاج / إدارة بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢

- a** nature **b** break **c** programme **d** day

4. Salma is making a video now.

القليوبية / طوخ ٢٠٢٢

- a** phone **b** cell **c** call **d** picture

5. I like to be a doctor in the future.

- a** 'm **b** 've **c** 're **d** 'd

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Omar is using his computer yesterday. (.....)

2. Where do you practising sport these days? (.....)

3. Mona and Hadeer isn't sitting in the classroom at the moment. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Which do you like more, nature or technology?

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- Do you like nature? Why / Why not?
- Do you like technology? Why / Why not?
- Do your friends like nature?
- Do your friends like technology?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I like nature because
- I like technology because
- Most of my friends like
- A lot of my friends like



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

technology	التكنولوجيا	secret (adj/n)	سري / سر
instructions	تعليمات	turn (ed) on	يشغل (جهاز)
safe	آمن	boil (ed)	يغلي «للماء»
password	كلمة المرور		



Vocabulary

tea bag	كيس شاي	popular drink	مشروب شعبي (محبوب)
sugar	سكر	personal	شخصي
telephone number	رقم هاتف	parent	أحد الوالدين
SEND icon	أيقونة «إرسال»	the rest	البقية
message icon	أيقونة الرسائل	poster	ملصق
ice cream	أيس كريم	heading	عنوان (رئيسي)
kettle	غلاية	colourful	ملون
cup	فنجان / كأس	font	نمط الخط (بونت)



Words & Meanings

boil	يغلي	if you boil water, it is very hot and bubbles ⁽¹⁾	Arabic Meaning
password	كلمة المرور	a special ⁽²⁾ word or letters that you write before you can use a computer or website	١- يُخرج فقاعات
secret	سر	something that only you or a few people know	٢- خاص
turn on	يشغل (جهاز)	start a machine ⁽³⁾	٣- آلة / ماكينة
technology	التكنولوجيا	computers and mobile phones are examples of this	

Expressions & Prepositions

make friends with	يكون صداقات مع	Say hello!	قل مرحبًا!
stay safe	يبقى آمنًا	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
keep secret	يحافظ على سري	worried about	قلق بشأن
answer a phone call	يرد على مكالمة تليفونية	take out	يُخرج
look interesting	يبدو شيقًا	go onto a website	يدخل على موقع على الإنترنت
come home	يأتي للمنزل	example of	مثال على
go online	يتصل بالإنترنت		

Word Differences

kettle	غلاية	cattle	ماشية
safe	آمن / خزينة	save	يوفر / ينقذ
password	كلمة المرور	passport	جواز السفر
tea cup	فنجان شاي	tea pot	براد شاي

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
tell	يخبر	told	told
say	يقول	said	said
put	يضع	put	put
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept



Language Notes

home

- نستخدم **home** (بدون حرف جر) مع بعض الأفعال

- go home يذهب للمنزل
- come back home = return يعود للمنزل/ للوطن
- arrive home يصل للمنزل

Ex. My father **arrives home/ comes back home** from work at 3:00.



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (41)

How to send a text message:

First, tap the messages icon. Tap the name of the person. Write your text message. Then tap the **SEND icon** ⁽¹⁾.

• How to make a video call:

- Turn your tablet on.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Say Hello!

• How to make a cup of tea:

First, put some water in a **kettle** ⁽²⁾. Boil the water. Put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag. **Take out** ⁽³⁾ the tea bag. Then, drink the tea.

Arabic Meaning

- 1- أيقونة (إرسال)
- 2- غلاية
- 3- يُخرج

SB Page (42)

Stay safe when you use technology

Arabic Meaning

١- سري

٢- يكون صداقات

- Keep your password **secret**⁽¹⁾.
- Ask for help from a parent or teacher.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about something.
- Don't **make friends**⁽²⁾ with people you don't know online.
- Don't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number).
- Don't send photos to people you don't know.
- Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.

WB Page (99)

Mum : Come here, please Ali.

Ali : Yes, Mum. What is it?

Mum : Stop playing on your phone and listen to me. I need you to do something.

Ali : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do?

Mum : Please go to the shop, buy some sugar, take it to your grandmother's house, help her make a cake and then send me a text message when you want to come home.

Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should keep your _____ secret when you use technology.

- a** nature **b** password **c** break **d** advice

كفر الشيء / قلين ٢٠٢٢

SB

2. It's important to stay _____ online.

- a** safe **b** worried **c** colourful **d** save

WB

3. A/An _____ is something you do not want to tell people.

- a** nature **b** break **c** secret **d** insect

WB

4. Good students follow the school _____.

- a** structures **b** instructions **c** icons **d** passwords

5. Please, turn the computer _____. I want to use the internet.

- a** on **b** of **c** off **d** at

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Computers and mobile phones are examples of _____.

WB

- a technology b passwords c nature d video games

2. Don't _____ friends with bad people.

- a do b need c make d talk

3. We use _____ to boil water for tea.

- a castles b bags c kites d kettles

4. I don't like much _____ in my coffee, thanks.

- a shoe b sugar c soil d star

5. There is a _____ about the school instructions on the wall.

- a charger b printer c player d poster

6. A _____ is a word or number you use to go onto a website.

- a message b next c keyword d password

7. You should _____ safe when you go online.

- a stand b stop c stay d stick

8. When water is very hot, it _____.

- a comes b boils c stays d makes

9. The owner of the factory always gives the workers _____.

- a functions b instructions c pollution d structures

10. There are some tea _____ on the table. You can make tea.

- a bags b backs c poems d breaks

11. If you go _____ this website, you'll find the information which you need.

- a at b about c onto d for



Grammar

Imperative

صيغة الأمر

صيغة الأمر المثبت

صيغة الأمر المنفى

→ **Inf.** باقى الجملة + مصدر الفعل

→ **Don't + inf.** باقى الجملة +

→ **Never + inf.** باقى الجملة +



Uses of imperative

استخدامات صيغة الأمر

Giving orders إعطاء أوامر

إثبات **Do** your homework.

نفى **Don't / Never** talk in class.

Giving instructions إعطاء تعليمات

إثبات **Put** some water in a kettle.

نفى **Don't / Never** tell people your personal information.

Giving advice إعطاء نصيحة

إثبات **Keep** your password secret.

نفى **Don't / Never** send photos to people you don't know.

١- نستخدم فعل **Be** فى الأمر كالتالى:

Ex. Be polite to other people.

Ex. Don't be late for school.

٢- إذا بدأت الجملة بفعل أمر فإن الفعل المعطوف عليه يكون أمر أيضاً:

Ex. Study hard and **sleep** early, Ahmed.



Exercises on Lessons

5, 6 & 7

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ the message icon to send a text message. SB
 a Doesn't tap b Tapping c To tap d Tap
2. _____ friends with people you don't know to keep safe online. SB
 a Don't make b Make c Makes d To make
3. Always _____ polite to your friends.
 a being b be c to be d been
4. _____ leave your bag while you're playing at break.
 a Didn't b Doesn't c Don't d Does
5. _____ speak loudly in the library.
 a Always b Often c Do d Never

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Don't tell your parent or teacher if you are worried about something. SB
 (_____)
2. To put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag. WB (_____)
3. Being polite with your neighbours, Hani. (_____)

Speaking

Giving instructions

إعطاء التعليمات

- يستخدم الفعل في صيغة الأمر المثبت لإعطاء التعليمات:

EX. Go to the shop. Buy an ice cream. Eat it.

- وتستخدم (Don't / Never) يليها مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن الأمر المنفي:

EX. Don't / Never tell people your password.

- ونستخدم هذا الأسلوب في عمل الملصقات (Posters) الخاصة بالتعليمات.

- لعمل كوب من الشاي تتبع الصيغ السابقة:

- First, put some water in a kettle.
- Boil the water.
- Put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag.
- Take out the tea bag.
- Then, drink the tea.

General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7



1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Ali and his mum are talking.

Mum : Ali!

Ali : Yes, Mum.

Mum : ① ----- here, please, Ali.

Ali : Yes, Mum. What is it?

Mum : Stop playing on your phone and listen ② ----- me. I need you to do something.

Ali : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do?

Mum : Please, ③ -----, buy some sugar, and take it to your grandmother's house.

Ali : OK, Mum.

Mum : ④ ----- late, Ali.

Ali : ⑤ -----, Mum.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Are these ----- clear enough?

a secrets

b instructions

c parents

d bags

2. Dad goes ----- after he finishes work.

a to home

b for home

c home

d in home

3. When I meet my friends, I ----- hello!

a tell

b say

c ask

d speak

4. ----- say bad things to other people.

a Never

b Doesn't

c Not

d Always

5. My teacher said to me, "----- safe online."

a staying

b stay

c to stay

d stayed

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. First, boils the water.

إدارة دمياط، ٢٠٢٢

(-----)

2. Not touch this pan; it's too hot.

(-----)

3. Always washing your hands before meals.

(-----)

Excel Yourself?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. There..... rice plates on the table for all of us.

- a is b have c are d has

2. there anybody at home?

- a Is b Are c Have d Do

3. The police..... still looking for the thief.

- a is b are c was d have

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The children are always make noise at home. (.....)

2. Come to here Suzy. I want to tell you something. (.....)



كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات



Vocabulary

technology	التكنولوجيا	break (n)	فترة راحة / يكسر	online (adv) (adj)	عبر الإنترنت / متصل بالإنترنت
website	موقع على الإنترنت	mobile phone	هاتف جوال	selfie (selfies)	صورة سيلفي
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي (تابليت)	printer	طابعة	secret (adj/n)	سري / سر
phone charger	شاحن الهاتف	3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	charge (d)	يشحن
nature	الطبيعة	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	boil (ed)	يغلي «للماء»
hobby	هواية	instructions	تعليمات	print (ed)	يطبع
video call	مكالمة فيديو	safe	آمن	turn (ed) on	يشغل (جهاز)
mouse (mouses)	فأرة الكمبيوتر (ماوس)	password	كلمة المرور		
laptop computer	كمبيوتر محمول	MP3 player	مشغل ملفات الصوت		

Verbs & nouns

that come together

play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	click on an icon	ينقر أيقونة «بالموس»
take a selfie	يلتقط صورة سيلفي	tap on an icon	يضغط على أيقونة «بالإصبع»
make a video call	يجري مكالمة فيديو	win a game	يفوز بمباراة
make a cake	تصنع كعكة	print the homework	يطبع الواجب المنزلي
make a model	يصنع نموذج	charge the phone	يشحن الهاتف
write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني	design an icon	يصمم أيقونة
look at a website	يتصفح موقع الإنترنت	do Computer Studies homework	يقوم بعمل واجب الحاسب الآلي
send (a photo / a text message)	يرسل (صورة / رسالة نصية)		



Grammar Review

1) There is / There are

	للمفرد	للجمع
إثبات	There is..... مع الأسماء التي تعد المفرد / الأسماء التي لا تعد	There are..... مع الأسماء التي تعد الجمع
نفي	There isn't	There aren't
استفهام	Is there?	Are there?

EX. There is a tablet / some juice on the table.

EX. There are books on the desk.

2 The present continuous tense

Subject	I / We / They / You / (اسم جمع)	He / She / It / (اسم مفرد)
إثبات	am / are + V-ing.	is + V-ing.
نفي	am / are + not + V-ing.	is + not + V-ing.
استفهام	Am / Are + فاعل + V-ing....?	Is + فاعل + V-ing....?
Keywords	Look! / Listen! / now / at present / at the moment / Look out!/ watch out!	

EX. I'm watching TV now.

EX. She isn't doing sports at present.

3 Imperative

	التكوين	الاستخدام
إثبات	يبدأ بمصدر الفعل. Inf.	١- إعطاء الأوامر: EX. Keep quiet in class. EX. Don't make noise in the library. ٢- إعطاء تعليمات: EX. Read the question, then answer it. EX. Don't/ Never take the medicine before meals.
نفي	Don't / Never + inf.	٣- إعطاء نصيحة: EX. Keep safe online. EX. Don't / Never tell anyone your password.



Speaking

1 Asking and answering questions about your classroom:

السؤال والإجابة عن فصلك الدراسي:

- للسؤال والإجابة عما يحتويه الفصل الدراسي من الممكن أن تقول:

A: What's in your classroom?

B: There are some laptops and a whiteboard. There aren't any tablets.

A: Is there a printer?

B: Yes, there is one.

A: Are there any mobile phones?

B: No, there aren't.

2) Talking about what people are doing

الحديث عما يفعله شخص

- للسؤال عما يفعله شخص الآن نستخدم:

Am / Is / Are + فاعل + V-ing

Question	Answer
Is Hala making a video call?	No, she isn't. She's writing a text message.
Are you waving?	No, I'm not. I'm putting my hand up.
Are you sitting next to your best friend?	Yes, I'm sitting next to my best friend.
Is he wearing black shoes?	Yes, he's wearing black shoes.
Is Soha taking a selfie?	No, she isn't. She's talking on her mobile phone/ to a friend.
Is Fatma writing an email?	Yes, she is.

3) Giving instructions

اعطاء التعليمات

- يستخدم الفعل في صيغة الأمر المثبت لإعطاء التعليمات:

EX. Go to the shop. Buy an ice cream. Eat it.

- وتستخدم (Don't / Never) يليها مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن الأمر المنفي:

EX. Don't / Never tell people your password.

General Exercises on Unit 4

1) Complete the following dialogue:

Fady is going shopping.

Fady : Hi! Emad.

Emad : Hi, Fady, where ①

Fady : I'm going to the Mall of Arabia.

Emad : Why?

Fady : There ② a new shop which sells good tablets and laptops there. I need to buy a new laptop.

Emad : Great! ③ any mobile phones in that shop?

Fady : No, there aren't ④ mobile phones there.

Emad : Where can I buy a good mobile phone?

Fady : ⑤ is a new shop that sells good mobiles next to that one.

Emad : I'll go there tomorrow. Thanks a lot.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I write text _____ to my friend when I can't meet him.
☐ a passages ☐ b calls ☐ c pieces ☐ d messages
- _____ there an MP3 player on the desk? SB
☐ a Are ☐ b Is ☐ c Have ☐ d Were
- I don't give my passwords to anyone. They're _____.
☐ a cheap ☐ b far ☐ c secret ☐ d fast
- We take a _____ to eat and play between lessons.
☐ a break ☐ b photo ☐ c selfie ☐ d message
- The question is too difficult; I'll ask my teacher _____ help.
☐ a on ☐ b about ☐ c for ☐ d of
- Look out! A bus _____. القريبة / السنطة ٢٠٢١
☐ a comes ☐ b is coming ☐ c came ☐ d has come
- You need to use a 3D _____ to make that model.
☐ a charger ☐ b painter ☐ c mouse ☐ d printer
- They _____ the streets at present.
☐ a clean ☐ b will clean ☐ c are cleaning ☐ d cleaned
- I'd like to _____ a selfie in front of the river. جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١ WB
☐ a make ☐ b do ☐ c eat ☐ d take
- Our school gave us some _____ to keep us safe during the break.
☐ a sports ☐ b instructions ☐ c hobbies ☐ d games
- Don't tell people you don't know your telephone _____.
☐ a number ☐ b letter ☐ c secret ☐ d call
- You need to _____ this icon to make a phone call.
☐ a wave ☐ b call ☐ c talk ☐ d tap
- _____ write on the walls. Keep them clean.
☐ a Usually ☐ b Sometimes ☐ c Always ☐ d Never
- Listen! Someone _____ outside.
☐ a is shouting ☐ b shouting ☐ c are shouting ☐ d shout

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- My father cleans his car at the moment. البحر الاحمر / القصير ٢٠٢٢ (.....)
- Is they doing the maths homework now? (.....)
- Taking out the tea bag. WB (.....)
- Is there any coins in your bag? (.....)
- There are any pencils in my bag. (.....)
- He is drives the car now. إدارة بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢ (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

How to stay safe online

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you like to go online?
- Do you make friends online?
- Should we make friends with people we don't know?
- Should we send photos to people we don't know?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I like to go online.
- Sometimes, we make friends online.
- We like playing games with
- We should keep our passwords secret.

Azhar Exercises

تمارين الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1- The speaker's mother gives him

- a** presents **b** instructions **c** bags **d** books

2- The speaker listens to his mother because he doesn't want to make her

- a** pleased **b** sleep **c** sad **d** slow

2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:

1- Aisha : Is there a printer in your classroom?

Salma :

2- Akram : ..?

Hassan : No, she isn't taking a selfie.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday, I went with my brother Ahmed to a nearby shopping centre. I always like going there because there are a lot of modern shops there. At the shopping centre, I bought my mum a new mobile phone for her birthday. Then we went to a computer shop to buy my brother Ahmed a new 3D printer. He is keen on making models. After that, we went to a café to have some drinks. I had some tea and my brother had some juice. We enjoyed our time there. We went back home at 8 o'clock.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did they go to the shopping centre?

2. What did the writer buy his mum?

3. What is Ahmed keen on?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They bought a new 3D printer at the

a shoe shop

b supermarket

c café

d computer shop

5. They went back home at o'clock.

b eight

b five

c eleven

d ten

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

Nature

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you love nature?
- Do you like being in the house?
- Do you have a garden at home?
- Do you like flowers?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I love nature.
- I like watching trees, animals and
- I like / don't like being in the house.
- I like being in the garden.

Unit 4 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. The family love
 a technology b sports c food d holidays
2. The father's got a
 a printer b mobile phone c tablet d laptop
3. The speaker's got a
 a mobile phone b car c tablet d printer
4. The speaker's is always writing emails.
 a father b sister c son d brother

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal wants to send a text message.

Manal : Hello, Ola.

Ola : Hello, Manal.

Manal : I want you to tell me how to ① a text message, please, Ola.

Ola : OK! ②, tap the messages icon.

Manal : What's after that?

Ola : Tap the name of the person.

Manal : I tapped it. ③ ?

Ola : ④ your text message and then tap the icon.

Manal : OK! Then, I tap the SEND icon. Is that right?

Ola : Yes, that's right.

Manal : ⑤

C

Reading Comprehension

3

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hello! I'm Nadeen. I want to talk about my mobile phone. My parents bought it for me on my birthday two years ago. I like it very much and I think it's always good to have it in my bag. It's got a calculator in it and I usually use it. I can use it to go on the internet to read emails from my friends. It's fantastic. I know how to use my mobile to send text messages to my friends. My father showed me how to do that. The mobile has a wonderful camera. It's modern. I always take photos of my family and friends. I take selfies, too. I like my mobile very much.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Nadeen keep her mobile phone?

2. What can Nadeen use her phone for? Give two examples.

3. When did she get her phone? Why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- [illegible]

D

Vocabulary and Structure

4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A _____ is a machine that makes water hot.
a cattle **b** kite **c** can **d** kettle
2. A _____ phone is a small phone that you can carry with you.
a tablet **b** mobile **c** tape **d** secret
3. _____ shout. My father is asleep.
a Don't **b** Not **c** Do **d** Often
4. I bought a new MP3 _____ to play music on.
a speaker **b** computer **c** player **d** user

5. _____ is a lot of food in the kitchen. Go and have your lunch.
a There **b** Where **c** Their **d** Other
6. They used a/an _____ to make a plastic model. **WB**
a icon **b** mobile phone **c** charger **d** 3D printer
7. Can you _____ me a text message when you arrive? **WB**
a spend **b** stay **c** send **d** stop
8. _____ on the icon on your computer. **الجيزة / العجوزة ٢٠٢١**
a Give **b** Fill **c** Click **d** Play
9. The boys _____ Maths now.
a study **b** are studying **c** studies **d** studied
10. Fares is _____ his Computer Studies homework. **WB**
a making **b** doing **c** taking **d** helping

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Nada learns French at present. (.....)
2. "Always eat during the lesson in class," the teacher said. (.....)
3. Are your mother cooking now? (.....)
4. There aren't any sugar in my tea. **الشرقية / الحسينية ٢٠٢١** (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Technology in your classroom

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Does your school use technology?
- Do you use technology inside your classroom?
- What forms of technology do you use inside your classroom?
- How are these things useful?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Most schools use technology.
- My classroom has got many important things.
- We often use in our classroom.
- There is/ are on our teacher's desk.
- We don't use in the classroom.

New Hello!



UNIT 5 Holidays

Objectives

Reading:

A description of a holiday;
an advertisement for learning English

Writing:

An advertisement for a holiday;
an email about a holiday

Listening:

A conversation about a holiday;
a discussion about a day out

Speaking:

Describing a place; talking about
a holiday; responding to news

Language:

The past simple

Values:

Respect

Issues:

Environmental awareness

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

beach	شاطئ	lake	بحيرة
desert	صحراء	river	نهر
cave	كهف	sea	بحر
mountain	جبل	waterfall	شلال
jungle	غابة استوائية / أدغال	holiday	عطلة / إجازة
forest	غابة كبيرة		

Verbs & nouns

that come together

climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل	play games	يلعب ألعاب
eat delicious food	يأكل طعام لذيذ	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
go in / into a cave	يدخل كهفا	see a camel	يشاهد جمل
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
make a sandcastle	يبنى قلعة رملية	swim in the sea / lake	يسبح في البحر/ البحيرة
visit a family	يزور أسرة		



Vocabulary

frightened	مرعوب	museum	متحف
fantastic	رائع	warm	دافئ
monkey	قرود	sand	رمل
Morocco	دولة المغرب	sandcastle	قلعة من الرمال
Marrakesh	مدينة مراكش بالمغرب	picnic	نزهة خلوية
Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	bat	خفاش
Djara Cave	كهف الجارة (بالصحراء الكبرى)	map	خريطة
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة	rock	صخر
Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	echo	صدى الصوت
Siwa	واحة سيوة	tent	خيمة
weather	الطقس	delicious	لذيذ
hotel	فندق	turn (n) (ed)	دور / يلف



Words & Meanings

Arabic Meaning

beach	شاطئ	the area of sand or small stones ⁽¹⁾ in front of the sea	١- حجارة
desert	صحراء	a very dry place where it does not often rain	٢- طبيعي
forest	غابة كبيرة	a large area with lots of trees close together	٣- استوائي
lake	بحيرة	a large natural ⁽²⁾ area of water, with land all around	٤- يتدفق
mountain	جبل	a high area of land, higher than the land around it	
jungle	أدغال	a tropical ⁽³⁾ forest with lots of plants and trees	
waterfall	شلال	the part of a river where the water falls down from a high place	
cave	كهف	an opening in a large rock or mountain	
river	نهر	water that flows ⁽⁴⁾ naturally from the mountains to the sea	
sea	بحر	the salt water that covers a larger part of the Earth	

Expressions & Prepositions

That's right.	هذا صحيح.	on the beach	على الشاطئ
That's easy.	هذا سهل.	ride on a camel	يركب جمل
have a fantastic holiday	يقضي إجازة رائعة	call out	ينادي بصوت عال
My turn!	حان دوري!		

Word Differences

beach	شاطئ	peach	خوخ (فاكهة)
desert	صحراء	dessert	طعام التحلية
fun	ممتع	funny	مضحك
cave	كهف	wave	موجة
ride	يركب دراجة أو حيوان	drive	يقود سيارة أو أتوبيس
weather	الطقس (حالة الجو في مكان ما في فترة قصيرة)	climate	المناخ (حالة الجو الدائمة في مكان ما)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
ride	يركب (دراجة / حيوان)	rode	ridden
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
hear	يسمع	heard	heard



Language Notes

1) in - on - at

• in + شهر on + أيام at + الساعة

Ex. My birthday is **in** October.

Ex. I went to the park **on** Friday.

Ex. I played games **at** 10 o'clock.

2) beach - coast - bank

• beach (شاطئ مهيا للسباحة وقضاء وقت الصيف)

Ex. Many people go to **beaches** in summer.

• coast (ساحل/أرض بجوار البحر (تستخدم غالباً في الوصف الجغرافي)

Ex. He lives on the east **coast** of the USA.

• bank (ضفة (أرض على امتداد نهر أو بحيرة)

Ex. Trees grow along the **banks** of the Nile in my village.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We visited our aunt _____ Wednesday.

a on

b in

c at

d of

2. The tourists enjoyed walking along the sandy _____

a coast

b beach

c air

d map



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (45)

استمع إلى النص



Taha : Guess⁽¹⁾ where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.

Sara : Are there monkeys in the trees?

Taha : No. It's very **dark**⁽²⁾ and quiet.

Sara : Are you in a **forest**⁽³⁾?

Taha : Yes, I am!

Sara : My **turn**⁽⁴⁾! I'm in a place with a lot of sand.

Taha : I know! You're in the **desert**⁽⁵⁾.

Arabic Meaning

١- خمن

٢- مظلم

٣- غابة

٤- دور

٥- صحراء

Sara : No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in MY place.

Taha : You're on the beach!

Sara : That's right!

Taha : Now I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again.

Listen. (calls out with **echo**⁽⁶⁾) Hello! (echo comes twice).

Sara : That's easy! You're in a **cave**⁽⁷⁾! Can you see any **bats**⁽⁸⁾?

Taha : No, I can't. It's very dark in here!

٦- صدى صوت
٧- كهف
٨- خفافيش



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (46)

My holiday photos

- 1 Last summer, when the **weather**⁽¹⁾ was hot, we went to the beach near my home in **Hurghada**⁽²⁾. Mariam made this **sandcastle**^{(3)*}. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was **frightened**^{(4)!}
- 2 In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a **picnic**⁽⁵⁾ in Al Azhar Park. We ate **delicious**⁽⁶⁾ food. Then we played games and Ali **rode**⁽⁷⁾ his bike.
- 3 When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the **lake**⁽⁸⁾, and climbed the **mountain**⁽⁹⁾. We saw camels and slept in a **tent**⁽¹⁰⁾ in the desert. It was my **favourite**⁽¹¹⁾ holiday!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- الطقس
- ٢- الغردقة
- ٣- قلعة رملية
- ٤- مرعوبة
- ٥- نزهة خلوية
- ٦- لذيذ
- ٧- ركب
- ٨- بحيرة
- ٩- جبل
- ١٠- خيمة
- ١١- مفضل



Say it
correctly

* sandcastle

١ ينطق الجزء الملون (ca) مثل نطقه في كلمة (car) ولا ينطق حرف (t)

WB Page (103)

Hi Eman,

Last summer, my family had a **fantastic**⁽¹⁾ holiday in **Morocco**⁽²⁾. We visited a big beach and then we slept in a nice **hotel**⁽³⁾. We didn't swim in the sea. It wasn't very **warm**⁽⁴⁾! But I rode on a **camel**⁽⁵⁾. That was fun. We visited a city called **Marrakesh**⁽⁶⁾, too, and we went to a **museum**⁽⁷⁾. We also ate some delicious food.

Write soon.

Hana

Arabic Meaning

- ١- رائع
- ٢- دولة المغرب
- ٣- فندق
- ٤- دافئ
- ٥- جمل
- ٦- مدينة مراكش
- ٧- متحف

Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hamdy is talking to Sameh about holidays.

Hamdy : Did you go on holiday last summer?

Sameh : Yes, I went to the ①

Hamdy : What did you do there?

Sameh : I swam in the sea.

Hamdy : What else did you do there?

Sameh : I ② a sandcastle.

Hamdy : ③

Sameh : Yes, it was very enjoyable.

Hamdy : How was ④ there?

Sameh : ⑤ fine.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to Alexandria and I swam in the

- a** desert **b** mountain **c** sea **d** cave

2. We slept in a tent when we went to the

- a** desert **b** dress **c** address **d** dessert

3. The in the mountain was dark.

- a** flat **b** river **c** cave **d** lake

4. We saw a lot of trees in the

- a** river **b** forest **c** waterfall **d** sea

5. The is very high and there's lots of water in it.

- a** beach **b** cave **c** lake **d** waterfall

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a _____ in the side of the mountain.

a wave

b safe

c cave

d cloud

2. The boys swam across the _____.

a mountain

b desert

c lake

d jungle

3. The child was _____ of the angry dog.

a fantastic

b frightened

c famous

d funny

4. Ali _____ his bike to school.

a rides

b gets up

c drives

d sails

5. Last summer, we went to Siwa and climbed a _____.

إدارة دمياط ٢٠٢٢

a mountain

b tent

c cave

d bike

6. The children played _____ the beach.

a in

b from

c with

d on

7. I _____ a sandcastle on the beach every summer.

a do

b buy

c make

d give

8. It is your _____. Go and set the table.

a team

b turn

c toe

d truck

9. I'd love to go to the _____. I can swim in the sea.

الأزهر لشريف / الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a desert

b jungle

c beach

d forest

10. In Egypt, we have the longest _____ in the world.

جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١

a forest

b sea

c waterfall

d river



Grammar

زمن الماضي البسيط The past simple tense

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي.

Form التكوين

Subject التصريف الثاني للفعل + (كل الضمائر) فاعل

تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة

أولاً: الأفعال المنتظمة: هي الأفعال التي يتكون منها الماضي بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل

play → played

walk → walked

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف (d) فقط للفعل

like → liked

dance → danced

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يليه حرف (y) نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied)

study → studied

carry → carried

- يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال عند إضافة (ed)

stop → stopped

travel → travelled

Ex. I climbed a mountain yesterday.

Ex. I played games last week.

ثانياً: الأفعال غير المنتظمة: وهي التي لا يضاف لها (ed) في الماضي وتحتفظ

go → went

eat → ate

Ex. He went to the beach.

ومن أهم الأفعال الشاذة التي يجب أن نتعلمها

	present		past simple
Verb to (be)	I	am	was
	He / She / It	is	
	We / You / They	are	were
Verb to (have)	I / We / You / They	have	had
	He / She / It	has	
Verb to (do)	I / We / You / They	do	did
	He / She / It	does	

Ex. I was in Hurghada last summer.

Ex. Hassan had a car when he lived in Alexandria.

Negative النفي

ينفي زمن الماضي البسيط بالصيغة الآتية:

Subject + did not + inf. مصدر الفعل

طريقة نفيه	شكل الفعل بالجملة
مصدر الفعل - didn't + inf.	- فعل في الماضي البسيط ينتهي بـ d / ed
- wasn't / weren't	was / were
- didn't have	had
- didn't do	did

Ex. I visited my family.

I didn't visit my family.

Ex. Mariam was frightened in the cave.

Mariam wasn't frightened in the cave.

Ex. I had a bike when I was young.

I didn't have a bike when I was young.

Ex. I did my homework yesterday.

I didn't do my homework yesterday.

لاحظ الاختصارات:

- did not = didn't

- was not = wasn't

- were not = weren't

Question السؤال

نسال عن زمن الماضي البسيط بالصيغة الآتية:

...? مصدر الفعل + inf. + فاعل + Did (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Did she ride her bike?

- Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

Ex. Why did you come late?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last (week - month - year)	... السابق	ago	منذ
in (2018)	في «سنة سابقة»	in the past	في الماضي	once	ذات مرة

Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The beach far from Sayed's home.

- a was b were c are d weren't

SB

2. Sayed and Mariam into the cave last week.

- a going b went c goes d go

SB

3. Did you on holiday last year?

- a went b goes c go d going

SB

4. Last summer, my family a fantastic holiday.

- a have b has c don't have d had

سوهاج / اخميم - الجيزة / العمرانية ٢٠٢٢

5. A: Did you travel to Aswan?

B: No, I

- a did b don't c didn't d do

6. How did you to school yesterday?

إدارة دمياط ٢٠٢٢

- a go b goes c going d went

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I have dinner with my family an hour ago.

(.....)

2. He didn't played football yesterday.

دمياط / كفر سعد ٢٠٢٢

(.....)

3. He swam in the sea, but he didn't saw any dolphins.

(.....)

4. We do a lot of things yesterday.

(.....)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did you on Saturday evening?

- a did b do c does d doing

SB

2. What did your mother at the market?

- a buy b bought c buying d buys

SB

3. A: you go to Alexandria?

B: Yes, I did.

- a Do b Did c Does d Is

SB

4. She to the cinema last week.

- a go b goes c went d going

قنا / أبو تشت ٢٠٢٢

5. I into the cave because I was frightened.

- a didn't go b go c to go d don't go

الشرقية / منشأة أبو عمر ٢٠٢١

6. I ate delicious food

- a tomorrow b last week c now d next week

7. I with my father in Alexandria last summer.

كفر الشيخ / قلين ٢٠٢٢

- a swim b swims c am swimming d swam

8. When I went to Alexandria, I in a holiday flat.

- a sleeps b sleep c slept d sleeping

9. Hassan in Cairo last week.

- a isn't b aren't c wasn't d didn't

10. We visited the museum and a lot of tourists.

- a saw b sees c see d seeing

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We ate pizza three days next.

(.....)

2. I go to Alex last summer.

الجيزة / العجوزة ٢٠٢١

(.....)

3. Do you meet Ahmed last month?

(.....)

4. I went to the beach, but I don't make a sandcastle.

(.....)

5. Did you climbed the mountain last year?

سوهاج / طهطا ٢٠٢١

(.....)



Speaking

Talk about your holiday

تحدث عن اجازتك

يمكن أن نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية للحديث عن إجازة.

- I'd like to + inf.

- اريد أن.....

- You can + inf.

- تستطيع أن.....

Ex. I'd like to go to the beach. You can swim in the sea, or make a sandcastle!

Ex. I'd like to go to the desert. You can sleep in a tent or go in the cave!

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa is talking to Eyad about a place he went to.

Eyad : Where were you yesterday, Mustafa?

Mustafa : 1

Eyad : 2

Mustafa : I went to Sinai.

Eyad : 3

Mustafa : I went with my family.

Eyad : 4 there?

Mustafa : I saw wonderful mountains.

Eyad : Did you enjoy the holiday?

Mustafa : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They climbed up the and got to the top.

- a** river **b** mountain **c** desert **d** jungle

2. There's a at the end of this river.

- a** waterfall **b** water bottle **c** water tap **d** watermelon

3. Ahmed and his family a picnic at the park yesterday.

- a** have **b** has **c** don't have **d** had

4. What did Mona in her office yesterday?

- a** find **b** finding **c** finds **d** found

شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١

5. your friends ready for the exam last week?

- a** Was **b** Are **c** Were **d** Did

اسوان / إدفو ٢٠٢١

6. I went to the zoo and I a lot of animals.

- a** see **b** sees **c** seeing **d** saw

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She buys fruit and went home.

(.....)

2. **A:** When do you buy this car? **B:** Last year.

(.....)

3. Huda doesn't know the answer yesterday.

(.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Your last weekend

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When was your last weekend? - Was your last weekend fun?
- What was the weather like? - Where did you spend it?
- What did you do during the weekend? - When did you come back home?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- We went to
- We enjoyed
- We stayed in a flat by the beach.
- I want to go there again.
- The weather was

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

holiday courses	برامج للإجازات	dolphin	دولفين
language school	مدرسة لتعليم اللغات	holiday flat	شقة للإجازة
queen	ملكة	flag	علم / راية
view	منظر / مشهد	souvenir	هدية تذكارية
castle	قلعة	buy (bought - bought)	يشترى
hotel	فندق	camp (ed)	يعسكر / يخيم

Verbs & nouns

that come together

ride a horse	يركب حصان	eat ... for dinner	ياكل ... على العشاء
have dinner	يتناول العشاء	go on holiday	يذهب في إجازة



Vocabulary

culture	ثقافة	sea animal	حيوان بحري
advertisement*	إعلان	Windsor Castle	قلعة وندسور بإنجلترا
friendly	ودود / اليف / مستأنس	Germany	دولة ألمانيا
the London Eye	عين أو عجلة لندن	France	دولة فرنسا
a ride	جولة الركوب (في الملاهي مثلاً)	Really?	حقاً؟
Jordan	دولة الأردن	market	سوق
Alexandria	مدينة الاسكندرية	wonderful	رائع
pizza	بيتزا	remember (ed)	يتذكر
holiday activity	نشاط في إجازة	stay (ed)	يقيم
safari rides	رحلات سافاري	enjoy (ed)	يستمتع بـ



Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic Meaning	English Meaning
camp (v)	يعسكر / يخيم	sleep for a time in a tent ⁽¹⁾
castle (n)	قلعة	a big, strong building from the past
dolphin (n)	دولفين	a friendly sea animal
holiday flat (n)	شقة للإجازة	a place to stay for a holiday
souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية	something you buy to remember a holiday
view (n)	منظر	what you can see from a place
queen (n)	ملكة	a woman who rules ⁽²⁾ a country
flag (n)	علم / راية	the colours of a country on a piece of material

Expressions & Prepositions

have a great holiday	يقضى إجازة رائعة	get to	يصل إلى
have a wonderful time	يقضى وقت رائع	for one week	لمدة أسبوع
have a wonderful view	يتمتع بمنظر رائع	walk all around	يتجول حول
It was nice to meet you.	سعدت بلقائك.	in Arabic	باللغة العربية
when I first came	عندما أتيت أول مرة	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
do interesting projects	ينفذ مشروعات شيقة	good at Arabic	جيد في اللغة العربية
on Saturday	يوم السبت	from the top	من القمة
by the lake / the beach	بجوار البحيرة / الشاطئ	from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم

Word Differences

remember	يتذكر (من تلقاء نفسه)	remind	يُذكر (شخص آخر بشئ)
castle	قلعة	fort	حصن / قلعة كبيرة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
come	يأتي	came	come
buy	يشترى	bought	bought

Language Notes

1) souvenir - present - prize

- souvenir هدية تذكارية

Ex. John bought a medal of the Pyramids as a souvenir of Egypt.

- present هدية (في عيد ميلاد مثلاً)

Ex. My father gave me a present on my birthday.

- prize جائزة (في مسابقة - سباق... إلخ)

Ex. Ali got the first prize in the race.

2) view - scenery

- view (n) منظر / مشهد (ما يمكن أن تراه من مكان معين)

Ex. I had a beautiful view of the Nile from my hotel room.

- scenery (n) منظر طبيعي (اسم لا يُعد)

(تستخدم للحديث عن الجبال والأنهار والغابات التي تراها من حولك وخاصة عندما تكون جميلة)

Ex. We stopped to enjoy the scenery.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mum got a lot of _____ on her birthday party.

a prizes

b souvenirs

c presents

d holidays

2. We'd like a room with a _____ of the sea.

a palace

b view

c opinion

d space



Audioscript

SB Page (48)

نصوص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص

Hatem: Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday⁽¹⁾?

Yunis: Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks!

Hatem: Where did you go?

Yunis: I went to Jordan⁽²⁾ by plane.

Hatem: Wow! Did you visit your family there?

Yunis: No, we stayed in a holiday flat⁽³⁾ by the beach. We had a wonderful view⁽⁴⁾ from the windows. Every morning, I saw dolphins⁽⁵⁾ in the sea.

Hatem: Did you swim in the sea?

Yunis: Yes, we did. We swam every day! We used a map⁽⁶⁾ and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous⁽⁷⁾ places. We went to this old castle⁽⁸⁾. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone⁽⁹⁾.

Hatem: How did you get to the castle?

Yunis: We climbed up the mountain!

Hatem: Did you buy any souvenirs⁽¹⁰⁾?

Yunis: Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir for you.

Hatem: Oh, how interesting⁽¹¹⁾. Egypt's flag⁽¹²⁾ is also red, white and black. Jordan's flag has another colour - green, too. Thanks, Yunis!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- إجازة
- ٢- دولة الأردن
- ٣- شقة للإجازة
- ٤- منظر / مشهد
- ٥- دلافين
- ٦- خريطة
- ٧- مشهور
- ٨- قلعة
- ٩- هاتف
- ١٠- هدايا تذكارية
- ١١- ياله من أمر شيق!
- ١٢- علم



Say it correctly

* advertisement

يمكن نطق المقطع الملون (tis) بطريقتين:

الأولى: بعدم نطق حرف (i)

الثانية: ينطق حرف (i) مثل صوت (i) في كلمة (right)



استمع إلى النص



Narrator 1

Man 1: Where did you go on holiday last year?

Narrator 2

Man 1: Where did you stay?

Narrator 3

Man 1: How did you travel there?

Narrator 4

Man 1: Did you climb a mountain?

Narrator 5

Man 1: What did you eat?



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

Learn English in London!

- Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.
- **Holiday courses⁽¹⁾** are for one, two or three weeks.

I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops are **fantastic⁽²⁾**. I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the **London Eye⁽³⁾**, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.

Laura, France

I had a wonderful time at the **language school⁽⁴⁾**! I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was **Windsor Castle⁽⁵⁾**. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the **Queen⁽⁶⁾**!

Mona, Egypt

When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were **fun⁽⁷⁾**, and for homework we did interesting **projects⁽⁸⁾**. I enjoyed speaking English!

Jurgen, Germany



Arabic Meaning

- ١- برامج الإجازات
- ٢- رائع
- ٣- عين أو عجلة لندن
- ٤- مدرسة تعليم اللغات
- ٥- قلعة ويندسور
- ٦- الملكة
- ٧- ممتعة
- ٨- مشروعات



New Message

Hi Ali

Last summer, I **travelled**⁽¹⁾ to Egypt because I wanted to learn **Arabic**⁽²⁾. I went to a language school in Cairo. I had a wonderful time. I was there for two weeks. The people in Cairo were very **friendly**⁽³⁾. Now I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I wasn't very good at Arabic. But the teachers helped me, and the lessons were fun. Now I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are **fantastic**⁽⁴⁾. I bought lots of souvenirs. My **favourite**⁽⁵⁾ place was the **Cairo Tower**⁽⁶⁾. I enjoyed the view of the city from the **top**⁽⁷⁾. What did you do last summer?

Write soon and tell me.

Andy, England.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- سافرت
- ٢- اللغة العربية
- ٣- ودودون
- ٤- رائع
- ٥- مفضل
- ٦- برج القاهرة
- ٧- القمة



Send



Videascript

SB Page (48)

Narrator : **Almost**⁽¹⁾ 15 million people come to Egypt every year.

It's a very popular place for a holiday.

When people come to Egypt, they can visit exciting cities like Alexandria, beaches, caves, and the beautiful desert.

They also come to see the many important places from **history**⁽²⁾.

This is the **Khan family**⁽³⁾. They're from Jordan. Last year they visited Egypt on holiday.

They visited Giza to see the Pyramids and the **Sphinx**⁽⁴⁾.

And they rode on a camel. They visited the beautiful city of Luxor. Then, they went to the **Valley of the Kings**⁽⁵⁾ where they visited the **Karnak Temple**⁽⁶⁾. They also spent some days in Cairo.

They went shopping in the **Khan el-Khalili market**⁽⁷⁾. Here, they bought souvenirs for their friends back at home.

Finally, they went to Hurghada and they swam in the Red Sea.

Egypt is a wonderful place for a holiday. Where do you want to go?

Arabic Meaning

- ١- تقريبًا
- ٢- التاريخ
- ٣- عائلة خان
- ٤- أبو الهول
- ٥- وادي الملوك
- ٦- معبد الكرنك
- ٧- سوق خان الخليلي

Exercises on Lessons

3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Tourists usually stay in
 a hotels b banks c gardens d parks
- To is to sleep for a time in a tent. إدارة أسبوط ٢٠٢٢ WB
 a buy b camp c visit d ride
- A great king built this in the past.
 a bottle b kettle c castle d poster
- A is a place to stay for a holiday. WB
 a library b restaurant c castle d holiday flat
- You can have a wonderful from your window. كفر الشيخ / قلين ٢٠٢٢
 a review b interview c view d preview
- I have some from Khan el Khalili.
 a vegetables b souvenirs c players d picnics
- Tourist companies always organize holiday
 a beaches b classes c courses d units

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The is a friendly sea animal. سوهاج / طمطا ٢٠٢١ WB
 a dolphin b shark c lion d tiger
- Egypt's is red, white and black.
 a flat b flag c house d holiday
- Everyone likes Samir because he is
 a boring b rude c friendly d ugly
- When I went to Paris, I bought a to remember the visit.
 a present b souvenir c cup d car
- A is what you can see from a place. WB
 a view b picture c message d flat
- I read a/an in the newspaper for new jobs.
 a story b envelope c letter d advertisement
- A is a big, strong building from the past. إدارة دمياط ٢٠٢٢ WB
 a flat b house c castle d restaurant
- I went to a/an school to learn English.
 a sports b music c language d art

9. A is the wife of a king.

a nurse

b queen

c teacher

d farmer

10. Andy can talk to his friends Arabic.

a at

b with

c on

d in

11. People all around the world visit Egypt.

a from

b for

c on

d in

12. There're lots of things to from that famous market.

a sell

b buy

c stay

d give



Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية

• نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط في السؤال والإجابة عن إجازة قضيناها.

Ex. A: Did you swim in the sea?

B: Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin, too and I swam with it.

Ex. A: What food did you eat?

B: I ate a lot of fish.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hadeer is talking to Mervat about a holiday she spent in Hurghada.

Mervat : Hello, Hadeer. What did you do last summer?

Hadeer : I went to ①

Mervat : Why ② ..?

Hadeer : To enjoy the nice weather and swim.

Mervat : Was it safe ③ ..?

Hadeer : Of course, beaches are very safe there.

Mervat : Did you take any photos of dolphins in the water?

Hadeer : Yes, I ④ ..

Mervat : Who did you go with?

Hadeer : I went there with ⑤ ..

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The from the Cairo Tower is wonderful.

a view

b review

c revise

d revision

2. The USA has fifty stars on it.

a flat

b tower

c flag

d castle

3. I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a of Paris.

a course

b view

c holiday

d souvenir

4. The is an intelligent animal.

a dolphin

b camp

c safari

d sphinx

5. What time do you usually dinner?

a do

b have

c stay

d ride

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

What did you do last summer?

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Where did you go?

- Who did you go with?

- Why did you go to that place?

- How did you spend your holiday?

- What else did you do?

- What do you think of the holiday?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I went to.....

- I went there with

- We went there because

- The place was very

- I spent the beach

- We camped mountains

- It was holiday.

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

exciting	مثير	postcard	بطاقة بريدية
wind	رياح	interesting	شيق
windy	عاصف / شديد الرياح	snail	حيوان القوقع
tower	برج		



Vocabulary

bath time	وقت الاستحمام	signature	توقيع
ticket	تذكرة	greeting	تحية
litter	قمامة	tired	متعب
bin	سلة مهملات	sender	الراسل
play	مسرحية	art	الفن
café	مقهى	light	ضوء - مصباح
T-shirt	تي شيرت	tourist	سائح
closed	مغلق	sandals	صندل
closing	خاتمة	shorts	بنطلون قصير (شورت)
rule	قاعدة	grass	عشب / حشائش
sign	لافتة	pass (ed)	يمر بـ
header	رأس «بريد إلكتروني»	happen (ed)	يحدث

Famous places

the River Seine	نهر السين	the Louvre	متحف اللوفر
the Science Museum	متحف العلوم	the Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك
Ramses Station	محطة رمسيس	The Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل
the Luxembourg Gardens	حدائق لوكسمبورج		



Words & Meanings

snail حيوان القوقع a small, slow animal with a shell on its back

Expressions & Prepositions

What a pity!	يا للأسف!	on the top	على القمة
How exciting!	ياله من أمر مثير!	on the river	في النهر
so much to see and do	الكثير لتراه وتفعله	go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
See you soon.	أراك قريباً	get on a train	يستقل القطار
Really!	حقاً!	in bed	في الفراش / نائم
Best wishes.	أطيب أمنياتي.	for example	على سبيل المثال
Oh dear!	يا إلهي!	travel from... to...	يسافر من ... إلى ...

Rules for tourists

Put your litter in the bin.
Do not wear sandals or shorts.
Do not take photos.
Do not walk on the grass.

ضع قمامتك في سلة المهملات.
لا ترتدي صندل أو شورت.
لا تلتقط صور.
لا تمشي على الحشائش.

Word Differences

bath	استحمام	path / pass	ممر
café	مقهى (مكان)	coffee	قهوة (مشروب)
tower	برج	tour	جولة سياحية
litter	قمامة	letter	خطاب
tired	متعب	tiring	متعب

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
leave	يغادر	left	left
win	يفوز	won	won
put	يضع	put	put



Language Notes

1 win - earn

• win (won) يفوز بـ (ميدالية / جائزة / مسابقة ... إلخ)

Ex. Hassan is hoping to win the gold medal.

• earn (ed) (money - a living / his living) يكسب (مال - قوت يومه)

Ex. He earns a lot of money a year.

Ex. My uncle works hard to earn his living

2) enjoy

- يلي الفعل enjoy دائماً فعلاً آخر مضافاً له (ing) أو اسم:

Ex. I **enjoyed** watching the film.Ex. The tourists **enjoyed their time** in Egypt.

3) lose - miss

• lose (lost) يفقد (يضيع) شيء / يخسر «مباراة مثلاً»

Ex. I have **lost** my ticket. I need another one.Ex. Our team **lost** the last match.

• miss (ed) يفوته شيء / يفتقد «يودشه» شخص

Ex. I **missed** the bus, so I took a taxi.Ex. I really **miss** my dad.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who do you think will _____ the match?

a earn

b win

c give

d take

2. I _____ the first lesson because I was late.

a missed

b lost

c got

d caught

3. My children enjoy _____ their mum with the housework.

a help

b to help

c helping

d helps



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (51)



استمع إلى النص

Man : What did you do yesterday, Mazin?

Mazin : I went to the zoo.

Man : Oh, **that's interesting**⁽¹⁾! Did you enjoy the day?

Mazin : No, I didn't.

Man : Oh dear. Why not?

Mazin : Well, first, we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very **tired**⁽²⁾. I think they were **in bed**⁽³⁾.

Man : What a pity! So you didn't see them?

Mazin : No, we didn't. Then we went into a **cave**⁽⁴⁾ to see the bats. But it was **dark**⁽⁵⁾, and I didn't see anything.

Man : What did you do next?

Mazin : Then we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was **bath time**⁽⁶⁾ for them.

Man : Wow! How exciting!

Mazin : Yes, I **enjoyed**⁽⁷⁾ that. But then something bad happened.Man : Oh no! **What happened?**⁽⁸⁾

Mazin : An elephant ate my ice cream!

Arabic Meaning

١- هذا شيق.

٢- متعبون

٣- نائمون

٤- كهف

٥- مظلم

٦- وقت الاستحمام

٧- استمتعت بـ

٨- ماذا حدث؟



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (52)



New Message

From : Fatma
To : Azza
Subject : My holiday
Hi, Azza!

I am **back**⁽¹⁾ from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, **snails**⁽²⁾!

One day we climbed the **Eiffel Tower**⁽³⁾, and from the top we had a **view**⁽⁴⁾ of the city. We visited **museums**⁽⁵⁾ and had a picnic in the **Luxembourg Gardens**⁽⁶⁾. We also went on a boat on the **river Seine**⁽⁷⁾. What a pity we did not have time to go to the **Science Museum**⁽⁸⁾. I also wanted to see the art at the **Louvre**⁽⁹⁾, but it was closed. 😊

Near our hotel there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some **postcards**⁽¹⁰⁾. I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma

Send



Arabic Meaning

- ١- رجعت
- ٢- قواقع
- ٣- برج إيفل
- ٤- منظر / مشهد
- ٥- متاحف
- ٦- حدائق
- ٧- نهر السين
- ٨- متحف العلوم
- ٩- متحف اللوفر
- ١٠- بطاقات بريدية

WB Page (106)

Hanan : I went to the beach last weekend.

Lina : Really?

Hanan : When we arrived, it was very windy.

Lina : Oh dear!

Hanan : We didn't want to swim in the sea.

Lina : What a pity!

Hanan : Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.

Lina : How exciting!

Hanan : We saw six big dolphins!

Lina : Wow!

Hanan : Then my brother's phone fell in the water.

Lina : Oh no.

Hanan : The phone was OK. Some new phones can go in water!

Lina : That's interesting!

New Message

Hi Fady,

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our **tickets**⁽¹⁾ at Ramses Station, then we got on the train.

There were people from many countries on the train, **for example**⁽²⁾, England and **Australia**⁽³⁾.

The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we **passed**⁽⁴⁾ Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.

We **arrived**⁽⁵⁾ at Luxor at quarter past six. Many **tourists**⁽⁶⁾ left the train here. They wanted to see the **Valley of the Kings**⁽⁷⁾!

The train **continued**⁽⁸⁾ to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful **journey**⁽⁹⁾.

See you soon!

Mazin

Arabic Meaning

- ١- تذاکر
- ٢- على سبيل المثال
- ٣- استراليا
- ٤- يمر بـ
- ٥- وصلنا
- ٦- سائحون
- ٧- وادي الملوك
- ٨- استمر / اكمل
- ٩- رحلة

Send

Exercises on Lessons

5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to visit the Eiffel one day.

a Zoo**b** Garden**c** Tower**d** Bank

2. What a! I couldn't meet my friends.

a city**b** wonderful**c** fantastic**d** pity

3. My favourite football team 5-0.

a won**b** gained**c** earned**d** missed

4. Everyone liked the film. It was really

a boring**b** interesting**c** unfriendly**d** ugly

5. In Paris, I ate many things like

a snakes**b** snails**c** bears**d** lions

أسوان / إدفو ٢٠٢١

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We don't let the _____ grow in our garden.
a grass **b** pass **c** class **d** glass
- We visited the Valley of the _____ last year.
a Tourists **b** Nurses **c** Kings **d** Farmers
- Ali plays a lot of _____, for example: tennis and football. **WB**
a colours **b** languages **c** photos **d** sports
- It was a/an _____ match. We enjoyed watching it.
a boring **b** tiring **c** exciting **d** terrible
- It was too _____ so we couldn't go for a picnic.
a nice **b** windy **c** funny **d** happy
- Ziad always wears _____ in summer because it is hot.
a sandals **b** jackets **c** posters **d** sandcastles
- My dad sends his _____ to your parents.
a advertisements **b** greetings **c** grades **d** degrees
- We bought tickets at Ramses _____ then we travelled to Aswan.
a Station **b** Bank **c** Library **d** Hotel
- This _____ reminds me of my visit to the Pyramids.
a word **b** station **c** time **d** postcard



Speaking

Responding to news

الاستجابة للأخبار

• نرد على الأخبار باختلاف نوعيها (سارة / غير سارة) بالتعبيرات الآتية :

Good news 😊		Bad news 😞	
How exciting!	يالله من شئ مثير!	Oh dear!	يا إلهي!
Really?	حقاً؟	What a pity!	يالأسف! / ياللعسرة!
Wow!	واو «رائع»!	Oh no!	أوه لا!
That's interesting!	ذلك أمر شيق!		

General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7



1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Hana and Lina are talking about holidays.

Hanan : I went to the beach last weekend.

Lina : ① -----?

Hanan : When we arrived, it was very windy.

Lina : Oh ② -----!

Hanan : We didn't want to swim in the sea.

Lina : ③ -----!

Hanan : Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.

Lina : How ④ -----!

Hanan : We saw six big dolphins!

Lina : That's ⑤ -----!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend sent me a ----- from Paris.

a signature

b postcard

c post office

d tourist

2. A ----- is a small, slow animal with a shell on its back.

a snail

b mail

c frog

d snake

3. Today is too ----- for a picnic.

a wind

b tired

c pity

d windy

4. Oh -----, I think I've lost my keys.

a really

b pity

c dear

d exciting

5. Hani was unlucky to ----- the first prize.

a win

b earn

c lose

d miss

Excel Yourself?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. I always ----- the zoo when I was young.

a visit

b visited

c visiting

d visit

2. How ----- did Hala go to the beach last year?

a deep

b old

c often

d far

3. I ----- a bus with my friends for school every day.

a drive

b go

c climb

d ride

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I never travel abroad during my childhood.

(-----)

2. Hassan can run fast when he was young.

(-----)



Vocabulary

beach	شاطئ	sea	بحر	tower	برج
desert	صحراء	waterfall	شلال	holiday	عطلة/إجازة
lake	بحيرة	cave	كهف	hotel	فندق
river	نهر	queen	ملكة	view	منظر/مشهد
dolphin	دولفين	flag	علم/راية	castle	قلعة
holiday flat	شقة للإجازة	souvenir	هدية تذكارية	forest	غابة كبيرة
exciting	مثير	windy	عاصف/شديد الرياح	interesting	شيق
wind	رياح	postcard	بطاقة بريدية	snail	حيوان القوقع
mountain	جبل	language school		camp (ed)	يعسكر/يخيم
holiday courses			مدرسة لتعليم اللغات	buy (bought - bought)	يشترى
	برامج للإجازات	jungle	غابة استوائية/أدغال		

Verbs & nouns that come together

climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل	play games	يلعب ألعاب
eat delicious food	يأكل طعام لذيذ	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
go in / into a cave	يدخل كهفا	see a camel	يشاهد جمل
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
make a sandcastle	يبني قلعة رملية	swim in the sea / lake	يسبح في البحر/البحيرة
visit a family	يزور أسرة	eat ...for dinner	يأكل على العشاء
ride a horse	يركب حصان	go on holiday	يذهب في إجازة
have dinner	يتناول العشاء		



Grammar

- The past simple tense

Form	- يتكون من التصريف الثاني بإضافة (d / ed) للفعل الأساسي المنتظم play → played, like → liked, carry → carried - الأفعال غير المنتظمة لا يضاف لها (ed) وتحفظ كما هي go → went
Negative	Subject + did not (didn't) + inf. Ex. I didn't complete my work yesterday.
Question	(كلمة استفهام) Did + subject + inf...? Ex. (When) did you go to the supermarket?
Keywords	yesterday - last..... - in the past - ago - in (2018) - once



Speaking

1- Talk about your holiday:

تحدث عن إجازتك:

- I'd like to go to the beach.

- You can swim in the sea.

2- Ask and answer questions about your last holiday

= السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية

Ex. A: Did you swim in the sea?

B: Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin, too and I swam with it.

Ex. A: What food did you eat?

B: I ate a lot of fish.

3- Responding to news:

الاستجابة للأخبار:

- نرد على الأخبار باختلاف نوعيها (سارة / غير سارة) بالتعبيرات الآتية:

Good news 😊

How exciting!

يا له من شيء مثير!

Really?

حقاً؟

Wow!

واو «رائع»!

That's interesting!

ذلك أمر شيق!

Bad news 😞

Oh dear!

يا إلهي!

What a pity!

يا للأسف! / يا للحسرة!

Oh no!

أوه لا!

General Exercises on Unit 5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Fatma got a new laptop.

Fatma : My father bought me a new laptop for my birthday.

Marwa : 1 !

Fatma : Yes, but I broke it while I was playing some games.

Marwa : 2 you another one?

Fatma : No, he 3

Marwa : Oh 4 ! What did he do?

Fatma : He asked an engineer to repair it.

Marwa : Does it work well now?

Fatma : Yes, it does.

Marwa : 5 !

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We swam in the sea and played on the

a beach

b tent

c river

d castle

2. The people in Cairo are very

a friend

b slow

c friendly

d dark

3. I met Ali when I was holiday in Germany.

a in

b with

c on

d by

4. How did you to school today?

a went

b going

c goes

d go

SB

5. When I eight, I visited the Pyramids.

a were

b am

c is

d was

6. What did you for dinner last night?

a ate

b eat

c eating

d eats

وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢١

SB

7. I a horse in the desert last month.

a rode

b rides

c riding

d ride

8. The of the waterfall was fantastic.

a desert

b beach

c view

d castle

9. There was a beautiful view of the city from the of the tower. الغربية / قطور ٢٠٢١

a project

b hotel

c tape

d top

10. The tourists camped in the desert and in a tent!
- a** sleep **b** slept **c** sleeps **d** sleeping
11. you and your family stay in a hotel last summer?
- a** Does **b** Did **c** Are **d** Do
12. I a picnic yesterday.
- a** had **b** has **c** have **d** having
13. I climbed a high last year.
- a** beach **b** mountain **c** forest **d** river
14. Tourists enjoy shopping in Cairo because Cairo's shops are
- a** frightened **b** fantastic **c** terrible **d** dark
15. I couldn't swim in the sea because it was
- a** windy **b** calm **c** warm **d** sunny

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I visit my family in Canada last year. (.....)
2. They don't travel by car. They went on foot. (.....)
3. She didn't wear a coat because it is a very hot day. (.....)
4. I spend a wonderful time in Paris ten years ago. (.....)
5. We visited Siwa two years age. (.....)
6. What food did you ate? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

A visit to Paris

[مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب]

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- | | |
|--|---|
| - When did you visit Paris? | - With whom did you travel? |
| - Was the food there delicious? | - What places did you visit? |
| - Did you visit the river Seine? | - Did you like the Louvre? |
| يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية: | |
| - I visited Paris with | - I ate |
| - We visited the Eiffel Tower. | - We went on a boat on the river Seine. |
| - We had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. | |
| - We saw the art at the Louvre. | |

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1- The speaker went to

a Alexandria**b** Fayoum**c** Sinai**d** Aswan

2- The speaker went there with his

a family**b** brother**c** father**d** friend

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Samah : Where did you spend your holiday?

Mariam :

2- Karim :?

Ahmed : I went to Sharm El Sheikh with my family.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every summer, Heba visits her uncle who lives in Alexandria. His name is Mohammed. He is a doctor. He lives with his wife and two children. He lives in a big flat. His children are called Adel and Ahmed. Every morning Mohammed takes Heba and his family for a swim in the sea. They go there by car. Adel and Ahmed like swimming. Heba doesn't like swimming very much. She spends her time playing handball with her uncle's wife. Heba likes her uncle's wife because she is nice. Mohammed likes sleeping on the beach.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Heba's uncle live?

2. How many children has he got?

3. What does Mohammed like doing on the beach?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Heba likes

a swimming**b** sleeping**c** playing handball**d** eating

5. Heba visits her uncle every

a summer**b** winter**c** autumn**d** spring

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

A journey you went on

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When did you go on a journey?

- Who went with you?

- What places did you enjoy seeing?

- Was it a nice journey?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last week, I travelled to

- bought our tickets.

- The train left at

- I enjoyed the view of

- It was a wonderful journey.



حجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي

تدريبات - امتحانات

Unit 5 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Ramy went to last summer.

a Cairo

b Giza

c Aswan

d Alexandria

2. He in the sea.

a played

b swam

c ate

d slept

3. He played on the

a sea

b garden

c beach

d house

4. He stayed at a

a house

b hotel

c flat

d street

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Ramy and Rahma are talking about Ramy's last holiday.

Ramy : I went to Alexandria last week.

Rahma : ①

Ramy : When we arrived, it was raining.

Rahma : ②

Ramy : We didn't want to swim in the sea.

Rahma : ③ a pity!

Ramy : Then the rain stopped and we went on a boat trip.

Rahma : ④

Ramy : I bought this ⑤ for you.

Rahma : That's interesting!

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday Bassem and his brother Kareem decided to go on holiday. They travelled to Luxor by plane. At half past ten, they went to the airport. An hour later, the plane

began to fly. Kareem read Al Ahram newspaper and slept. **It** fell down and Bassem picked it up. He read it for a while, then he looked through the window and saw many beautiful things. The land was green. When they arrived in Luxor, they took a taxi to their hotel. They visited the Karnak Temple and Luxor Temple. They enjoyed the ancient Egyptian arts. They were of wonderful colours. In the evenings, they went to the cinema. It was a nice holiday. They returned to Cairo by plane, too.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What places did Bassem and Kareem visit in Luxor?

2. Where did they stay in Luxor?

3. When did the plane begin to fly?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. _____ read the newspaper.
- a** Only Bassem **b** Only Kareem
c Both Bassem and Kareem **d** No one
5. Bassem and Kareem went back to Cairo _____.
- a** by taxi **b** on foot **c** by plane **d** by bus
6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the _____.
- a** plane **b** newspaper **c** holiday **d** airport

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ visit Egypt every year to enjoy the fine weather.
a Farmers **b** Drivers **c** Tourists **d** Nurses
2. We went _____ a boat trip last week.
a in **b** from **c** with **d** on
3. The sign says, "Put your _____ in the bin."
a litter **b** letter **c** car **d** tree
4. When we went to the London Eye, we went on a _____.
a drive **b** ride **c** swim **d** skip
5. Ahmed _____ an expensive mobile yesterday.
a buy **b** buys **c** bought **d** buying
6. We _____ visit the temple last week.
a don't **b** didn't **c** weren't **d** haven't

7. A: Did you watch TV?

B: Yes, I

a did

b do

c didn't

d don't

8. Last year, we went to Aswan and bought some to remember the places we visited.

القليوبية / بنها ٢٠٢١

a prizes

b awards

c presents

d souvenirs

9. I went to the shops, but they were

a closed

b close

c near

d open

10. I learnt English at a school.

a music

b sports

c language

d cars

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Last summer, I travel to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. (.....)

2. I have a wonderful time in Alex last week. (.....)

3. I were in London for two weeks. (.....)

4. Did you swim in the sea tomorrow? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

A day on the beach

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When did you go there?

- With whom did you go there?

- What was the weather like?

- What did you do on the beach?

- Did you go fishing?

- Was the day nice?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I went to the beach last

- When we arrived there, it was very

- We swam in the wonderful water.

- We made sandcastles.

- We played

- It was a day.

New Hello!

Prep. 1



UNIT 6 Let's eat!

Objectives

Reading:

A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa.

Writing:

A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café.

Listening:

A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café.

Speaking:

Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice; ordering food in a café.

Language:

Countable and uncountable nouns; *should* and *shouldn't* for advice.

Life Skills:

Decision making; problem solving

Issues:

Preventative health

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

biscuits*	بسكويت	sugar	سكر
cheese	جبين	recipe	وصفة طهي
crisps	رقائق بطاطس مقلية	ingredients	مقادير أكلة
figs	تين	teaspoon	(مقدار) ملعقة شاي
hummus	حمص (طحينة)	saucepan	إناء صغير (طاسة)
nuts	مكسرات	cinnamon	قرفة (من التوابل)
olives	زيتون	fridge	ثلاجة
peppers	فلفل (من الخضروات)	review	تقييم
raisins	زبيب	boil(ed)	يغلي - يسلق
salad	سلطة	add(ed)	يضيف
rice pudding	أرز باللبن	stir(red)	يقلب
salt	ملح		



Vocabulary

coconut	جوز الهند	ready	جاهز/مُعَد
online	عبر الإنترنت	tomatoes	طماطم
cupboard	دولاب	perfect	رائع/ممتاز
minute	دقيقة	plate	طبق (مسطح)
market	سوق	bowl	سلطانية
hot chocolate	مشروب شيكولاته ساخنة	share(d)	يشارك
equipment	معدات (اسم مفرد)	decide(d)	يقرر
whole	كامل/كل	cook(ed)	يطهو
enough	كافي	prefer(red)	يفضل
delicious	لذيذ		



Words & Meanings

add (v)	يضيف	put something together with another thing	Arabic Meaning
biscuit (n)	بسكويت	a sweet snack baked ⁽¹⁾ in the oven ⁽²⁾ , usually small, flat and round	١- مخبوز ٢- فرن
cinnamon (n)	قرفة	a sweet spice ⁽³⁾ used in cooking	٣- تابل

crisps (n)	رقائق بطاطس مقلية	hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack ⁽⁴⁾
fig (n)	تين	a sweet fruit with a purple ⁽⁵⁾ skin that is very soft inside
raisin (n)	زبيب	a small, dry grape
recipe (n)	وصفة طهي	instructions on how to make a meal
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	a machine that keeps food and drink cold
hummus (n)	طحينة	a soft food made from chickpeas ⁽⁶⁾

٤- وجبة خفيفة
٥- قرمزي
٦- حمص

Expressions & Prepositions

really easy	سهل جدا	It's my favourite .	إنها المفضلة لدي.
a bit boring	ممل بعض الشيء	on top	على القمة
Let's + inf	هيا بنا....	a cup of	فنجان من
the whole family	كل العائلة	put... into	يضع... في
make lunch	تعد طعام الغداء	eat on a plate	يأكل من طبق
make hot chocolate	يعد مشروب شيكولاته ساخنة	sit down	يجلس
		with coconut	مضاف إليه جوز الهند

Word Differences

cheese	جبين	chess	لعبة الشطرنج
stir	يقلب	store	يخزن
pepper	فلفل	paper	ورق
recipe	وصفة طهي	receipt	إيصال
cupboard	دولاب	board	سبورة
market	سوق	supermarket	سوبر ماركت
health (n)	صحة	healthy (adj)	صحي

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يفكر	thought	thought
make	يعد «يطهو»	made	made



Language Notes

1) recipe - ingredients - menu

• recipe وصفة طهي

Ex. There are a lot of **recipes** online.

• ingredients مقادير أكلة

Ex. There aren't a lot of **ingredients** in rice pudding.

• menu قائمة طعام

Ex. I asked the waiter to give us the **menu**.

2) It's + صفة + to + inf.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف طريقة عمل شيء (صنع / تحضير / طهي طعام... إلخ)

Ex. You can make pizza. **It's easy to make.**

Ex. I'll cook koshari. **It's quick to cook.**

3) prefer

• prefer + v- ing / to + inf. يفضل

Ex. I **prefer** eating rice pudding.

Ex. I **prefer to stay** home tonight.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is _____ to ride a bike.

- a** easily **b** easy **c** as easy **d** as easily

2. I prefer _____ clothes made of cotton.

- a** wears **b** to wearing **c** to wears **d** to wear

3. Do you know a good _____ for Indian soup?

- a** recipe **b** menu **c** plate **d** dish



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (55)



استمع إلى النص

Nadia : Let's make lunch. I think we've got all the food.

Omar : There's some **salad**⁽¹⁾. Is there any **hummus**⁽²⁾?

Nadia : No, there isn't. But there are some **olives**⁽³⁾.

Omar : There are some **peppers**⁽⁴⁾, too.

Nadia : Good! Is there any **cheese**⁽⁵⁾?

Omar : Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia : What about **figs**⁽⁶⁾? Are there any figs?

Omar : No! There aren't any figs.

Nadia : There are some **raisins**⁽⁷⁾.

Omar : That's good.

Arabic Meaning

١- سلطة

٢- حمص (طحينة)

٣- زيتون

٤- فلفل

٥- جبنة

٦- تين

٧- زبيب

Say it correctly

* biscuits (bis - cuits) وينطق الاخير (kits) مثل
لنطق هذه الكلمة نقسمها إلى نصفين



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (56)

Roz Bel Laban: Egyptian Rice Pudding*

Ingredients

- 1 **cup**⁽¹⁾ of rice
- 2 cups of water
- 3 cups of milk
- 1 cup of sugar
- ¼ a cup of raisins
- ¼ a cup of nuts
- ¼ a **teaspoon**⁽²⁾ of **cinnamon**⁽³⁾

Instructions

1. Put the rice and water in a **saucepan**⁽⁴⁾.
2. **Boil**⁽⁵⁾ the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. **Add**⁽⁶⁾ the milk slowly as you **stir**⁽⁷⁾.
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the **rice pudding**⁽⁸⁾ into **bowls**^{(9)*}.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the **fridge**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Arabic Meaning

١- فنجان

٢- مقدار

ملعقة

٣- قرفة

٤- إناء صغير

٥- يغلى

٦- يضيف

٧- يقلب

٨- أرز باللبن

٩- سلطانية

١٠- ثلاجة

Say it correctly

* pudding (book) في كلمة (oo) ينطق مثل (u) لاحظ ان الصوت الملون (u) ينطق مثل (oo) في كلمة (book)
* bowl (show) كما ينطق الجزء الملون من الفعل (show) ينطق الصوت (ow) كما ينطق الجزء الملون من الفعل (show)



SB Page (57)

Reviews of a recipe

- Really⁽¹⁾ easy!

★★★★★

- This is a great

recipe^{(2)*}.

- It's really easy to make.

- There aren't a lot of ingredients⁽³⁾ and it's very quick to cook.

Fawzi

- OK, but a bit

boring⁽⁴⁾

★★★

- I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are too many raisins. I don't like them. I prefer⁽⁵⁾ rice pudding with coconut⁽⁶⁾.

Hana

- Perfect⁽⁷⁾!

★★★★★

- There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family⁽⁸⁾. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food⁽⁹⁾.

Nabila

- Not like my mum's rice pudding!

★★

- My mum's rice pudding is delicious⁽¹⁰⁾, but this rice pudding isn't very good. - There's too much sugar and there aren't enough other ingredients.

Salem

Arabic Meaning

١- حقاً	٢- وصفة طهي	٣- مقادير أكلة	٤- ممل بعض الشيء	٥- يفضل
٦- جوز الهند	٧- رائع	٨- الأسرة بالكامل	٩- طعام طلو	١٠- لذيذ

Say it correctly

* recipe

ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل الجزء الملون من كلمة (letter) مع نطق حرف (e) الأخير

WB Page (110)

Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has enough plates for people to eat on, but she does not have enough chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has too much fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people but they can't all sit down. There are too many people and not enough chairs!

Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara is talking to Mona about a recipe they found on the internet.

Sara : Did you see the recipe for rice pudding?

Mona : Yes, it's ①

Sara : Why do you say that it's perfect?

Mona : Because ② to make.

Sara : I don't think it's good.

Mona : ③ ?

Sara : I think it has too many raisins.

Mona : ④ using coconut?

Sara : ⑤ , I do. It's really delicious.

Mona : You can make me two bowls with coconut.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't like the film. It was boring.

- a** a bit **b** great **c** small **d** nice

2. is my favourite food.

- a** Chart **b** Cheese **c** Chess **d** Choice

3. are unhealthy food.

- a** Crisps **b** Vegetables **c** Fruits **d** Nuts

4. He sugar into his coffee and drank it.

- a** ate **b** boiled **c** stirred **d** cooked

5. are dried grapes.

- a** Milk **b** Nuts **c** Crisps **d** Raisins

6. A is a round container that is used to cook things.

- a** saucepan **b** glass **c** teaspoon **d** fork

7. Which of these is not a cooking verb?

- a** prefer **b** boil **c** stir **d** add

8. I made rice pudding following a from the internet.

- a** menu **b** list **c** recipe **d** rule

9. Mum made that food using fresh

- a** menus **b** types **c** buildings **d** ingredients

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like Egyptian rice

- a** putting **b** pudding **c** adding **d** building

2. Put rice and water in a before making rice pudding.

الإسكندرية / المنتزه ٢٠٢١

- a** bag **b** teaspoon **c** saucepan **d** cup

3. This newspaper shows a/an of the new film of that actor.

- a** show **b** ingredient **c** review **d** recipe

4. Add one of sugar to the milk, please.

- a** pot **b** teaspoon **c** bowl **d** pan

5. is a sweet spice that is used in cooking.

- a** Salt **b** Rice **c** Water **d** Cinnamon

6. The for making pizza is very easy.

الغربية / السنطة ٢٠٢١

- a** cookie **b** menu **c** recipe **d** list

7. Which of the following is not an ingredient?

الأزهر الشريف / الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

- a** rice **b** nuts **c** raisins **d** fridge

8. You can learn a lot about rice pudding recipes

SB

- a** online **b** line **c** fine **d** outline

9. You need a cup rice to make Roz Bel Laban.

- a** of **b** with **c** in **d** from

10. There aren't a lot of in the recipe.

- a** ingredients **b** sand **c** pieces **d** pots

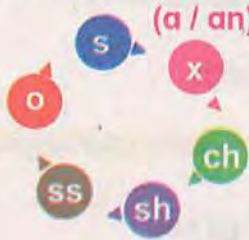


Grammar

Countable & Uncountable nouns

الاسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد

- Countable nouns:



- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبقها (a / an) أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة (s / es / ies / ves) أو تجمع جمع شاذ.
- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تنتهي بـ (s - es - ies - ves) أو تجمع جمع شاذ.
- تكوين الجمع من الأسماء التي تعد:

1- إما بإضافة s لآخر الاسم: book → books

2- أو بإضافة es لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة في الشكل المقابل:

bus → buses beach → beaches

3- أو بإضافة ies إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y).

- أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف ويضاف (s) فقط.



4- أو بإضافة ves لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ (f / fe) حيث تحذف كما يلي:

knife → knives loaf → loaves

5- هناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

mouse → mice ox → oxen
man → men woman → women

- الأسماء التي لا تعد لا تجمع ولا تسبقها (a / an) ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل مفرد (v + s / is / was / has / does)

Ex. Cheese is my favourite food.

أحفظ الجدول الآتي للأطعمة التي تعد والأطعمة التي لا تعد

Countable food nouns أسماء أطعمة تعد		Uncountable food nouns أسماء أطعمة لا تعد
مفرد	جمع	مفرد دائماً
a crisp واحدة رقائق بطاطس مقلية	crisps رقائق بطاطس مقلية	cheese جبنة
a biscuit واحدة بسكويت	biscuits بسكويت	bread خبز
a nut حبة مكسرات	nuts مكسرات	fish لحم سمك
a vegetable خضار	vegetables خضروات	chicken لحم دجاج
a salad سلطة	salads سلطات	pasta مكرونات

a carrot	جزرة	carrots	جزر	rice	أرز
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes	بطاطس	koshari	كشري
a tomato	ثمرة طماطم	tomatoes	طماطم	meat	لحم
an apple	تفاحة	apples	تفاح	salt	ملح
an egg	بيضة	eggs	بيض	milk	لبن
a fig	واحدة تين	figs	تين	hummus	حمص (طحينة)
an olive	واحدة زيتون	olives	زيتون	sugar	سكر
a pepper	واحدة فلفل	peppers	فلفل	oil	زيت
a raisin	واحدة زبيب	raisins	زبيب	soup	حساء «شورية»

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There much water on the floor of the bathroom. القليوية / بنها ٢٠٢١
a are **b** is **c** were **d** have
2. Vegetables good for our health.
a are **b** is **c** was **d** have

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The bread you bought were fresh. (.....)
2. Sugar are harmful to health. (.....)
3. There is not enough ingredients in that recipe. (.....)



some & any

تستخدم **some** بمعنى «بعض» في الجملة المثبتة مع الأسماء التي تُعد (الجمع) والأسماء التي لا تُعد:

Ex. She bought **some** nuts / meat.

تستخدم **some** في السؤال (العرض/للطلب)

Ex. Would you like **some** tea?

Ex. Can I have **some** juice, please?

تستخدم **any** بمعنى «أي» في الجملة المنفية وفي السؤال مع الأسماء التي تُعد والتي لا تُعد:

Ex. I don't have **any** apples / rice.

Ex. Did you buy **any** pens / pasta?

some تستخدم مع		any تستخدم مع	
سؤال (عرض/طلب)	جملة مثبتة	سؤال	جملة منفية



There is- isn't / are - aren't يوجد/لا يوجد

Ex. There **is** a printer / water on the table.

Ex. There **aren't** any printers on the table.

Ex. There **isn't any water** on the floor.

انظر الشرح السابق في قواعد الوحدة الرابعة.



a lot of **lots of** كثير من

تستخدمان (في الإثبات) أمام الأسماء التي **تعد** في صيغة الجمع، وكذلك أمام الأسماء التي **لا تعد**:

Ex. We have **a lot of / lots of raisins**.

Ex. She bought **a lot of / lots of chocolate**.



enough كافٍ

نستخدم (**enough**) بمعنى كافٍ قبل الاسم الذي يعد في صيغة الجمع أو قبل الاسم الذي لا يعد.

Ex. There are **enough cakes** for all the students.

Ex. There is (not) **enough water**.



too many كثير جدًا (للعدد) **too much** كثير جدًا (للكمية)

نستخدم (**too many**) مع الأسماء التي تعد في صيغة الجمع بمعنى (كثير جدًا أكثر من اللازم).

Ex. There are **too many biscuits** in the fridge.

نستخدم (**too much**) مع الأسماء التي لا تعد بمعنى (كثير جدًا أكثر من اللازم).

Ex. There is **too much cheese** on the table.

Exercises on Lessons

1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's rice for you all.

الغريبة / السنتة ٢٠٢١

a enough

b any

c many

d a lot

2. there any hummus?

SB

a Is

b Are

c Were

d Am

3. A: Are there nuts in the cupboard? B: Yes, there are.

a much

b a lot

c any

d a

4. There are raisins in the fridge.

SB

a much

b a

c any

d some

5. Fruit juice can have sugar in it.

a any

b many

c an

d a lot of

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There are too **much** people in the market today. قنا / أبو تشت ٢٠٢٢ (.....)

2. **Are** there any flour? (.....)

3. There's too **many** milk in the fridge. الشرقية / منشأة أبو عمر ٢٠٢١ (.....)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are people in this café. Let's go to another one. أسوان / الدفو ٢٠٢١

a enough **b** too many **c** too much **d** any

2. There butter in the fridge. الأزهر الشريف / القليوبية ٢٠٢١

a is any **b** are some **c** is some **d** are any

3. there any cheese? إدارة أسوط ٢٠٢٢ **SB**

a Are **b** Were **c** Does **d** Is

4. There aren't figs in the fridge. البحر الاحمر / القصير ٢٠٢٢

a some **b** any **c** a **d** much

5. There's milk in the fridge.

a some **b** a **c** any **d** many

6. There are peppers on the table.

a any **b** a **c** much **d** some

7. Crisps have too salt and fat. **SB**

a any **b** much **c** some **d** many

8. I don't like these cakes because they have sugar in them. **WB**

a too much **b** too many **c** enough **d** a lot

9. There is not rain for orange trees to grow in the desert. **WB**

a too much **b** too many **c** enough **d** a lot of

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There aren't enough milk to make hot chocolate. سوهاج / الخميم ٢٠٢٢

(.....)

2. Are there any salt in the food? (.....)

3. There isn't any olives in the fridge. (.....)



Speaking

Asking and answering about food

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام

Questions	Answers
- Is there any + اسم مفرد? هل يوجد أي؟	- Yes, there is some / little / much / enough... - No, there isn't any
- Are there any + اسم جمع? هل يوجد أي؟	- Yes, there are some / many / enough - No, there aren't any

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Malak and Heba are talking about the food they like.

Malak : Hello, Heba. What food do you like best?

Heba : Hello, Malak. I like ¹ a lot.

Malak : Why do you like pizza?

Heba : It ²

Malak : I know it is delicious but it isn't healthy.

Heba : ³ any healthy food you advise me to eat?

Malak : Yes, you should eat vegetables and fruit.

Heba : Do we have ⁴ in the fridge?

Malak : No, we haven't ⁵ now, but we can buy some from the market.

Heba : OK, let's go.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to water before you drink it.

a add

b boil

c eat

d throw

2. Mai much salt to the food, so it was salty.

a designed

b added

c boiled

d cooked

3. Cakes and chocolate have a lot of

a salt

b peppers

c water

d sugar

4. Koshari has some like pasta and rice.

a vegetables

b fruits

c ingredients

d crisps

5. Roz Bel Laban is Egyptian

a crisps

b rice pudding

c biscuits

d tomatoes

6. Could you lend me money, please?

a some

b many

c a lot

d any

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We don't have many rice.

الجيزة / العجوزة ٢٠٢١ (.....)

2. I don't like that food. There is too many salt.

إدارة الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢١ (.....)

3. Could you give me any water?

(.....)

4. We didn't buy some juice.

(.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

The food you like in your kitchen

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What food do you like in your kitchen?
- What are the healthy foods you like?
- Do you like crisps? Why? Why not?
- Why do you like fruit?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I like kitchen.
- I meat,
- I don't like
- I fresh
- Doctors say fresh

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



healthy	صحي	cakes	كعك
snack	وجبة خفيفة	fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية
fat	دهون		



Vocabulary

illness	مرض	type	نوع
weight	وزن	vegetables	خضروات
sweet	حلو المذاق	body	جسد
hungry	جوعان	careful	حريص
teeth	أسنان	fruit juice	عصير فواكه
dinner time	وقت العشاء	pasta	مكرونه
lunchtime	وقت الغداء	onion	بصل
meal	وجبة	cooking pot	اناء للطهي
traditional	تقليدي	taste (d) (n)	يتذوق/طعم
spices	توابل	cause (d)	يسبب
Africa	قارة افريقيا	clean (ed)	ينظف
Zimbabwe	دولة زيمبابوي	wash (ed)	يغسل
piece	قطعة	touch (ed)	يلمس
Kenya	دولة كينيا	dry (ied)	يجفف
South Africa	دولة جنوب إفريقيا	try (ied)	يجرب (طعام)

Names of meals

tagine	طاجين (أكله مغربية)	koshari	كشري
nyama na irio	نياما نا إيرو (أكله من كينيا تتكون من لحم وبطاطس)	beans	فول
stew	يخني (أكلة من اللحم و الخضراوات والتوابل)	kapenta	كابنتا (أكله سمك من زيمبابوي)
		shepherd's pie	فطيرة الراعي (أكلة من اللحم والخضار والبطاطس في إنجلترا)



Words & Meanings

bean (n)	فول	a long, narrow green vegetable that you usually eat cooked ⁽¹⁾	
cake (n)	كعك	a sweet food that you bake in the oven	Arabic Meaning
fat (n)	دهون	natural oils in food	١- مطهو
fizzy drinks (n)	مشروبات غازية	drinks that have bubbles ⁽²⁾ and a lot of sugar	٢- فقاعات
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	a small amount of food that you eat between meals	٣- إناء
stew (n)	يخني	a meal made with meat and vegetables in one pot ⁽³⁾	

Expressions & Prepositions

It's a good idea	إنها فكرة رائعة	catch fish	يصاد السمك
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	Be careful!	كن حريضا
feel ill	يشعر بالمرض	look after	يعتنى بـ
see a doctor	يزور طبيب	cook.... with	يطهو... مع...
It's the best way to....	إنها أفضل طريقة لـ....	come from	يأتي من (بلده...)
stop + v- ing	يتوقف عن....	for dinner	على العشاء
It's OK to...	لا بأس أن...	write about	يكتب عن

Food adjectives

amazing	رائع
delicious	لذيذ / شهى
good for	مفيد لك
great	رائع
healthy	صحي
wonderful	رائع

Food adjectives

bad for you	ضار لك
not nice	ليس جيد
unhealthy	غير صحي

Word Differences

great	عظيم / رائع	greet	يحيى
taste	يتذوق	test	اختبار
snack	وجبة خفيفة	snake	ثعبان
fat	دهن / سمين	fit	لائق بدنيا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
catch	يمسك / يصطاد	caught	caught



Language Notes

1) Everyone + singular verb

- يأتي بعد الضمير (everyone) فعل لفاعل مفرد:

Ex. Everyone **likes** cakes.

2) a day = daily = every day

تأتي هذه الكلمات بمعنى (يوميًا):

Ex. You should drink a glass of milk **a day**.

3) catch

يأتي الفعل (catch) بمعاني مختلفة حسب ما يأتي بعده من كلمات:

- | | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------|
| - catch fish | يصطاد سمك | - catch a thief | يقبض على لص |
| - catch the bus | يلحق بالأتوبيس | - catch a ball | يلتقط الكرة |

4) stew

- **stew (n)** يخنى (خضروات مع اللحم تُطهى في طاجن على نار هادئة)

Ex. Mum's making **a stew** for lunch.

- **stew (v) (ed)** يطهو طعام ببطء على نار هادئة

Ex. You need to **stew** the meat for two hours.

5) a piece / pieces of قطعة / قطع (من)

يمكن أن تستخدم (a piece of / pieces of) قبل الأسماء التي لا تُعد:

Ex. Here's **a piece of** cheese.

Ex. Eat four **pieces of** fruit.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hossam takes the medicines three times
 a day b a day c days d on day
- My dad always fish from the nearby lake.
 a hunts b gives c catches d makes
- Everyone at the party really happy.
 a were b had c are d was
- Mum gave of cake to my brother.
 a a piece b pieces c cup d glass



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SBPage (58)

Healthy Snacks*

Everyone loves **snacks**⁽¹⁾! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy **healthy**⁽²⁾ snacks?

Crisps⁽³⁾ and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Fantastic⁽⁴⁾ fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet **taste**⁽⁵⁾. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit **a day**⁽⁶⁾.

Beans⁽⁷⁾ and vegetables

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or **fat**⁽⁸⁾. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like **hummus**⁽⁹⁾ with carrot and **pepper**⁽¹⁰⁾ are delicious.

Be careful!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. **Fruit juice**⁽¹¹⁾ has got a lot of sugar so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- وجبات خفيفة
- ٢- صحي
- ٣- رقائق
- بطاطس مقلية
- ٤- رائى
- ٥- طعام
- ٦- يومياً
- ٧- فول
- ٨- دهون
- ٩- حمص (طحينة)
- ١٠- فلفل
- ١١- عصير فواكه

Say it

correctly

ينطق الصوت (ack) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطقه في كلمة (black) *sn ack

SBPage (60)

Food in Africa

Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite **meal**⁽¹⁾ is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, **pasta**⁽²⁾ and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

Marwa

I live in Morocco. Tagine is a **traditional**⁽³⁾ meal from my country. It is a **stew**⁽⁴⁾ with meat, vegetables, fruit and **spices**⁽⁵⁾. The **taste**⁽⁶⁾ is amazing! The name tagine comes from the **cooking pot**⁽⁷⁾ for this food.

Hamza

In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

Makena

Arabic Meaning

- ١- وجبة
- ٢- مكرونة
- ٣- تقليدي
- ٤- يخنى
- ٥- توابل
- ٦- طعام
- ٧- إناء طهي

Kapenta is a popular **type**⁽⁸⁾ of fish in Zimbabwe. We **catch**⁽⁹⁾ the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and **onions**⁽¹⁰⁾. It is great!

٨- نوع
٩- يصطاد
١٠- بصل

Bradley



Say it
correctly

* stew

ينطق الصوت الملون (ew) تمامًا مثل نطق كلمة (you)



Audioscript
نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (59)

استمع إلى النص



Presenter : It's important to eat the right things but we shouldn't **forget**⁽¹⁾ about what we drink. Dr Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr Randa, what should we drink?

Dr Randa : Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is **great**⁽²⁾, because it hasn't got any fat or sugar.

Arabic Meaning

١- ينسى

٢- رائعة

٣- مشروبات

غازية

٤- حتى

Presenter : OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for us?

Dr Randa : Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.

Presenter : So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar... Some **fizzy drinks**⁽⁵⁾ don't have any sugar. Are they OK?

Dr Randa : No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, **even**⁽⁶⁾ when they don't have sugar.

Presenter : So we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are any drinks good for our teeth?

Dr Randa : Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.



WB Page (112)

استمع إلى النص



Boy 1 : In England people often have a traditional meal called shepherd's pie. We make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is wonderful. My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream!

Say it
correctly

* shepherd

لا ينطق حرف (h) في هذه الكلمة



Videoscript

SB Page (58)

Narrator : What did you eat for lunch today? Did you eat some **falafel**⁽¹⁾ or a chicken salad?

Or **perhaps**⁽²⁾ you enjoyed some delicious meat and rice.

And what did you drink? Maybe you had some water, a cup of tea or some nice orange juice.

The food that we eat today is similar to the food that the ancient Egyptians ate a long time ago.

The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. **In fact**⁽³⁾, people believe that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world.

The ancient Egyptians used the land near the river Nile to grow a lot of different fruit and vegetables.

They also grew enough **wheat**⁽⁴⁾ to make bread.

Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt. Scientists found some bread in the **tomb**⁽⁵⁾ of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was 4,000 years old!

Pharaohs and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit, such as figs and **dates**⁽⁶⁾. They also had it with **honey**⁽⁷⁾.

Bread is still important today. From this bread in Egypt today... to **bagels**⁽⁸⁾ in the USA... and **baguettes**⁽⁹⁾ in France, people all around the world love it at all times of the day.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- فلافل
- «طعمية»
- ٢- ربما
- ٣- في الحقيقة
- ٤- قمح
- ٥- مقبرة
- ٦- بلع
- ٧- عسل
- ٨- خبز البيجل
- «خبز أمريكي»
- ٩- الخبز الفرنسي

Exercises on Lessons

3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tagine is a meal in Morocco. It is old.

- a** modern **b** unhealthy **c** bad **d** traditional

2. My favourite is koshari.

- a** sport **b** game **c** meal **d** pudding

3. Healthy are important for you.

- a** snacks **b** snakes **c** pairs **d** diagrams

4. I like my food with a lot of They make it delicious.

- a** flowers **b** spices **c** trees **d** spaces

الشرقية / أولاد صقر ٢٠٢١

جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١

5. We shouldn't have a lot of _____ drinks.

- a** fizzy **b** careful **c** good **d** healthy

6. It's important to eat _____ food.

- a** dirty **b** healthy **c** unhealthy **d** bad

7. Don't put too much _____ on your food.

- a** salt **b** recipes **c** reviews **d** snacks

8. People in Kenya often have meat _____ for dinner.

- a** straw **b** show **c** star **d** stew

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should look _____ our teeth.

- a** for **b** after **c** from **d** to

2. You should eat two pieces of fruit _____.

- a** day **b** in day **c** a day **d** daytime

3. Pepper and cinnamon are _____.

- a** pieces **b** spaces **c** places **d** spices

4. Most people like the sweet _____ of sugar.

- a** test **b** list **c** taste **d** toast

5. Koshari has got rice and _____ in it.

- a** pasta **b** dates **c** meat **d** potatoes

6. The name tagine comes from the _____ pot for this food.

- a** playing **b** cooking **c** writing **d** swimming

7. Salad is very _____. It's important for you.

- a** healthy **b** unhealthy **c** bad **d** poor

8. Tagine is the name of a known _____ in Morocco.

- a** sport **b** colour **c** subject **d** meal

9. Too much sugar is bad _____ our bodies.

- a** from **b** for **c** with **d** of

10. If you feel ill, you should _____ a doctor.

- a** look **b** help **c** see **d** watch

11. You shouldn't eat too many _____.

- a** cakes **b** carrots **c** apples **d** oranges

12. I like _____ food like cakes and chocolate.

- a** salty **b** sweet **c** hot **d** spicy



Grammar

Giving advice: should / shouldn't (إعطاء النصيحة بـ (ينبغي أن - ينبغي ألا)

نستخدم (should / shouldn't) لإعطاء النصيحة ودائمًا ما يأتي بعدهما مصدر الفعل:

مصدر الفعل. should / shouldn't + inf. + ضمير / فاعل (مفرد / جمع)

should	shouldn't
• للنصيحة (بفعل شيء) نستخدم should + inf.	• للنصيحة (بعدم فعل شيء) نستخدم shouldn't + inf.
Ex. You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.	Ex. You shouldn't eat too many crisps and cakes.

• لطلب النصيحة نستخدم:

1- سؤال بـ (هل...؟) Should + فاعل + inf.....?

Ex. Should I clean my teeth?

Yes, you should. الإجابة في الإثبات

No, you shouldn't. الإجابة في النفي

2- سؤال (بكلمة استفهام): should + فاعل + inf...? + كلمة استفهام

Ex. What **should** we eat?

- لاحظ استخدام الأفعال الآتية بعد (should / shouldn't)

be - have - do

Ex. You **should** be more careful.

Ex. Ahmed **should** have the books with him today.

Ex. You **should** do your homework after school.

لاحظ الآتي:

Exercises on Lessons

3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We drink a glass of milk every day.

a can't

b should

c couldn't

d shouldn't

2. Lama feels ill. She see a doctor.

a can't

b shouldn't

c should

d mustn't

SB

WB

3. We drink too much fruit juice.

- a** should **b** shouldn't **c** can **d** not

WB

4. You always clean your teeth before you go to bed.

- a** should **b** mustn't **c** shouldn't **d** can't

إدارة بورسعيد ٢٠٢١ WB

5. We eat too many crisps.

- a** should **b** doesn't **c** must **d** shouldn't

الأزهر الشريف / الغربية ٢٠٢١ WB

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Omar should come home very late. (.....)

2. When should I coming home every day? (.....)

3. She should to clean her teeth in the morning. (.....)

القليوبية / كفر شكر ٢٠٢١

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We have drinks with a lot of sugar.

- a** should **b** shouldn't **c** must **d** have to

SB

2. We eat fresh food.

- a** shouldn't **b** mustn't **c** have **d** should

3. We eat too many biscuits.

- a** must **b** should **c** shouldn't **d** can

4. Hany eat too many snacks.

- a** has **b** should **c** shouldn't **d** was

5. You should a lot of fruit and vegetables.

- a** eat **b** to eat **c** eating **d** eats

الأزهر الشريف / الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢١

6. What I eat for lunch?

- a** am **b** are **c** should **d** have

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Should I having tea with much sugar? (.....)

جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١

2. Amira shouldn't have a rest; she's very tired. (.....)

3. You should drinking enough water. (.....)

جنوب سيناء / شرم الشيخ ٢٠٢١



Speaking

Asking and answering about good and bad foods

السؤال والإجابة عن الأطعمة الجيدة والضارة

Questions	Answers
- What food do you like? ما الطعام الذي تحبه؟	- I like (cheese).
- What food don't you like? ما الطعام الذي لا تحبه؟	- I don't like (Pizza).
- Which snacks are good for you? أي من الوجبات الخفيفة مفيدة لك؟	- Vegetables are good for me.
- Which snacks are bad for you? أي من الوجبات الخفيفة ضارة لك؟	- Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Karim and Hany are talking about good and bad foods.

Karim : What food do you like?

Hany : ① a lot?

Karim : I don't like them, snacks are not healthy.

Hany : But some of them are healthy.

Karim : ② good for us?

Hany : Vegetables are ③

Karim : Which snacks are bad for us?

Hany : ④ are bad for us.

Karim : ⑤ pizza a good snack?

Hany : No, it isn't.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People in Kenya often have meat for dinner.

a straw

b show

c stew

d star

2. I don't like spicy foods, they aren't

a funny

b healthy

c fast

d modern

3. We always eat healthy food.

- a** should **b** shouldn't **c** don't **d** mustn't

4. You have much sugar in your tea.

- a** shouldn't **b** doesn't **c** are **d** must

5. is a long, narrow vegetable that you usually eat cooked.

- a** Cake **b** Bean **c** Snack **d** Fat

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Kamal should drinks a lot of water. (.....)

2. She is very tired. She shouldn't have some rest. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Your favourite meal "Koshari"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What food do you like best?
- What ingredients does it have?
- Why do many people like it?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My favourite meal is
- I like
- It is very
- It has
- Koshari is very in Egypt

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

café	مقهى / كافيتريا	menu	قائمة طعام
healthy	صحي	chef	رئيس الطهاه
unhealthy	غير صحي	waiter	جرسون (مقدم الطعام)
customer	زبون	dessert	التحلية (بعد الطعام)



Vocabulary

wall	حائط	basbousa	بسبوسة
chicken pizza	بيتزا بالدجاج	kunafa	كنافة
fresh	طازج	pound	جنيه
part	جزء	restaurant	مطعم
apple juice	عصير تفاح	hope (d)	يأمل
window	نافذة	visit (ed)	يزور
real	حقيقي		

Expressions & Prepositions

Here you are	تفضل	make sure	يتأكد
look delicious	يبدو لذيذ	on the water	في المياه
enjoy.....most	يستمتع به.... للغاية	on the beach	على الشاطئ
Anything else?	هل تريد شيء آخر؟	on the sea	في البحر
different than usual	مختلف عن المعتاد	go back to	يعود إلى
look like	يشبه	look out of the window	ينظر خارج النافذة

Word Differences

wall	حائط	wool	صوف
chef	طاهي	chief	رئيسي
sweet	حلوى	sweat	عرق
dessert	التحلية (بعد الطعام)	desert	صحراء

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
cost	يكلف / يتكلف	cost	cost



Language Notes

1) menu - list

- menu قائمة لأنواع الطعام / الوجبات (في مطعم)

Ex. Is there any rice on the menu?

- list قائمة (أسماء / أرقام ... إلخ)

Ex. Shall I add your name to the list?

2) look + adj

- look + adj يبدو + صفة

Ex. Let's watch that film. It looks nice.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Is there any fish on the _____ ?

- a** list **b** menu **c** waiter **d** receipt

2. After Hassan had an accident, he looked _____ .

- a** sad **b** sadly **c** as sad **d** sadder



Audioscript

SB Page (61)

نصوص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



Assistant : Hello. What would you like today?

Customer : I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza⁽¹⁾, please?

Assistant : OK. Anything else⁽²⁾?

Customer : Yes, a salad⁽³⁾, please.

Assistant : Small or large⁽⁴⁾?

Customer : Small, please.

Assistant : And would you like any drinks⁽⁵⁾?

Customer : Have you got any fruit juice⁽⁶⁾?

Assistant : Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

Customer : I'd like an orange juice, please.

Assistant : Is that everything?

Customer : Yes, it is.

Assistant : That's 105 pounds⁽⁷⁾, please.

Customer : Thank you, here you are.

Arabic Meaning

١- بيتزا

٢- أي شيء آخر

٣- سلطة

٤- كبير

٥- مشروبات

٦- عصير فواكه

٧- جنيهات



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (62)

City Café

Great visit! ★★★★★

Review by: Sara

I visited this **café**⁽¹⁾ last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We **chose**⁽²⁾ this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The **walls**⁽³⁾ were green and white and there were big windows. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city.)

Ashraf and I both had **rice**⁽⁴⁾ for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had **chicken**⁽⁵⁾. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very **healthy**⁽⁶⁾! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had **desserts**⁽⁷⁾. This was the part we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different desserts and they all looked delicious! I chose **basbousa**⁽⁸⁾ and Ashraf had **kunafa**⁽⁹⁾. They were **amazing**⁽¹⁰⁾!!! 😊

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!



Arabic Meaning

- ١- كافيتريا
- ٢- اخترنا
- ٣- حوائط
- ٤- أرز
- ٥- لحم دجاج
- ٦- صحن
- ٧- التحلية (بعد الطعام)
- ٨- بسبوسة
- ٩- كنافة
- ١٠- رائعة

WB Page (113)

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today?

You : Hello. Have you got any pizzas?

Waiter : Yes. Small or large?

You : Large, please.

Waiter : What would you like to drink?

You : I'd like some cola, please.

Waiter : Anything else?

You : No, thank you. How much are these?

Waiter : That's 105 pounds, please.

You : Thank you, here you are.

WB Page (114)

- I want to write about an amazing meal⁽¹⁾ I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)
- I had my favourite meal, Koshari. I love Koshari but this was different than usual⁽²⁾. It was delicious⁽³⁾. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.
- We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.
- It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!



Arabic Meaning

١- وجبة

٢- معتاد

٣- لذيذ

WB Page (114)

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice. At a great restaurant⁽¹⁾ in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh⁽²⁾. We chose the fish and the chef^{(3)*} cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

Arabic Meaning

١- مطعم

٢- طازج

٣- رئيس الطهاة

Say it correctly

* chef

ينطق الحرفين (ch) هنا مثل نطق حرفي (sh) في كلمة (ship)

Exercises on Lessons

5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The food is delicious; we must thank the _____.
 a chef b chief c menu d dish
- This restaurant has a _____ of about 50 types of food.
 a list b dish c menu d plate
- When you eat well, you become _____.
 a unhealthy b ugly c dirty d healthy
- I'd like to have basbousa for _____ after lunch, please.
 a dessert b menu c desert d juice

5. All the waiters know me. I'm a regular

- a** waiter **b** customer **c** tagine **d** chef

6. I asked the to bring me some juice.

- a** waiter **b** water **c** cooker **d** customer

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We booked two tables at our favourite

- a** meal **b** menu **c** restaurant **d** recipe

2. Hamburger and chips are kinds of food.

- a** unhealthy **b** unfriendly **c** unpopular **d** unhappy

3. Try to eat fruit every day.

- a** dirty **b** fresh **c** unhealthy **d** fat

4. you are. This is the money you asked for.

- a** There **b** Hear **c** Her **d** Here

5. Amany chose a chicken with rice from the

- a** customer **b** menu **c** café **d** waiter

6. I many kinds of food in Paris when I was there.

- a** dried **b** tried **c** drank **d** booked

7. We this café for lunch because it looked very nice.

- a** chose **b** caught **c** forgot **d** ate



Speaking

Ordering food in a café

طلب الطعام في مطعم صغير (كافيتريا)

- تستخدم العبارات الآتية عند طلب الطعام في مطعم:

Assistant	Customer
- What would you like (to have)? ماذا تريد (أن تأكل)؟	- Have you got any.....? هل لديكم أي.....؟
- Yes. We've got - Here you are.	- I'd like to have (طعام/مشروب).
- Anything else? هل تريد شيء آخر؟	- Yes, I'd like some - No, thanks.
- Is that everything? هل ذلك كل ما تريد؟	- How much does it cost? كم يتكلف هذا؟
- That's pounds.	

General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7



WB

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is at a restaurant.

Customer : Can I get a menu, please?

Waiter : Sure, Here you are. What would you like?

Customer : ① a chicken pizza, please.

Waiter : OK! ② ?

Customer : Yes, please. Have you got any drinks?

Waiter : Yes. We've got orange juice. Is that ③ ?

Customer : Yes, please. How ④ does it cost?

Waiter : That's 80 ⑤

Customer : Here you are. Thank you.

Waiter : You're welcome.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This restaurant is very famous because it has a wonderful

a chef

b street

c door

d table

2. The gave me the menu to order my meal.

a doctor

b waiter

c watcher

d nurse

3. If there's a nearby, we could stop for a snack.

a café

b menu

c customer

d window

4. This restaurant has a long of about 50 dishes.

a waiter

b visit

c chef

d menu

5. I love this food. It looks

a bad

b terrible

c ugly

d delicious

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

A healthy meal

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you think of food?
- Who cooks in your family?
- Should we have much salt? Why / Why not?
- What do you like to eat?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Food is
- Meat, vegetables, and healthy.
- We should salt in our
- I'd like to eat

Excel Yourself?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. How sheep did you see, Ali?

- a** much **b** many **c** a lot of **d** any

2. A: Have you got any money?

B: No, I have got money.

- a** some **b** a lot of **c** any **d** no

3. There is usually pollution in cities.

- a** much **b** many **c** a lot **d** any

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. How many mans did you meet? (.....)

2. How often water did the students drink? (.....)



Vocabulary

biscuits	بسكويت	olives	زيتون	fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية
cheese	جبنة	peppers	فلفل	recipe	وصفة طهي
crisps	رقائق بطاطس مقلية	cinnamon	قرفة	ingredients	مقادير أكلة
figs	تين	raisins	زبيب	teaspoon	(مقدار) ملعقة شاي
hummus	حمص (طحينة)	salad	سلطة	saucepan	إناء صغير (طاسة)
fridge	ثلاجة	sugar	سكر	café	مقهى / كافيتريا
review	تقييم	salt	ملح	waiter	جرسون
healthy	صحي	snack	وجبة خفيفة	chef	رئيس الطهاة
unhealthy	غير صحي	fat	دهون	boil (ed)	يغلي / يسلق
cakes	كعك	customer	زبون	add (ed)	يضيف
nuts	مكسرات	menu	قائمة طعام	stir (red)	يقلب
rice pudding	أرز باللبن	dessert	التحلية (بعد الطعام)		



Grammar Review

1) Countable & Uncountable Nouns

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns
<p>- اسم مفرد يسبق بـ (a / an)</p> <p>- جمع لا يسبق بـ (a/an) ويضاف إليه (s / es / ies / ves)</p> <p>a bus → bus<u>es</u></p> <p>a candy → candi<u>es</u></p> <p>a loaf → loav<u>es</u></p>	<p>- اسم ليس له جمع ويعامل معاملة المفرد</p> <p>- لا يأتي قبله (a / an) ولا يضاف له (s)</p> <p>الجمع.</p> <p>water / cheese / milk</p>

some بعض

enough كاف

lots of = a lot of كثير من

- الكلمات السابقة تأتي أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والتي لا تعد في الإثبات:

enough

Ex. I have **some** milk / books.

a lot of

تأتي **any** أمام الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد في النفي:

lots of

Ex. Have you got **any** milk / books?

- No, I **haven't** got **any**.

Ex. He **has got too many** books. - تأتي (too many) أمام الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع).

Ex. I **have got too much** milk. - تأتي (too much) أمام الاسم الذي لا يعد.

2 Giving advice: should / shouldn't

- نستخدم **should** للنصيحة بفعل شيء بمعنى (ينبغي أن) ويأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل :

Ex. You **should eat** healthy food.

- نستخدم **shouldn't** للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء بمعنى (ينبغي ألا) ويأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل :

Ex. You **shouldn't eat** much fat.



Speaking

1 Asking and answering about food

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام

Questions	Answers
- Is there any + اسم مفرد.....?	- Yes, there is. - No, there isn't.
- Are there any + اسم جمع.....?	- Yes, there are. - No, there aren't.

2 Asking and answering about good and bad foods

السؤال والإجابة عن الأطعمة الجيدة والضارة

Questions	Answers
- What food do you like?	- I like (cheese).
- What food don't you like?	- I don't like (Pizza).
- Which snacks are good for you?	- Vegetables are good for me.
- Which snacks are bad for you?	- Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me.

3 Ordering food in a café

طلب الطعام في مطعم صغير (كافيتريا)

Assistant	Customer
- What would you like (to have)?	- Have you got any.....?
- Yes. We've got	- I'd like to have
- Here you are.	
- Anything else?	- Yes, I'd like some - No, thanks.
- Is that everything?	- How much does it cost?
- That's pounds.	

General Exercises on Unit 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is ordering food.

Waiter : Hello! What would you like to eat, sir?

Customer : Hello, ① chicken pizza?

Waiter : We've got chicken or cheese and tomato pizzas.

Customer : ② a chicken pizza, please.

Waiter : Do you like it ③?

Customer : No, I don't like any spices.

Waiter : Do you want any drinks?

Customer : Yes, please, I want some orange ④

Waiter : Anything ⑤?

Customer : No, thank you.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We fish from the lake.

- a** buy **b** swim **c** catch **d** throw

2. We have fizzy drinks.

- a** have to **b** must **c** shouldn't **d** should

3. I had lunch with my friends at a great

- a** restaurant **b** bank **c** library **d** theatre

4. That juice has too sugar in it.

- a** few **b** many **c** any **d** much

5. It's a good to eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

- a** bowl **b** idea **c** ingredient **d** recipe

6. is a cooking verb.

- a** Start **b** Stand **c** Stir **d** Store

7. The of tagine is amazing! It's my favourite food.

- a** test **b** last **c** fast **d** taste

8. There are a lot of there.

- a** people **b** rice **c** milk **d** sugar

9. I know a great for making biscuits at home.

- a** menu **b** recipe **c** review **d** meal

10. I enjoyed watching the boats the sea.

- a** about **b** for **c** on **d** with

SB

11. A works at a restaurant.

- a** nurse **b** teacher **c** vet **d** chef

12. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very

- a** unhealthy **b** light **c** bad **d** fresh

13. Koshari is a food.

- a** unpopular **b** popular **c** polluted **d** back

14. How pieces of fruit should I eat a day?

- a** much **b** lots **c** many **d** enough

15. I have a big problem. What I do?

- a** should **b** have **c** am **d** was

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Do you need a help? (.....)
2. I'd like a pieces of this cake, please. (.....)
3. Would you like lots coffee? (.....)
4. We should not to talk in the Maths lesson. (.....)
5. Here is an banana for you. (.....)
6. You don't should eat crisps before a meal. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Food we should or shouldn't eat

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do doctors give us advice about health?
- Why is unhealthy food bad for the body?
- is it healthy to drink much water? - Is it healthy to drink much cake?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Doctors tell us to drink much water.
- Unhealthy food makes us
- If you want to be healthy, you must
- We must every day.

Azhar Exercises

تمارين الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. The speaker likes to have at lunchtime.

a beans

b fish

c koshari

d cakes

2. The speaker never puts on his fish.

a rice

b bread

c sugar

d salt

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Waiter : How can I help you?

Customer :

2- Ashraf :

Ziad : My favourite food is fish.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Water is very important for lives of people, plants and animals. Water comes from rain. When there is little rain for a long time, some places have a drought. This means that the land becomes very dry. Egypt doesn't always have a lot of rain, so it is important for us to save water. In Egypt, we get our water from the Nile. Because we love our country, we should stop throwing rubbish into the Nile.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does water come from?

.....

2. Why is it important for the Egyptians to save water?

.....

3. When does the land become dry?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What does the underlined word "rubbish" mean?

a air

b smoke

c letter

d litter

5. We should help make the Nile

a cleaner

b dirtier

c drier

d wetter

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

Your favourite food

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Is food always healthy?

- Should we eat healthy food? Why?

- What is your favourite food?

- Do you eat salad? Why/ Why not?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- We should eat

- I eat salad with each meal.

- My favourite food is

- Too much salt is



Bit by Bit
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي

تدريبات - امتحانات

Unit 6 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Osama had lunch

a at home

b at work

c in the street

d at a restaurant

2. His sister ordered

a koshari

b kofta

c tagine

d fish

3. His mother ate

a meat

b chicken

c fish

d pizza

4. His father ate

a rice and meat

b koshari

c pizza

d beans

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

You are at a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today?

You : Hello. Have you got any ①

Waiter : Yes. Small or large?

You : ②, please.

Waiter : What would you like to drink?

You : ③ some fizzy drinks, please.

Waiter : Anything else?

You : No, thank you. ④ is it?

Waiter : That's 80 ⑤, please.

You : Thank you, here you are.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi! My name's Mai. I always have a sandwich and tea for breakfast. My favourite sandwiches are potatoes and cheese sandwiches. They're delicious! I also like kofta sandwiches. I always have lunch at school. I take a packed lunch with me. I have some sandwiches, an apple or a banana and I usually drink hot chocolate or tea. For dinner I have cheese and some salad, pizza or fish and chips. But, I like spaghetti the most because it is my favourite food.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is Mai's favourite food?
.....
2. Where does she have her lunch?
.....
3. Do you think Mai is healthy? Why/ Why not?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. She drinks at school.

a hot chocolate or tea	b juice and water
c coffee and tea	d juice and milk
5. Potatoes and cheese sandwiches are

a terrible	b bad	c wrong	d delicious
-------------------	--------------	----------------	--------------------
6. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

a spaghetti	b pizza	c food	d cheese
--------------------	----------------	---------------	-----------------

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There figs in the cupboard. WB

a is any	b are any	c aren't any	d aren't some
-----------------	------------------	---------------------	----------------------
2. There's a lot of sugar in this

a salt	b recipe	c koshari	d meat
---------------	-----------------	------------------	---------------
3. There cheese in the fridge. WB

a is any	b are any	c are some	d is some
-----------------	------------------	-------------------	------------------
4. We shouldn't drink too much fruit

a soup	b oil	c juice	d tea
---------------	--------------	----------------	--------------

5. A is a small meal that you can eat between meals.
a snake **b** snack **c** breakfast **d** lunch
6. Ful and falafel are very in Egypt.
a unknown **b** dark **c** light **d** popular
7. Get all the together before you start cooking.
a grades **b** menus **c** ingredients **d** degrees
8. Put the rice pudding in the
a fridge **b** page **c** bridge **d** age
9. are natural oils in food.
a Fans **b** Foot **c** Fats **d** Feet
10. We apologize when we make a mistake.
a should **b** have **c** are **d** shouldn't

SB

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should eat too much chocolate. (.....)
2. Don't drink too many fruit juice. (.....)
3. I didn't buy some food from the market. (.....)
4. There is a lot of people outside. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

A meal you remember.

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What meal do you remember?
- Who was with you?

- Where did you have it?
- What did they choose?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I fish rice.
- I went with
- We chose the

- It was at a restaurant.
- The restaurant was sea.
- I hope to again.

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

special food	طعام من نوع خاص	butter	زبد
spring	فصل الربيع	honey	عسل
BCE	قبل الميلاد	play	مسرحية
hide (hid / hidden)	يخفي / يختفي	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
pancakes	فطير	check (ed)	يفحص / يتأكد
pan	طاسة / مقلاة		



Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (64)

Sham El-Nessim

1 What and when is it?

Sham El-Nessim⁽¹⁾ is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of spring⁽²⁾. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE⁽³⁾!

2 What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.



3 A recipe

On this day, we eat a lot of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh? Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much!

Arabic Meaning

١- شَم النسيم

٢- فصل الربيع

٣- قبل الميلاد

4 What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo? We are painting eggs! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call. It was fun to talk to them on the laptop.



Do you know any other special food? Click on the icon at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a message for it.

WB Page (116)



New Message

Judy's shopping list

Hi Judy,

The family party is on Saturday. There are ten people. Can you help me and buy the shopping?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles is enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

Mona

Send



WB Page (117)

Look at these photos of my holiday. This is my family. We are having a picnic on the beach. That is my little sister. She is making a sandcastle. That is my big brother. He is riding a bike. Look at my cousins! They are swimming in the sea. In this photo, my uncle is climbing a mountain. And that is me! I am sleeping in a tent.



Audioscript

نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (65)

استمع إلى النص



Narrator : In the UK, many people eat **pancakes⁽¹⁾** at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl, and add two eggs.

Stir everything together.

Put some butter in a pan. When the **butter⁽²⁾** is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes! Cook each pancake for 2 to 3 minutes on one side. Then cook

the other side of the pancake. Eat your pancakes with **honey⁽³⁾** and nuts, or with sugar and lemon juice. Humm, they are delicious!

Arabic Meaning

١- فطير

٢- زبد

٣- العسل



WB page (116)



استمع إلى المفردات

1- **Boy 1** : I have tickets for the new play on Saturday.

Boy 2 : How exciting!

2- **Man 1** : I'd like a small salad, please.

Man 2 : Is that everything?

Man 1 : Er, have you got any orange juice?

Man 2 : Small or large?

Man 1 : Large, please.

3- **Woman** : First put water in a kettle. Then boil the water. Put the hot water in a cup with some hot chocolate. Don't add too much sugar. It isn't healthy.

4- **Girl** : Last summer, we went to the Red Sea. I swam in the sea every day! It was wonderful!

5- **Woman** : It's very hot today. You should drink a lot of water and you should wear a hat, too!



احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات

Revision on Units 4, 5 & 6



Vocabulary

technology	التكنولوجيا	break (n)	فترة راحة / يكسر	selfie (selfies)	صورة سيلفي
website	موقع على الإنترنت	mobile phone	هاتف جوال	secret (adj/n)	سري / سر
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي (تابلت)	printer	طابعة	recipe	وصفة طهي
phone charger	شاحن الهاتف	3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	ingredients	مقادير أكلة
nature	الطبيعة	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	teaspoon	(مقدار) ملعقة شاي
hobby	هواية	instructions	تعليمات	saucepan	إناء صغير (طاسة)
video call	مكالمة فيديو	safe	آمن	jungle	غابة استوائية / أدغال
beach	شاطئ	password	كلمة المرور	holiday	عطلة / إجازة
desert	صحراء	sea	بحر	hotel	فندق
lake	بحيرة	waterfall	شلال	view	منظر / مشهد
river	نهر	cave	كهف	castle	قلعة
dolphin	دولفين	queen	ملكة	forest	غابة كبيرة
holiday flat	شقة للإجازة	flag	علم / راية	interesting	شيق
exciting	مثير	souvenir	هدية تذكارية	snail	حيوان القواقع
wind	رياح	windy	عاصف / شديد الرياح	café	مقهى / كافيتريا
mountain	جبل	postcard	بطاقة بريدية	waiter	جرسون
biscuits	بسكويت	olives	زيتون	chef	رئيس الطهاة
cheese	جبنة	peppers	فلفل	dessert	التحلية (بعد الطعام)
crisps	رقائق بطاطس مقرية	cinnamon	قرقة	charge (d)	يشحن
figs	تين	raisins	زبيب	print (ed)	يطبع
hummus	حمص (طحينة)	salad	سلطة	turn (ed) on	يشغل (جهاز)
fridge	ثلاجة	sugar	سكر	camp (ed)	يعسكر / يخيم
review	تقييم	salt	ملح	boil (ed)	يغلي / يسلق
healthy	صحي	snack	وجبة خفيفة	add (ed)	يضيف
unhealthy	غير صحي	fat	دهون	stir (red)	يقلب
cakes	كعك	customer	زبون	mouse (mouses)	فأرة الكمبيوتر (ماوس)
nuts	مكسرات	menu	قائمة طعام	buy (bought - bought)	يشترى
rice pudding	أرز باللبن	fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية	online (adv) (adj)	عبر الإنترنت / متصل بالإنترنت
laptop computer	كمبيوتر محمول	MP3 player	مشغل ملفات الصوت		
holiday courses	برامج للإجازات	language school	مدرسة لتعليم اللغات		

Expressions & Prepositions

take notes	يدون ملاحظات	look for	يبحث عن
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	charge.... with	يشحن ... باستخدام
fly a kite	يطير طائرة ورقية	at break / lunchtime	
make friends with	يكون صداقات مع		في وقت الراحة / وقت الغداء
keep secret	يحافظ على.... سري	worried about	قلق بشأن
go online	يتصل بالانترنت	ride on a camel	يركب جمل
have a wonderful time	يقضي وقت رائع	get to	يصل إلى
do projects	ينفذ مشروعات	walk all around	يتجول حول
make lunch	تعد طعام الغداء	on the river	في النهر
feel ill	يشعر بالمرض	in bed	في الفراش / نائم
see a doctor	يزور طبيب	put... into	يضع ... في
stop + v- ing	يتوقف عن	look after	يعتنى بـ
Here you are.	تفضل.	on the beach	على الشاطئ
look delicious	يبدو لذيذ	go back to	يعود إلى
make sure	يتأكد	look out of the window	ينظر خارج النافذة



Grammar Review

1) There is / There are

	للمفرد	للمجمع
إثبات	There is..... مع الأسماء التي تعد المفرد / الأسماء التي لا تعد	There are..... مع الأسماء التي تعد (المجمع)
نفي	There isn't	There aren't
استفهام	Is there ?	Are there ?

EX. There is a book / some milk on the table.

EX. There are pens on the desk.

2) The present continuous tense

Subject	I / We / They / You / (اسم جمع)	He / She / It / (اسم مفرد)
إثبات	am / are + V-ing.	is + V-ing.
نفي	am / are + not + V-ing.	is + not + V-ing.
استفهام	Am / Are + فاعل + V-ing....?	Is + فاعل + V-ing....?
Keywords	Look! / Listen! / now / at present / at the moment / Look out! / watch out!	

EX. I'm watching a film now.

EX. She isn't doing sports at present.

3 Imperative

التكوين		الاستخدام
إثبات	يبدأ بمصدر الفعل. Inf.	١- إعطاء الأوامر: EX. Keep quiet in class. EX. Don't make noise in the library.
		٢- إعطاء تعليمات: EX. Read the question, then answer it. EX. Don't/ Never take the medicine before meals.
نفي	Don't / Never + inf.	٣- إعطاء نصيحة: EX. Keep safe online. EX. Don't / Never tell anyone your password.

4 - The past simple tense

Form	يتكون من التصريف الثاني بإضافة (d/ ed) للفعل الأساسي المنتظم play → played, like → liked, carry → carried - الأفعال غير المنتظمة لا يضاف لها (ed) وتحفظ كما هي go → went
Negative	Subject + did not (didn't) + inf. Ex. I didn't complete my work yesterday.
Question	Did + subject + inf...? (كلمة استفهام) Ex. (When) did you go to the supermarket?
Keywords	yesterday - last..... - in the past - ago - in (2018) - once

5 Countable & Uncountable Nouns

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns
اسم مفرد يسبق بـ (a / an) - جمع لا يسبق بـ (a / an) ويضاف إليه s / es / ies / ves a bus → bus es a candy → cand ies a loaf → loav es	اسم ليس له جمع ويعامل معاملة المفرد - لا يأتي قبله (a / an) ولا يضاف له (s) الجمع. water / cheese / milk

some بعض

enough كاف

lots of = a lot of كثير من

- الكلمات السابقة تأتي أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والتي لا تعد في الإثبات:
Ex. I have $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{enough} \\ \text{some} \\ \text{a lot of} \\ \text{lots of} \end{array} \right\}$ milk / books.
تأتي **any** أمام الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد في النفي:

Ex. Have you got **any** milk / books? - No, I **haven't** got **any**.

Ex. He **has got too many** books. تأتي **too many** أمام الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع).

Ex. I **have got too much** milk. تأتي **too much** أمام الاسم الذي لا يعد.

6 Giving advice: should / shouldn't

– نستخدم (should) للنصيحة بفعل شيء بمعنى (ينبغي أن) ويأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل :

Ex. You **should eat** healthy food.

– نستخدم (shouldn't) للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء بمعنى (ينبغي ألا) ويأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل :

Ex. You **shouldn't eat** much fat.



Speaking

1 Ask and answer questions about your classroom: السؤال والاجابة عن فصلك: الدراسي:

– للسؤال والاجابة عما يحتويه الفصل الدراسي من الممكن أن تقول:

A: What's in your classroom?

B: There are some laptops and a whiteboard. There aren't any tablets.

A: Is there a printer?

B: Yes, there is one.

A: Are there any mobile phones?

B: No, there aren't.

2 Talk about what people are doing: الحديث عما يفعله شخص:

– للسؤال عما يفعله شخص الآن نستخدم:

Am / Is / Are + فاعل + V-ing

Question	Answer
Is Hala making a video call?	No, she isn't. She's writing a text message.
Are you waving?	No, I'm not. I'm putting my hand up.
Are you sitting next to your best friend?	Yes, I'm sitting next to my best friend.
Is he wearing black shoes?	Yes, he's wearing black shoes.
Is Soha taking a selfie?	No, she isn't. She's talking on her mobile phone/ to a friend.
Is Fatma writing an email?	Yes, she is.

3 Giving instructions:

إعطاء التعليمات:

- يستخدم الفعل في صيغة الأمر المثبت لإعطاء التعليمات:

EX. Go to the shop. Buy an ice cream. Eat it.

- وتستخدم (Don't / Never) يليها مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن الأمر المنفي:

EX. Don't / Never tell people your password.

4 Talk about your holiday:

تحدث عن إجازتك:

- I'd like to go to the beach.

- You can swim in the sea.

5 Ask and answer questions about your last holiday:

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية:

• نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط في السؤال والإجابة عن إجازة قضيناها.

Ex. A: Did you swim in the sea?

B: Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin, too and I swam with it.

Ex. A: What food did you eat?

B: I ate a lot of fish.

6 Responding to news:

الاستجابة للأخبار:

- نرد على الأخبار باختلاف نوعيها (سارة / غير سارة) بالتعبيرات الآتية:

Good news 😊

How exciting!
Really?
Wow!
That's interesting!

Bad news 😞

Oh dear!
What a pity!
Oh no!

7 Asking and answering about food:

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام:

Questions	Answers
- Is there any + اسم مفرد? هل يوجد أي؟	- Yes, there is some / little / much / enough - No, there isn't any
- Are there any + اسم جمع? هل يوجد أي؟	- Yes, there are some / many / enough - No, there aren't any

8 Asking and answering about good and bad foods:

السؤال والاجابة عن الأطعمة الجيدة والضارة:

Questions	Answers
- What food do you like?	- I like (cheese).
- What food don't you like?	- I don't like (Pizza).
- Which snacks are good for you?	- Vegetables are good for me.
- Which snacks are bad for you?	- Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me.

9 Ordering food in a café:

طلب الطعام في مطعم صغير (كافيتريا):

Assistant	Customer
- What would you like (to have)?	- Have you got any.....?
- Yes. We've got - Here you are.	- I'd like to have
- Anything else?	- Yes, I'd like some - No, thanks.
- Is that everything?	- How much does it cost?
- That's pounds.	



احجز نسختك من


المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب 

1. Azza had a wonderful time in

- a** London **b** Paris **c** Cairo **d** Dubai

2. She bought a T-shirt and

- a** souvenirs **b** jackets **c** carpets **d** postcards

3. She visited a

- a** mountain **b** building **c** tower **d** tree

4. She came back a ago.

- a** month **b** day **c** week **d** year

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is ordering food.

Waiter : Good afternoon! What would you like to have?

Customer : I'd like a **1**, please.

Waiter : Small or large?

Customer : **2**, please.

Waiter : OK. Anything **3** ?

Customer : Yes, I'd like a salad, please.

Waiter : Is that **4** ?

Customer : Yes.

Waiter : I'll be back soon.

Customer : **5**

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Yara. I'm 12 years old. I live in Cairo. I live with my family, my parents, my sister Yomna and my brother Ahmed. I like healthy snacks. But, my sister Yomna likes unhealthy snacks. I eat bananas, grapes and salad. The healthy food is delicious. Yomna eats crisps, pizza and chocolate. My brother Ahmed likes healthy snacks, too. He eats carrots and peppers. They are delicious. Yomna often becomes ill. My mother always takes her to see a doctor. She has bad teeth. We should all eat healthy snacks.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Yomna like?

2. What does Ahmed like?

3. Do you like healthy snacks? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to _____.

a the mother

b Yara

c Yomna

d teeth

5. Ahmed eats _____ and peppers.

a crisps

b carrots

c chocolate

d pizza

6. Yomna likes _____.

a bananas

b grapes

c milk

d chips

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We haven't got _____ milk.

a some

b a

c any

d an

2. I always feel _____ of spiders.

a frightened

b interesting

c delicious

d active

3. _____ is a popular Egyptian meal.

a Koshari

b Kapenta

c Tagine

d Burger

4. There isn't any _____ in rice pudding.

a rice

b meat

c sugar

d milk

SB

5. Ali is _____ an English book.

a read

b reads

c reading

d riding

6. You should keep your _____ secret.

a passports

b password

c passage

d passenger

7. People can go to beaches and build _____.

a sandcastles

b picnic

c jungles

d boxes

8. The _____ from the top of the Cairo Tower is fantastic.

a review

b camera

c view

d revision

9. I love technology. My favourite hobby is playing _____ games.

a icon

b charger

c selfie

d video

10. How _____ you go to school yesterday?

a do

b does

c doing

d did

5 Read and correct the underlined words

1. There are any peppers in the fridge.

(-----)

2. I ate too much olives.

(-----)

3. They didn't climbed the tree.

(-----)

4. He are catching fish now.

(-----)


E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

A wonderful picnic

أسئلة SB / WB على المنهج حسب ترتيب الورقة الامتحانية

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

 Complete the following dialogue:

1- Dalida is talking about her cousin.

Dalida : This is a photo of my cousin.

Reem : ① his name?

Dalida : It's Fares.

Reem : ② is he?

Dalida : He's 14.

Reem : Where does he live?

Dalida : He ③ in Giza.

Reem : What ④ does he like?

Dalida : He likes fish and rice.

Reem : ⑤ sport does he like?

Dalida : He likes basketball.

2- Hana and Nadia are talking about hobbies.

Hana : Hello! Nadia.

Nadia : Hello! Hana.

Hana : ① favourite hobby?

Nadia : I like sports. I play tennis ② Tuesdays.

Hana : ③ do you play it?

Nadia : In the club.

Hana : Who do you play with?

Nadia : With ④ friend Faten.

Hana : Do you have any other hobbies?

Nadia : Yes, ⑤ reading.

3- Hala is talking to Omar.

Hala : Good morning, Omar.

Omar : Good morning, Hala.

Hala : What subject have we got next, Omar?

Omar : ① next.

- Hala** : I like science. ② ----- is your favourite subject?
Omar : It's English.
Hala : ③ ----- at languages?
Omar : ④ -----, I'm quite good at English and French.
Hala : I'm not very good at them.
Omar : OK! ⑤ ----- help you.

4- Mazin is talking with his mum about his friend Samir.

- Mazin** : Hello, mum!
Mum : Hello, Mazin!
Mazin : There's my friend, Samir.
Mum : I don't know Samir. ① ----- ?
Mazin : He's got short, dark ② -----
Mum : Oh! I think I can see him. Has he ③ ----- glasses?
Mazin : No, he ④ ----- . His dad's with him.
Mum : Has Samir's dad got a beard?
Mazin : ⑤ -----, he has.
Mum : Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.

5- Ziad and Ahmed are talking about Mohamed Salah.

- Ziad** : Hello! Ahmed.
Ahmed : Hello! Ziad.
Ziad : Do you like ① ----- football?
Ahmed : Yes, ② -----
Ziad : Who is your ③ ----- ?
Ahmed : Mohamed Salah. He ④ ----- a lot of goals.
Ziad : What does he look like?
Ahmed : ⑤ ----- a beard and curly hair.
Ziad : Why do people like him?
Ahmed : He has usually got a big smile.

6- Judy is talking to Leila on the phone.

- Judy** : Hi Leila. Where are you?
Leila : Hi Judy. I'm in the park with my family.
Judy : What ① ----- there?
Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny.
Judy : ② ----- your brothers sitting, too?
Leila : No, they ③ ----- . They're playing football.
Judy : Is your dad playing football with them?
Leila : No, he ④ ----- . He's not here. He's working today.
 But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!
Judy : ⑤ ----- your mother doing?
Leila : Er, wait ... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks Mum!

7- Ali and his mum are talking.

- Mum** : Ali!
- Ali** : Yes, Mum.
- Mum** : ① ----- here, please, Ali.
- Ali** : Yes, Mum. What is it?
- Mum** : Stop playing on your phone and listen ② ----- me. I need you to do something.
- Ali** : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do?
- Mum** : Please, ③ -----, buy some sugar, and take it to your grandmother's house.
- Ali** : OK, Mum.
- Mum** : ④ ----- late, Ali.
- Ali** : ⑤ -----, Mum.

8- Hana and Lina are talking about holidays.

- Hanan** : I went to the beach last weekend.
- Lina** : ① -----?
- Hanan** : When we arrived, it was very windy.
- Lina** : Oh ② -----!
- Hanan** : We didn't want to swim in the sea.
- Lina** : ③ -----!
- Hanan** : Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.
- Lina** : How ④ -----!
- Hanan** : We saw six big dolphins!
- Lina** : That's ⑤ -----!

9- Fatma got a new laptop.

- Fatma** : My father bought me a new laptop for my birthday.
- Marwa** : ① -----!
- Fatma** : Yes, but I broke it while I was playing some games.
- Marwa** : ② ----- you another one?
- Fatma** : No, he ③ -----.
- Marwa** : Oh ④ -----! What did he do?
- Fatma** : He asked an engineer to repair it.
- Marwa** : Does it work well now?
- Fatma** : Yes, it does.
- Marwa** : ⑤ -----!

10- Ramy and Rahma are talking about Ramy's last holiday.

Ramy : I went to Alexandria last week.

Rahma : ①

Ramy : When we arrived, it was raining.

Rahma : ②

Ramy : We didn't want to swim in the sea.

Rahma : ③ a pity!

Ramy : Then the rain stopped and we went on a boat trip.

Rahma : ④

Ramy : I bought this ⑤ for you.

Rahma : That's interesting!

11- A customer is at a restaurant.

Customer : Can I get a menu, please?

Waiter : Sure, Here you are. What would you like?

Customer : ① a chicken pizza, please.

Waiter : OK! ②

Customer : Yes, please. Have you got any drinks?

Waiter : Yes. We've got orange juice. Is that ③

Customer : Yes, please. How ④ does it cost?

Waiter : That's 80 ⑤

Customer : Here you are. Thank you.

Waiter : You're welcome.

السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان

SB & WB Exercises

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adam is sending messages to his grandfather now.

- a** test **b** text **c** selfie **d** icon

2. There are three laptop in the classroom.

- a** players **b** videos **c** computers **d** phones

3. Ziad has got a phone.

- a** mobile **b** mouse **c** icon **d** chair

4. You should keep your _____ secret when you use technology.
a nature **b** password **c** break **d** advice
5. The _____ is very high and there's lots of water in it.
a beach **b** cave **c** lake **d** waterfall
6. On a _____ weekend, I visit my grandmother.
a typical **b** careful **c** helpful **d** famous
7. For homework, we often read books from the _____.
a street **b** house **c** playground **d** library
8. All the children in our school go to the _____ when the head teacher wants to talk to us.
a cave **b** hall **c** house **d** zoo
9. The canoe _____ the students to school and home again every day.
a takes **b** gives **c** drives **d** rides
10. It is _____ to cycle to school.
a bad **b** healthy **c** unhealthy **d** harmful
11. Camels are very _____. They can carry 200 kilos of bags.
a weak **b** low **c** strong **d** poor
12. The woman in the picture has got long _____ hair.
a street **b** star **c** straight **d** small
13. After I _____ my homework, I like reading a book.
a make **b** go **c** score **d** do
14. A _____ person is happy to do something dangerous.
a sensible **b** brave **c** busy **d** scary
15. A/An _____ person knows a lot.
a clever **b** scary **c** sensible **d** angry
16. I like swimming in the pool _____ it is nice and cool.
a but **b** before **c** because **d** ago
17. There is a mouse _____ the laptop on the teacher's desk.
a there **b** near **c** between **d** far
18. _____ the icon on your mobile phone.
a Type **b** Call **c** Tap **d** Tie
19. _____ at the website and find information.
a Look **b** Tap **c** Click **d** Use
20. What is the name of Ali's _____ and how old is he?
a grandmother **b** grandfather **c** sister **d** daughter
21. My mum is a teacher. Dad is a teacher, _____.
a to **b** two **c** too **d** tie
22. Our grandmother is 64 and she's _____ Huda.
a cooled **b** sailed **c** called **d** killed

23. _____ are animals that are like sheep.
a Dinosaurs **b** Goats **c** Parrots **d** Monkeys
24. A/An _____ is a room at the top of a house.
a stair **b** hall **c** kitchen **d** attic
25. You can learn a lot about rice pudding recipes _____.
a online **b** line **c** fine **d** outline
26. We should look _____ our teeth.
a for **b** after **c** from **d** to
27. The name "tagine" comes from the _____ pot for this food.
a playing **b** cooking **c** writing **d** swimming
28. Your _____ is your mum or dad's sister.
a uncle **b** grandmother **c** grandfather **d** aunt
29. Your brother is your parent's _____.
a daughter **b** sister **c** uncle **d** son
30. Heidi is a story of a/an _____ girl. She had no mother or father.
a happy **b** careful **c** cheerful **d** orphan
31. A _____ is a place with lots of houses and shops.
a mountain **b** forest **c** city **d** desert
32. Habiba is a top _____. She wants to go to the Olympics.
a gymnast **b** viewer **c** teacher **d** worker
33. Athletes work hard to _____ their studies, their sport and their friends and family.
a break **b** answer **c** practise **d** balance
34. You can find a lot of books in a _____.
a hospital **b** cinema **c** playground **d** library
35. The trains are slow but buses are _____.
a quick **b** busy **c** late **d** early
36. A plane is very _____. It can go at 900 km/h.
a tall **b** weak **c** slow **d** fast
37. A baby bird is very _____. It cannot fly for many days.
a poor **b** weak **c** strong **d** tall
38. How _____ is the Cairo Tower? - It is 187 metres.
a long **b** strong **c** tall **d** fast
39. My aunt is very _____. She always gives me presents.
a kind **b** poor **c** unkind **d** weak
40. A _____ is a very big room for a lot of students and teachers.
a hall **b** hole **c** hill **d** wall
41. In a school, students play games in a _____.
a playground **b** theatre **c** museum **d** library
42. A: What _____ have we got next?
 B: It is Computer Studies next.
a grade **b** timetable **c** school **d** subject

43. What's your _____ subject?
a favourite **b** favour **c** fat **d** heavy
44. Mohamed Salah _____ a lot of goals.
a records **b** plays **c** scores **d** gives
45. A/An _____ person makes good decisions.
a safe **b** sensible **c** strange **d** exciting
46. The strange _____ of that man frightened me.
a appear **b** kindness **c** fun **d** appearance
47. A _____ person is always doing something.
a frightened **b** scary **c** busy **d** free
48. Osama likes playing football, basketball _____ tennis.
a but **b** and **c** so **d** because
49. We often get _____ when we are unhappy about something.
a angry **b** hungry **c** scary **d** clever
50. A: How tall is Mohamed Salah?
 B: He is 1.75 _____ tall.
a kilometres **b** kilograms **c** centimetres **d** metres
51. Salah gives money to help people _____ schools and hospitals.
a to build **b** to building **c** building **d** built
52. I can't pick up that box. My arms are _____.
a weak **b** strong **c** tall **d** friendly
53. Ziad has got a new MP3 _____.
a teacher **b** listener **c** player **d** printer
54. The whiteboard is _____ the teacher's desk.
a between **b** behind **c** with **d** inside
55. A _____ is what you can see from a place.
a view **b** picture **c** message **d** flat
56. A _____ is a big, strong building from the past.
a flat **b** house **c** castle **d** restaurant
57. Ali plays a lot of _____, for example: tennis and football.
a colours **b** languages **c** sports **d** photos
58. Computers and mobile phones are examples of _____.
a technology **b** passwords **c** nature **d** video games
59. To _____ is to sleep for a time in a tent.
a buy **b** camp **c** visit **d** ride
60. A _____ is a place to stay for a holiday.
a library **b** restaurant **c** castle **d** holiday flat
61. The _____ is a friendly sea animal.
a dolphin **b** shark **c** lion **d** tiger
62. The boy is _____ a kite in the park.
a turning **b** boiling **c** flying **d** adding

63. It's important to stay _____ online.

a safe

b worried

c colourful

d save

64. A/An _____ is something you do not want to tell people.

a nature

b break

c secret

d insect

SB & WB Exercises

Grammar

1. What did you _____ on Saturday evening?

a did

b do

c does

d doing

2. What did your mother _____ at the market?

a buy

b bought

c buying

d buys

3. _____ you go to Alexandria? Yes, I did.

a Do

b Did

c Does

d Is

4. _____ there any hummus?

a Is

b Are

c Were

d Am

5. There are _____ raisins in the fridge.

a much

b a

c any

d some

6. Throw the ball to _____ please. I am waiting.

a I

b mine

c my

d me

7. It is _____ very hot in the summer.

a never

b not

c hardly

d usually

8. We _____ go to the beach in winter. It's too cold there.

a never

b always

c usually

d sometimes

9. Mohamed Salah _____ score lots of goals.

a has

b do

c can

d have

10. I quite like _____ sport. My favourite sport is tennis.

a to doing

b does

c doing

d do

11. There are _____ of flowers and insects in the park.

a much

b lot

c a lots

d lots

12. There is not _____ rain for orange trees to grow in the desert.

a too much

b too many

c enough

d a lot of

13. We _____ eat too many crisps.

a should

b doesn't

c must

d shouldn't

14. We _____ drink too much fruit juice.

a should

b shouldn't

c can

d not

15. You _____ always clean your teeth before you go to bed.

a should

b mustn't

c shouldn't

d can't

16. I _____ the drums.

- a** play **b** playing **c** is playing **d** plays

17. I _____ listen to music.

- a** aren't **b** doesn't **c** don't **d** isn't

18. That is not the children's notebook. It is the _____.

- a** teacher **b** teachers **c** teacher's **d** teachers's

19. The _____ names are Mena and Soha.

- a** girl's **b** girls **c** girl **d** girls'

20. This is the _____ room. They always have rest there.

- a** teacher **b** teachers **c** teacher's **d** teachers'

21. _____ there any cheese?

- a** Are **b** Were **c** Does **d** Is

22. Crisps have too _____ salt and fat.

- a** any **b** much **c** some **d** many

23. We _____ drink a glass of milk every day.

- a** can't **b** couldn't **c** should **d** shouldn't

24. We _____ have drinks with a lot of sugar.

- a** shouldn't **b** should **c** must **d** have to

25. It's her car. _____ often drives it.

- a** Her **b** She **c** Hers **d** Mine

26. These are the _____ football shirts. They will wear them tomorrow.

- a** boy's **b** boys' **c** boys's **d** boy

27. That is not Mr Abdelaziz's ball. It is the _____ ball.

- a** children **b** childrens' **c** children's **d** childs'

28. Samir _____ got short hair.

- a** is **b** has **c** have **d** was

29. I _____ got glasses.

- a** haven't **b** has **c** hasn't **d** don't

30. Has your friend _____ straight hair?

- a** get **b** getting **c** to get **d** got

31. She's _____ you a photo now.

- a** send **b** sends **c** sent **d** sending

32. A: Is there _____ teacher?

B: No, there isn't.

- a** any **b** a **c** an **d** some

33. Look! My grandma _____ a book.

- a** read **b** is reading **c** have read **d** will read

34. They _____ at websites for information.
a 's looking **b** 's looked **c** 're looking **d** looking
35. I don't like these cakes because they have _____ sugar in them.
a too much **b** too many **c** enough **d** a lot
36. Salah likes _____ video games when he is at home.
a play **b** playing **c** plays **d** to playing
37. _____ the message icon to send a text message.
a Don't tap **b** Tapping **c** To tap **d** Tap
38. _____ friends with people you don't know to keep safe online.
a Don't make **b** Make **c** Makes **d** To make
39. The beach _____ far from Sayed's home.
a was **b** were **c** are **d** weren't
40. Did you _____ on holiday last year?
a went **b** goes **c** go **d** going
41. Lama feels ill. She _____ see a doctor.
a can't **b** shouldn't **c** should **d** mustn't

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

SB & WB Exercises

Grammar

Read and correct the underlined words

- Do he play football on Mondays? (_____)
- I'm not good at run. I'm very slow. (_____)
- We can giving money to help poor people. (_____)
- She's my mum. I'm hers son. (_____)
- Tell me about yours family. (_____)
- Don't tell a parent or a teacher if you are worried about something. (_____)
- Does you play chess? (_____)
- She don't go swimming. (_____)
- Can me have my pen, please? (_____)
- This is Alis phone. It's new. (_____)
- These are my sisters shoes. Her name is Huda. (_____)
- Ali is a kind man. He is never good to poor people. (_____)
- Tarek's uncle has got a beard, but he has got a moustache. (_____)

14. Have you got dark hair? Yes, I do. (-----)
15. All my brothers and sisters have get dark curly hair. (-----)
16. To put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag. (-----)
17. Taking out the tea bag. (-----)
18. My brother and I don't like watch TV after school. (-----)
19. There are an MP3 player behind the laptop. (-----)
20. Hello! Adel. What are people in your family do? (-----)
21. Are the students in your class work? (-----)

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

1- My hobbies

2- A person in my family

3- My best friend

4- My usual work



5- My day

6- My journey to school

7- What I usually do at the weekend

8- What do I do every day?

9- A blog post about myself

10- A blog post about a friend

11- My favourite book

12- How to stay safe online

13- My last weekend

14- What did I do last summer?

15- A healthy meal

16- A meal I remember.



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Shorouk goes to school

a alone

b with Lubna only

c with her mother

d with Lubna and Alaa

2. Shorouk is in stage.

a nursery

b preparatory

c secondary

d university

3. Shorouk's parents work in

a the same place

b different places

c the same school

d a factory

4. work in a hospital.

a Alaa's parents

b Lubna's parents

c Shorouk's parents

d No parents

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

(Nessma and Reem go to the school library)

Reem : Good morning, Nessma, when will we start doing our research?

Nessma : During the break.

Reem : Great. Where ①

Nessma : In the school library.

Reem : Are ②

Nessma : Of course, I'm ready.

Reem : Is it easy to find the books we need?

Nessma : ③

Reem : Who will help us there?

Nessma : ④

Reem : I hope ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions.

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

1- What are Mona's favourite subjects?

2- Why does she want to speak English?

3- Is Mona right to use technology? Why?

4- The underlined word it refers to

- ☐ a Cairo ☐ b technology ☐ c a river ☐ d summer school

5- Where is Mona now?

- ☐ a In Egypt ☐ b In England ☐ c In Uganda ☐ d In England

6- What does Mona use to practise her English?

- ☐ a Her tablet ☐ b Her phone ☐ c Her laptop ☐ d a and b

7- Mona is talking about her

- ☐ a pets and hobbies ☐ b life and friends
☐ c boss at work ☐ d travels to Ughanda

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are too people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.

- ☐ a many ☐ b much ☐ c enough ☐ d few

2. My uncle is very He chooses things wisely.

- ☐ a strong ☐ b tall ☐ c fast ☐ d sensible

3. I love sports. is my favourite school subject.

- ☐ a PE ☐ b Maths
☐ a Computer studies ☐ b Art

End of Term Practice

4. The Egyptian football team arrived Uganda two days ago.
a in **b** at **c** for **d** from
5. On a weekend, Omar reads books at the club library.
a tropical **b** physical **c** spicy **d** typical
6. Ahmed likes history because he loves about the past.
a learns **b** to learning **c** learning **d** learnt
7. My father and mother are my
a grandchildren **b** parents **c** cousins **d** daughters
8. The tourists are a selfie next to the River Nile.
a touching **b** drawing **c** relaxing **d** taking
9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online
a 3D printer **b** diary **c** mouse **d** laptop
10. Why don't we swimming next week?
a go **b** do **c** make **d** see

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....)
2. There are too much salt in this recipe. (.....)
3. Amr shouldn't drink too many fruit juice. (.....)
4. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (.....)

Writing

6 Write an email of 80 words about a typical day in your life.

Final Exams

امتحانات على منهج الفصل الدراسي الأول من الإدارات

المختلفة بالمحافظات 2022

Exam

1

القاهرة - ادارة الشروق



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Asem lives with his

- a** uncle **b** father **c** parents **d** grandfather

2. Asem's grandfather is a/an

- a** farmer **b** doctor **c** child **d** engineer

3. Asem his grandfather.

- a** takes **b** teaches **c** helps **d** learns

4. Asem's grandfather

- a** teaches English **b** grows plants **c** builds roads **d** helps sick people

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama is asking Hana about her family.

Sama : Hello, Hana.

Hana : Hello, Sama.

Sama : What is your grandmother called?

Hana : She is ① Fatma.

Sama : How old ② ?

Hana : She is 55.

Sama : Does she cook well?

Hana : Yes, ③

Sama : Where ④ ?

Hana : She lives ⑤ Cairo.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mustafa. I am 23 years old. I am an engineer. My hobbies are listening to music and watching television. When I am free, I often listen to my favourite songs. At weekends, I usually go to music shops to buy good CDs. I always feel tired after a day's work. So, I usually listen to music in order to forget all worries of work. Also, listening to music will help me become relaxed and more comfortable before starting my work. I also spend an hour after dinner watching news and programs. I enjoy the program "The World Here and There" because it makes me know more about nature.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What are Mustafa's favourite hobbies?

2. Where does Mustafa buy good CDs?

3. What do you think of music?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Listening to music makes Mustafa -----.

- a** worried **b** sad **c** angry **d** relaxed

5. Mustafa spends ----- minutes after dinner watching news and programs.

- a** 15 **b** 30 **c** 60 **d** 45

6. Mustafa works as a/an -----.

- a** doctor **b** engineer **c** farmer **d** teacher

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Her dream is to go to the ----- . She is a gymnast.

- a** Physics **b** Olympics **c** Mathematics **d** Gymnastics

2. Samar wants to join the school music ----- .

- a** band **b** pond **c** hole **d** dream

3. I want a full _____ of the flat before buying it.
 a study b description c answer d training
4. Last week, I had a lot of _____ in Dream Park.
 a adventures b stories c animals d mountains
5. Egypt is the most important _____ in Africa.
 a village b countryside c city d country
6. The classroom is _____. There are 80 students.
 a free b great c busy d balanced
7. Athletes work hard to _____ their studies, work and their families.
 a practise b balance c research d volunteer
8. What do you think _____ Mazen?
 a of b to c by d off
9. There weren't _____ cars in the desert.
 a some b no c any d a lot
10. A: Where did Younis _____ on holiday? B: To Jordan.
 a went b going c goes d go

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does she like watch TV? (.....)
2. A: Is there a mouse? B: Yes, there are. (.....)
3. Last summer, my family have a fantastic holiday. (.....)
4. We play games with the children and read they stories. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your visit to the Pyramids"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When do Hatem and Mazen help in the hospital? On
 a Saturdays b Sundays c Mondays d Tuesdays
2. Who likes playing football?
 a Hatem b Mazen c Both of them d Their sister
3. What do Hatem and Mazen play together?
 a Drums b Music c Football d Chess
4. Who are Hatem and Mazen?
 a Sisters b Twins c Friends d Fathers

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hany and his teacher are talking about hobbies.

Teacher : What are you doing?

Hany : I'm ① a story.

Teacher : What kind of stories do you like?

Hany : I like ②

Teacher : Do you need any help?

Hany : Yes, please. ③ can I borrow some more stories?

Teacher : At the library, on the second floor.

Hany : Thanks a lot.

Teacher : ④ you got other hobbies?

Hany : ⑤ , I like swimming ,too.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Health is one of the most important things in our life. Everyone wants to keep healthy but some people think it is too hard because they are too busy. There are some easy things you should do to keep healthy. You should drink water instead of fizzy drinks. Fizzy drinks taste good but they have much sugar. Eating too much sugar will make you gain weight. If you are eating a snack or a meal, you should drink a lot of water. You should avoid eating too much food. Too much food means much weight but less health. You should also exercise because exercising will help you not get sick or feel tired. If you don't have time to do sports, you can walk up the stairs and move around.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Should we drink fizzy drinks or water?

2. Why is it hard for some people to keep healthy?

3. What should you do if you don't have time to do sports?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "they" refers to -----

- a sports b stairs c fizzy drinks d meals

5. Too much sugar will make you -----

- a fat b thin c healthy d important

6. Doing exercise will help you to be -----

- a weak b strong c sick d tired

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students can play games in the -----

- a library b bell c playground d corridor

2. ----- is a difficult sport, but it makes your body strong.

- a Gymnastics b Physics c Mathematics d Gymnast

3. They never their pencil cases or notebooks.
☐ a say ☐ b help ☐ c forget ☐ d listen
4. A is a big, strong building from the past.
☐ a souvenir ☐ b view ☐ c camp ☐ d castle
5. My grandpa gives money to build schools because he is
☐ a kind ☐ b unkind ☐ c scary ☐ d unfriendly
6. A lot of people are fond of selfies.
☐ a clicking ☐ b tapping ☐ c taking ☐ d buying
7. The is very high, there's lots of water in it.
☐ a mountain ☐ b jungle ☐ c desert ☐ d waterfall
8. You shouldn't eat crisps.
☐ a too many ☐ b too much ☐ c little ☐ d some
9. Last summer, my family a fantastic holiday in Paris.
☐ a have ☐ b had ☐ c has ☐ d is having
10. First, some water in the kettle.
☐ a putting ☐ b is putting ☐ c puts ☐ d put

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My sister has got long hair or glasses. (.....)
2. Those are the children toys. (.....)
3. She gets up at half to six in the morning. (.....)
4. Mr Ali never fly, he travels by train. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A wonderful holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam

3

القليوبية - ادارة طوخ



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where did they go? To

a Siwa

b Cairo

c Tanta

d Luxor

2. They in the lake.

a sailed

b fished

c swam

d ate

3. They saw and slept in a tent.

a cats

b dogs

c cows

d camels

4. It was a holiday.

a favourite

b bad

c happy

d sad

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hany is asking Usama about his family.

Hany : Where do you live, Usama?

Usama : I ① in Cairo.

Hany : ② you got a brother or a sister?

Usama : I have got one brother.

Hany : What is his name?

Usama : ③ name is Ali.

Hany : ④ is your hobby?

Usama : I like ⑤

Hany : Goodbye, Usama.

Usama : Goodbye.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use it every day. We can send messages, do researches and play games, but to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What should you do when you are worried about something?

2. What is the main idea of the passage?

3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. You should keep your _____ secret.

a text

b email

c postcard

d password

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to _____.

a telephone

b instruction

c technology

d call

6. The underlined word "parent" means _____.

a mum or dad

b uncle

c teacher

d mum's sister

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our parents are proud _____ us.

a at

b of

c on

d to

2. Egypt is a big _____ in Africa.

a city

b cave

c village

d country

3. Salma is a video call now.
 a making b doing c delivering d eating
4. I don't to music.
 a listens b listen c listening d listened
5. He shopping every week.
 a goes b go c going d gone
6. is the subject of how to learn numbers.
 a Drama b Arabic c Maths d English
7. On a weekend, I visited my grandmother.
 a physical b typical c musical d national
8. A: What does school start ? B: At 8 a.m.
 a school b class c lesson d time
9. Breakfast , lunch and are meals.
 a dinner b language c petrol d reading
10. A: tablet is it ? B: It's mine.
 a What b Whose c When d Why

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Can you give me you pen, please? (.....)
2. I play always the drums. (.....)
3. They has got pencils. (.....)
4. She likes eat fish. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A day in your life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I go to school

a by bike

b by car

c on foot

d by bus

2. We have in the playground.

a lessons

b break

c school

d friends

3. The lessons are in the

a break

b playground

c classroom

d house

4. I to my friends at break.

a study

b take

c talk

d draw

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Wael is playing chess online.

Basel : What are you doing, Wael?

Wael : I'm playing chess online.

Basel : Who are you **1** with?

Wael : I'm playing with John.

Basel : John? **2** is he?

Wael : He is my English friend.

Basel : Do you always play chess with **3** ?

Wael : Not often. I have many friends online.

Basel : **4** you also chat with your online friends?

Wael : Yes, we always chat **5** Facebook.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I live in Aswan with my family. My parents are teachers. My brother Ali plays football at school and he watches football matches on

TV. Khaled goes swimming every Friday. There's a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is Aya. We play basketball at school and we're **both** in the school team. Our team is very good!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Lamia?

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

3. How many people are there in Lamia's family?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The swimming pool isn't -----.

a near their house

b far from their house

c by their house

d beside their house

5. The underlined word "both" refers to -----.

a Lamia's parents

b Aya and Khaled

c Khaled and Ali

d Lamia and Aya

6. I think Lamia's family is -----.

a sad

b happy

c boring

d bad

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma ----- a story yesterday.

a wrote

b writes

c writing

d write

2. You ----- make noise in the school library.

a should

b should have

c shouldn't

d shouldn't have

3. There are ----- classrooms in our school.

a much

b too many

c too much

d a lot

4. A/An ----- is a room at the top of a house.

a pick

b attic

c kitchen

d library

5. A baby bird is very ----- . It can't fly.

a poor

b weak

c strong

d fit

6. You can find a lot of books at the
 a hospital b library c playground d hall
7. is not a cooking verb.
 a Pudding b Boil c Stir d Add
8. Meat is the main of tagine in Morocco.
 a ingredient b subject c sport d place
9. Mohamed Salah a lot of goals.
 a records b plays c scores d gives
10. Computers and mobile phones are examples of
 a sports b video games c technology d nature

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That car belongs to Mr Ali. It's him. (.....)
2. She don't go swimming on Fridays. (.....)
3. When I was eight, we go to Siwa. (.....)
4. Amira does never her homework after dinner. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite sport"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam

5

الغربية - ادارة زفتى



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amira is years old.

a 13

b 14

c 12

d 15

2. She is from

a Cairo

b Hurghada

c Luxor

d Giza

3. Amira is in one at school.

a kindergarten

b primary

c secondary

d preparatory

4. She likes best.

a English

b maths

c science

d maths and science

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rana and Hana are talking about going to school.

Hana : Hi, Rana.

Rana : Hi, Hana. How do you go to school, Hana?

Hana : My dad ① me to school every day, and you?

Rana : I usually go to school by ②

Hana : ③ do you usually go by bus?

Rana : Because my school is ④ away.

Hana : How long does it ⑤ to go to school?

Rana : It takes about 30 minutes.

Hana : Which is better to go to school in a car or on the bus?

Rana : Of course in a car.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Alice in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was strange but an interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. **She** met the White Rabbit that was always late and ran fast. The Cheshire Cat was a funny animal

which helped Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person and she shouted at people but Alice wasn't frightened of her. At the end of the story, all the characters helped Alice to go home again.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does this passage talk about?

2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice?

3. Do you think Alice was brave? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The worst character is -----.

a Alice

b the Cheshire Cat

c The Queen of Hearts

d the King

5. Alice met a lot of interesting ----- in Wonderland.

a characters

b kings

c places

d blog posts

6. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to -----

a the Queen

b Alice

c the Cat

d the Rabbit

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ----- Mona and Heba are my cousins.

a Both

b Each

c All

d Two

2. ----- is a difficult sport.

a Mathematics

b Athletics

c Geography

d Home Economics

3. This is ----- phone. It's new.

a Ali

b Alis

c Ali's

d Alis'

4. ----- means when you feel unhappy.

a Lonely

b Alone

c Together

d Solo

5. What we wear on our heads are called
a fans **b** vans **c** pans **d** hats
6. Tell your parents or a teacher if you are frightened something on the internet.
a in **b** of **c** about **d** to
7. Yunis doesn't like watching TV because he thinks it's
a interesting **b** exciting **c** beautiful **d** boring
8. A is a photo you take of yourself.
a door **b** printer **c** selfie **d** castle
9. Salwa a story yesterday.
a read **b** rode **c** reads **d** is reading
10. There any tablets.
a is **b** are **c** isn't **d** aren't

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She is still do her homework. (.....)
2. Went to the ticket office, please. (.....)
3. My sister has a baby girl yesterday. (.....)
4. Where are you come from? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam

6

البحيرة - ادارة بندر دمنهور



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How old is Mona?

a Fifteen

b Sixteen

c Seventeen

d Eighteen

2. What does she play?

a Basketball

b Tennis

c Volleyball

d Football

3. How long does she train every day?

a Two hours

b Four hours

c Three hours

d Five hours

4. Where does she live?

a In a village

b In a town

c In a club

d In a city

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada is talking to Judy about her friend.

Nada : I have a friend from England.

Judy : Really! What's her ①

Nada : She is called Katy. She is very beautiful.

Judy : How do you see her?

Nada : We make ② calls.

Judy : What does she look ③

Nada : She is tall with ④

Judy : Do you have the ⑤ hobbies?

Nada : Yes, we both like reading and swimming.

Judy : That's great.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A school is a place where students learn from teachers and from each other. We can find schools everywhere in the world. A school can be a large building or a small room. It can also be in the open air like in some places in India. Most students there

live in villages so they study in the fields and under trees. In some countries in Europe like Holland, there are schools on boats. Students study a lot of subjects at school like science, maths and computer studies. Students also use different forms of transport to get to their schools. They may walk, cycle or go by car or bus.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where can we find schools on boats?

2. What does the underlined word "It" refer to?

3. Do you like to go to a school in the open air? Why? Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. When you cycle to school, you go by -----.

- a** car **b** train **c** taxi **d** bike

5. At school, students learn from their teachers and from their -----.

- a** classmates **b** sisters **c** brothers **d** parents

6. Science is a school -----.

- a** building **b** place **c** subject **d** transport

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should ----- on this icon to send the email.

- a** tip **b** top **c** tape **d** tap

2. She couldn't sleep because she watched a ----- film.

- a** scary **b** delicious **c** funny **d** sensible

3. We went on a holiday in the desert and slept in -----.

- a** rooms **b** tents **c** rocks **d** lakes

4. When the ground is covered with ice, we can go around on a -----.

- a** canoe **b** bus **c** bike **d** snowmobile

5. My hair isn't curly. It is -----.

- a** blonde **b** dark **c** straight **d** long

6. We stayed in a hotel that has a beautiful _____ of the city.
☐ a souvenir ☐ b queen ☐ c view ☐ d course
7. You can't work all the time. You need to _____ your life.
☐ a balance ☐ b achieve ☐ c make ☐ d do
8. When Hana was young, she _____ a camel.
☐ a ride ☐ b rides ☐ c riding ☐ d rode
9. Maha! _____ make noise. Your baby brother is sleeping.
☐ a Didn't ☐ b Doesn't ☐ c Don't ☐ d Can't
10. I won't eat this cake. There are _____ raisins in it.
☐ a many ☐ b much ☐ c one ☐ d a lot

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I can't find my book. I'll take my friend book. (_____)
2. There are enough people in the hall. It is very crowded. (_____)
3. Mona and I visited their grandparents. (_____)
4. He doesn't like football. He always plays it. (_____)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your last holiday"

Exam

7

المنوفية - ادارة شبين الكوم



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How old is Yara?

a 8

b 12

c 10

d 9

2. Where does she live?

a Giza

b Tanta

c Cairo

d Aswan

3. She lives with her

a uncles

b cousins

c family

d aunts

4. Yara's father is a

a nurse

b doctor

c farmer

d teacher

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Said and Omar are talking about their favourite hobbies.

Said : Hi Omar. ① your favourite hobby?

Omar : I like sports. I play football ② Friday.

Said : ③ do you play it?

Omar : In the club.

Said : Who do you play it with?

Omar : I play it with ④

Said : Do you have any other hobbies?

Omar : Yes, ⑤ reading.

Said : I like reading, too.

Omar : Reading is very interesting.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I am Ahmed and this is my picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in schools. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it is called a mouse. There is a printer, too. I have got a mobile phone in my bag. I don't use it in the class. We shouldn't use a mobile phone in the class. Mr.

Nasser has got a mobile phone on his desk. He is charging it with a phone charger. He has got a new MP3 player. It is small and blue. Can you see it?

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What has Ahmed got in his bag?

2. Where do we often use tablets?

3. Do you think we should use a mobile phone in the class?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the _____.

- ☐ a laptop ☐ b mouse ☐ c tablet ☐ d MP3 player

5. There are _____ laptop computers in the classroom.

- ☐ a three ☐ b two ☐ c four ☐ d five

6. The laptop has got a/an _____.

- ☐ a mouse ☐ b board ☐ c MP3 player ☐ d pencil

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ are animals that are like sheep.

- ☐ a Dinosaurs ☐ b Goats ☐ c Parrots ☐ d Cows

2. The _____ rings when a lesson starts and finishes.

- ☐ a bell ☐ b drum ☐ c telephone ☐ d ball

3. Mohammed Salah scores a lot of _____.

- ☐ a glasses ☐ b scarves ☐ c goals ☐ d goods

4. A _____ is used to make water hot.

- ☐ a key ☐ b cattle ☐ c kite ☐ d kettle

5. A _____ is a place to stay for a holiday.

- ☐ a holiday flat ☐ b library ☐ c castle ☐ d restaurant

6. When you do exercise and eat well, you become _____.

- ☐ a unhealthy ☐ b healthy ☐ c dirty ☐ d ugly

7. There isn't pollution in the country. It is clean.

- a** any **b** some **c** a **d** an

8. Heba learned how to cook in the lesson.

- a** music **b** art **c** home economics **d** Arabic

9. The ball is next the box.

- a** to **b** at **c** in **d** on

10. Has your brother long hair?

- a** get **b** gets **c** getting **d** got

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Don't eating when you use a computer. (.....)
2. This is Alis book. It is his. (.....)
3. He is read his English book now. (.....)
4. Where do you go last holiday? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A day on the beach"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker goes to school by
 a bike b car c train d bus
2. They have in the playground.
 a lesson b break c school d friends
3. The lessons are in the
 a break b house c playground d classroom
4. The speaker to his friends at break.
 a studies b talks c draws d takes

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manar and Nada are talking about a school subject.

Manar : Hi, Nada.

Nada : Hi, Manar.

Manar : What is your favourite subject?

Nada : My ① subject is English.

Manar : Who is our English ② this year?

Nada : Mr. Ayman.

Manar : When have we ③ English?

Nada : We have got English ④ Monday.

Manar : OK. ⑤ very much.

Nada : Goodbye.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian footballer. He was born in 1992. He plays for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner. He has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He

is 1.75 metres tall. He has got curly hair. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

2. When was Mohamed Salah born?

3. What do you think of Mohamed Salah?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "He" refers to -----.

a Mohamad Salah **b** football **c** Europe **d** Egypt

5. Mohamed Salah plays for -----.

a Japan **b** America **c** Egypt **d** Morocco

6. Mohamed Salah has got ----- hair .

a straight **b** white **c** blond **d** curly

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I use the ----- to recharge my mobile phone.

a earphones **b** tablet **c** charger **d** mouse

2. There isn't ----- meat in koshari.

a some **b** many **c** a lot **d** any

3. The ----- in the mountain was dark.

a waterfall **b** cave **c** lake **d** river

4. Your ----- is your aunt or uncle's child.

a cousin **b** son **c** grandfather **d** brother

5. Does your father ----- to work early every day?

a goes **b** going **c** gone **d** go

6. Students should follow school
 a rules b roles c rolls d rulers
7. It is important to keep your password
 a clear b secret c popular d known
8. I with my father in Alexandria last summer.
 a swam b swim c swims d am swimming
9. You can have a wonderful from your room window.
 a review b interview c view d preview
10. Our teacher is very He always gives us good advice.
 a stupid b boring c bad d sensible

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They write a letter now. (.....)
2. He reads never stories. (.....)
3. It is me book. It is mine. (.....)
4. We found Mona bag. (.....).

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam

9

دمياط - ادارة فرسكور



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who is Heidi?

- a An orphan girl. b A student. c A nurse. d A doctor.

2. Where does Heidi's grandfather live?

- a In the mountain. b In the city. c In the village. d In the town.

3. Where does Heidi sleep?

- a In the attic. b On the chair. c In the garden. d On the floor.

4. Who takes Heidi to the city?

- a Her mother. b Her uncle. c Her aunt. d Her cousin.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Eslam and Amir are talking about their favourite sports star.

Eslam : Good morning. How are you?

Amir : Good morning. I'm fine thanks.

Eslam : ① is your favourite sports star?

Amir : Mohamed Salah.

Eslam : What sport does he play?

Amir : He ② football.

Eslam : What does he ③ ?

Amir : He is thin and has got curly ④

Eslam : Does he ⑤ goals?

Amir : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I live in Aswan with my family. My parents are teachers. My brother Ali is 13 years old and Khaled is nine. I listen to music with my brothers. Ali plays football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled goes swimming every Friday. There's a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is Aya. We play basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. Our team is very good!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. Who is older, Lamia or Ali?

3. Do you think Lamia's family is happy? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The swimming pool isn't

a near their house

b far from their house

c by their house

d beside their house

5. The underlined word "both" refers to

a Lamia's parents

b Aya and Khaled

c Khaled and Ali

d Lamia and Aya

6. The underlined "near" is the opposite of

a cheap

b hard

c far

d easy

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father's sister is my

a uncle

b aunt

c cousin

d daughter

2. Nada got blond hair.

a has

b have

c having

d is

3. _____ there any boys in the garden?
 a Is b Are c Do d Does
4. Keep your password _____.
 a secret b popular c slow d famous
5. A _____ is a big strong building from the past.
 a souvenir b castle c desert d hotel
6. We can _____ with our tongues.
 a smell b taste c touch d see
7. She _____ to the cinema last week.
 a go b going c went d goes
8. How long does it _____ to fly to Luxor?
 a taking b took c takes d take
9. To _____ is to sleep for a time in a tent.
 a comb b camp c climb d clap
10. When we hear the _____, we go to the school hall.
 a radio b ball c bell d noise

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Has your friend got straight hair? No, she haven't. (_____)
2. The cat is very fast. It's tail is long. (_____)
3. First, putting some water in the kettle. (_____)
4. Ali is read his English book now. (_____)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite place"



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is Mohamed Salah?

a A sports star

b A teacher

c A driver

d A doctor

2. Which sport does Salah play?

a Volleyball

b Football

c Tennis

d Basketball

3. What is Mohamed Salah very good at?

a Playing tennis

b Watching TV

c Scoring goals

d Doing homework

4. What kind of hair does Salah have?

a Curly hair

b Blond hair

c Straight hair

d Long hair

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Anas is asking his friend Adam about his favourite subject.

Anas : Hello, Adam.

Adam : Hello, Anas.

Anas : What is your favourite subject?

Adam : My ① is English.

Anas : ② do you like it?

Adam : Because it is an interesting subject.

Anas : How often do you ③ it?

Adam : I study it three ④ a week.

Anas : Do you like music?

Adam : Yes, I ⑤ it very much.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last weekend, I took my family to have lunch in a big restaurant in Alexandria. It's a famous restaurant. The waiter brought us the menu. I ordered chicken with rice. My wife asked for meat balls with pasta. My son ordered fish with salad. My daughter wanted to eat meat with potatoes. At the end of the meal, I had to pay a lot of money. The food was delicious, but the prices weren't good enough. The weather was great. We walked to our home happily.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. Where is the restaurant?

3. Do you think that the writer enjoyed eating in the restaurant? Why/ Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The mother ordered meat balls with
☐ a pasta ☐ b rice ☐ c salad ☐ d potatoes
5. The writer had to pay money.
☐ a little ☐ b less ☐ c much ☐ d few
6. The word means to ask for food or a drink in a restaurant.
☐ a take ☐ b order ☐ c bring ☐ d pay

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The is very high and there's lots of water in it.
☐ a beach ☐ b cave ☐ c lake ☐ d waterfall
2. At break, I play games with my friends in the
☐ a hall ☐ b classroom ☐ c playground ☐ d office

3. Hani uses a to go to school because he can't walk.
☐ a pencil case ☐ b wheelchair ☐ c sharpener ☐ d pencil
4. My cousin is very good gymnastics.
☐ a in ☐ b of ☐ c at ☐ d about
5. The is a room at the top of the house.
☐ a charger ☐ b break ☐ c Mp3 player ☐ d attic
6. Computers and mobile phone are examples of
☐ a technology ☐ b nature ☐ c subjects ☐ d farming
7. The opposite of "happy" is
☐ a bad ☐ b sad ☐ c mad ☐ d dad
8. Mona go to school on Friday.
☐ a don't ☐ b isn't ☐ c hasn't ☐ d doesn't
9. Mustafa loves art at school.
☐ a doing ☐ b do ☐ c did ☐ d done
10. My brother has a laptop.
☐ a gets ☐ b getting ☐ c gets ☐ d got

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Boils the water. (.....)
2. He visit his friends yesterday. (.....)
3. Adel can't find him book. (.....)
4. What are you do now? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to stay safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 11

سوهاج - ادارة اضميم



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mum doesn't like

- a** watching sports **b** playing chess **c** eating pizza **d** driving cars

2. Dad likes

- a** English **b** Science **c** History **d** French

3. Nadia is years old.

- a** 51 **b** 50 **c** 5 **d** 15

4. Dad is always

- a** sad **b** happy **c** angry **d** busy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman and Ali are talking about Siwa.

Ayman : Hello, Ali.

Ali : Hello, Ayman.

Ayman : Did you go to Siwa?

Ali : Yes, I ①

Ayman : When did you go there?

Ali : When I ② 8 years old.

Ayman : What did you do there?

Ali : I ③ in the lake.

Ayman : Where did you ④ there?

Ali : I slept in a ⑤ in the desert.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ali and his family decided to go on holiday for a week. They went near the sea. They went to Hurghada where water was very calm and warm. They liked diving and swimming. They also enjoyed seeing the colourful fish. Ali's wife liked fishing on a boat. Ali's son liked to go diving and do water sports. At noon, all the family went to the

cinema then they went to a restaurant to have their dinner. At the end of their holiday, they went shopping and bought some lovely presents for their friends.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What activities can you enjoy in Hurghada?

2. Where did Ali's family go at noon?

3. Who liked to go diving?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to -----.

- ☐ a lovely presents ☐ b water sports ☐ c Ali's family ☐ d Ali's friends

5. Ali's wife liked -----.

- ☐ a fishing ☐ b riding horses ☐ c running ☐ d reading

6. They bought ----- for their friends.

- ☐ a books ☐ b presents ☐ c clothes ☐ d food

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Clap for the football players; ----- play very well.

- ☐ a their ☐ b they ☐ c them ☐ d theirs

2. My father is very busy ----- he plays sports every day.

- ☐ a but ☐ b and ☐ c because ☐ d so

3. My aunt is very ----- . She always gives me presents.

- ☐ a poor ☐ b angry ☐ c kind ☐ d strong

4. ----- the icon on your mobile phone.

- ☐ a Tap ☐ b Make ☐ c Write ☐ d Click

5. Last summer, my family ----- a fantastic holiday.

- ☐ a hasn't ☐ b have ☐ c has ☐ d had

6. Ali usually arrives school at 7:15.

- a** in **b** on **c** at **d** by

7. We go to school on Friday.

- a** always **b** never **c** often **d** sometimes

8. On a weekend. I visit my grandmother.

- a** type **b** free **c** typical **d** holiday

9. There is a phone charger to the printer.

- a** next **b** under **c** behind **d** between

10. Crisps have a lot of and salt.

- a** chocolate **b** fat **c** fruit **d** sugar

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should cleans your teeth in the morning. (.....)
2. There aren't enough milk to make hot chocolate. (.....)
3. My sister have got long hair. (.....)
4. Didn't walk on the grass. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Last holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Amal goes to school

a by bus

b by car

c on foot

d by taxi

2. Ola is than Amal.

a younger

b older

c smaller

d bigger

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- **Nasser** :

Mazin : I am reading a story.

2- **Waiter** : What would you like to drink?

You :

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. you listen to music?

a Are

b Do

c Does

d Have

2. My sister goes to a school.

a girls

b girl's

c girls'

d girl

3. It is very hot in the summer.

a never

b ever

c rarely

d usually

4. A brave person is happy to do something

a dangerous

b fun

c strange

d bad

5. Which of the following is not an ingredient?

a rice

b nuts

c raisins

d stir

6. My father and mother are my

a grandchildren

b parents

c cousins

d daughters

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to talk to tourists from other countries. My teacher is very good. I also like to use technology. It is very useful. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects?

.....

2. Why does she want to speak English?

.....

3. Is Mona right to use technology?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

a technology

b tablet

c subject

d computer

5. What does Mona use to practise her English?

a Her tablet

b Her phone

c Her laptop

d a and b

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How you stay safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Hazem plays _____ on Sunday.
 a basketball b football c chess d the drums
2. Hazem goes swimming on _____.
 a Saturday b Sunday c Monday d Friday

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Ali : _____ ?

Ahmed : My favourite subject is English.

2. **Mona** : Has your brother got blond hair?

Ola : _____

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. There _____ any tables in my classroom.
 a is b isn't c are d aren't
2. I'd love to go to the _____. I can swim in the sea.
 a desert b jungle c beach d forest
3. Where _____ your father work?
 a is b does c do d are
4. We _____ go to school on Fridays.
 a never b sometimes c always d often
5. The word "strong" is the opposite of _____.
 a kind b rich c slow d weak
6. Aya loves _____ art at school.
 a do b doing c does d did

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Good food is important for our health. Fruit is very healthy and delicious. We should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables don't have much sugar or fat. They are good for us, so we should eat a lot of them.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How many pieces of fruit should we eat every day?

.....

2. Do beans and vegetables have much sugar or fat?

.....

3. What is important for our health?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

4. The underlined word "them" refers to

a fruit

b beans and vegetables

c sugar

d fat

5. Fruit is very and delicious.

a healthy

b unhealthy

c bad

d poor

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite hobby"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Sami's works in Paris, France.

- a** brother **b** father **c** uncle **d** cousin

2. He stays there days a week.

- a** three **b** four **c** five **d** six

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Sara :

Aya : My favourite hobby is swimming.

2- Hadi : What does your father look like?

Fadi :

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Some people say hello by their hands.

- a** putting **b** leaving **c** making **d** waving

2. There is some salt, but there any crisps.

- a** isn't **b** aren't **c** wasn't **d** weren't

3. A successful footballer always talks to his

- a** fans **b** fins **c** fats **d** figs

4. At school, you talk to your friends at break.

- a** must **b** mustn't **c** can **d** can't

5. The sun comes up in the west.

- a** always **b** often **c** sometimes **d** never

6. Hani and Aly are They are brothers and aged 12.

- a** double **b** twins **c** couple **d** pairs

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Aya. I'm a student and this is a typical day for me. I go to school from Sunday to Thursday. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away, so I never walk. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. My school starts at 8:00 a.m. and finishes at 2:00 p.m. I have four lessons before the break and two lessons after it. The break is half an hour. During it, I usually talk with my friends, but sometimes I go to the library to read books. After school, I go home, have dinner, do my homework and watch TV with my brother. I usually go to bed at 9:00 p.m. I have a busy day.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the school day like?

.....

2. How many lessons does Aya have a day?

.....

3. Does Aya walk to school? Why? Why not?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. Aya goes to school days a week.

a four

b five

c six

d seven

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the

a school

b class

c break

d library

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite sports star"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Where does Mr Taha work?

a Port Said

b Tanta

c Minia

d Cario

2. What does he usually eat for lunch?

a meat

b fish

c chicken

d pizza

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. A :?

B : I use a laptop, but I don't use an MP3 player.

2. A : How do you travel to school?

B :

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. She has got blond

a eyes

b hair

c moustache

d beard

2. Are there computers in the classroom?

a any

b some

c much

d a

3. Ahmed doesn't basketball on Friday.

a plays

b is playing

c played

d play

4. We rode camels and in a tent in the desert.

a are sleeping

b sleep

c slept

d sleeps

5. He drink a lot of water.

a shouldn't

b has

c have

d should

6. They arrived Luxor two days ago.

a on

b in

c at

d for

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, I travelled to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I went to a language school in Cairo. I had a wonderful time. I was there for two weeks. Cairo's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I enjoyed the view from the top.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. When did the writer travel to Egypt?

2. How long did the writer stay there?

3. What did the writer buy?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

4. Cairo's shops are -----

a busy

b crowded

c enjoyable

d terrible

5. The view of the city was -----

a nice

b windy

c bad

d sad

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Modern Technology"



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Reem comes from

a Benha

b Giza

c Tanta

d Cairo

2. Reem isn't good at

a Maths

b Art

c English

d Science

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. **Mona** :

Farida : I have five lessons every day.

2. **Eman** : Do you like watching football matches?

Samira :

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. My best friend short dark hair.

a have got

b has got

c get

d is

2. A brave person is happy to do something

a fun

b strange

c dangerous

d bad

3. Maher voluntary work at hospital.

a does

b goes

c plays

d makes

4. She you a photo now.

a sends

b sending

c send

d is sending

5. Computers and mobile phones are examples of

a technology

b farming

c nature

d subjects

6. At break, I play with my friends in the

a bell

b classroom

c library

d playground

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Lamia. I'm 9 years old. I live in Aswan with my family. My parents are teachers. My brother Ali is 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Ali plays football at school and watches football matches on TV. Khaled goes swimming. My best friend is called Aya. We play basketball at school, and we are both in the school team.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How many brothers has Lamia got?

2. What is Lamia's father's job?

3. Who is Aya?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

4. Lamia and Aya like -----.

a football

b basketball

c music

d swimming

5. Lamia and ----- are twins.

a Khaled

b Aya

c Ali

d Khaled and Ali

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your holiday"

Paragraphs

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدات

Unit 1

1. My hobbies

Everyone should have a hobby. I have two different hobbies. I like sports and drawing pictures. I play football and basketball. I play football on Fridays. I play basketball on Mondays. I watch football matches on TV. I watch basketball matches in the club. Sports make my body strong. Playing sports helps me study well. In my free time, I draw pictures. I draw faces. I put them in my room. All my family like them.

2. A person in my family

I have a wonderful person in my family. It's my cousin Dina. She's a gymnast. She's 18 and lives in Cairo with her family. Dina has a very busy life. She goes to school and studies hard. In the evenings, she trains for five or six hours. She wants to go to the Olympics one day. Dina's family always helps her. They want her to achieve her goal. They are all proud of her. I hope I will be like her.

3. My best friend

I have got many friends. My best friend is Tamer. He is the same age as me. He lives in Cairo. He lives in the house next to mine. He plays football. It's his favourite hobby. We usually play football together. Tamer is clever at school. He likes maths and English. He doesn't like history. We usually go to school together. The school is near our house. We walk together to school. We always spend the weekend in the club.

4. My family (Azhar)

My name is Habib(a) and this is my family. This is my sister, her name is Radwa. She is

two years old and she's very beautiful. Nawal and Ayman are our parents. Our mother is a doctor and our father is a teacher.

5. My usual week

I usually get up at seven o'clock. I like sports. I play basketball on Tuesdays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Mondays and I play football on Sundays. I like watching football matches on TV on Saturdays. I really like music. I like listening to music. I play the drums in a band. I also like playing chess with my brother in the evenings. He usually wins. I sometimes do voluntary work. I like helping in the children's hospital. I play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!

Unit 2

1. My day / What I do every day (Azhar)

I always have a busy day. I do many things every day. I get up at quarter past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. I always walk to school. It always takes a short time to go there. When we hear the bell at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall. We have four lessons, then it is break. We have more four lessons. I go home at 3 o'clock. I have a shower then I do my homework. At 9 o'clock, I go to bed.

2. My journey to school

On school days, I get up at half past six. I have a shower, then I have my breakfast. I don't want to be late for school. I like to arrive before the bell rings. I always go to school by bus. It always takes a long time to go to school. The streets in my town are always busy. I always talk to my friends on the bus. It's a nice journey. I like it very much.

3. What I usually do at the weekend

I am a student at prep school. I always study my lessons well. I often study every day. I like to do my homework, too. I never study at the weekend, but sometimes I read a book! I often go shopping with my mum. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. I usually meet my friends there. We always have a nice time there. This helps me study my lessons well again.

Unit 3

1. My favourite sports star

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is Egyptian. He plays football very well. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. It's an English team. It's called "Liverpool". He plays for Egypt, too. He's a fast runner. He has got curly hair and a beard. He is not very tall. He scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He gives money to poor people. He's very friendly. He always talks to his fans. He likes playing video games.

2. A blog post about myself

Hi! My name is Ayman. I've got long, curly hair. I live in Suez with my mum, dad and two sisters. I'm in prep one. I go to school on the school bus. All my teachers like me. I like them, too. My favourite subjects are science and art. I don't like maths. I'm not good at numbers. I often play sports after school. My favourite sport is karate. At home, I like reading and watching TV.

3. A character in a book or film

I love reading books by Charles Dickens. My favourite book is "Oliver Twist". It's about a boy who is poor and weak. He is an orphan boy. His mother dies when he is a baby. He lives nine years with a bad woman. He eats very little. He works hard. Thieves take him. They want him to steal. Oliver is a brave boy. He leaves the thieves and lives with

a good man. In the end, he lives a happy life. I like him because he is a sensible boy.

4. A blog post about a friend

Hi! I'd like to talk about my friend, Ziad. He lives in Tanta. He lives with his family in a big house. His father is a doctor. His mother is a teacher. The family has a big car. His father always drives him to school. He is very clever at school. He always comes first in exams. He has many friends. All his friends and teachers like him. Ziad is my best friend.

5. A person in my family "My grandfather" (Azhar)

My grandfather is called Tawfeek. I like him very much because he is very kind and friendly. He always talks to me and gives me useful advice. He is tall and he has got a long white beard and a moustache. He has got a farm and he worked hard when he was young.

6. My favourite book

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a children's story. Alice's adventure begins when she goes to Wonderland. Wonderland is a strange place. She is a sensible, brave girl. She meets a lot of interesting characters. Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person. She is always angry and she shouts at people. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again. I like that book because it is really interesting.

Unit 4

1. My classroom

I go to a prep school in our village. I have a big classroom. It is on the second floor in my school. There are about forty eight students in my class. I have so many classmates. They like me and we all play together. We have so many things

in the class. We have three computers in the classroom. Also, we have two tablets to help us study English and maths. I like my classroom because it is always clean and our teachers are so friendly.

2. Which do I like more, nature or technology?

I like nature. I enjoy going outside and looking at trees, flowers and rivers. I also like taking photos of those all. When it's fine, I spend much time at parks. I always go there with my friends. They're all use mobile phones. They like technology. They use social media all the time. I don't like that. Technology is useful, but I don't like it. I like nature more.

3. How to stay safe online

Most of us like technology! We like to go online. Sometimes we make friends online. We like playing games with our online friends. We should always try to stay safe online. We should never make friends with people we don't know. We should keep our passwords secret. We shouldn't send photos to people we don't know. We shouldn't tell anyone our personal information. We should tell our parents or teachers if we are worried about something. We shouldn't answer phone calls from anyone we don't know.

4. Nature (Azhar)

I love nature. I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break when it's very hot or cold! I've got a mobile phone and I take photos of flowers.

5. Technology in your classroom

Most schools use technology. My school uses technology, too. My classroom has got many important things. They are very useful. We often use tablets in our

classroom. There are two laptops on our teacher's desk. There's a printer, too. All students have got mobile phones. They are in their bags. We don't use mobile phones in the classroom. Our teacher's got an MP3 player. It's small and blue. He has got a mobile phone on his desk. He has got a phone charger, too.

Unit 5

1. My last weekend

I always remember my last weekend. It was fun. We went to Hurghada. The weather was nice. We enjoyed the beautiful beach. We stayed in a holiday flat by the beach. We had a wonderful view from the windows. I saw dolphins in the sea. We swam every day. We visited famous places. I bought many souvenirs for my friends. We made sandcastles on the beach. We ate delicious food there. I want to go there again.

2. What did I do last summer?

Last summer, I went to Sharm El Sheikh. I went there with my family. We went there because the weather was wonderful and the beaches were very interesting. I spent all the day on the beach making sandcastles and swam in the sea. I camped next to a big mountain and saw its caves at night. We went shopping every day. I bought nice souvenirs to my friends. Really, the place was attractive and everyone enjoyed the visit.

3. A visit to Paris

I visited Paris with my family last year. We had a wonderful time. It's a great city for a holiday. There was so much to see and do. I ate many kinds of food. It was delicious. We visited the Eiffel Tower. From the top we had a view of the city. We went on a boat on the river Seine. We had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We saw the art at the Louvre. We bought souvenirs for our friends. It was a fantastic holiday.

4. A journey I went on (Azhar)

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train. The train left Cairo at 10 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile where there were lots of boats.

5. A day on the beach

We went to the beach last weekend. When we arrived there, it was very windy and the sea was high. Then the wind stopped. The sea became calm. We swam in the wonderful water. We sat on the beach. We ate sandwiches. We drank juice. We made sandcastles. We flew kites. We played interesting games. We went fishing in a boat. There were many kinds of fish. We saw dolphins. It was a wonderful day.

Unit 6

1. The food I like in my kitchen

I like to have many kinds of foods in my kitchen. I like meat, chicken, rice, vegetables. I like to have healthy food at home. We all should have little salt and sugar in our food, too much salt is not healthy for us. That's why I don't like crisps. Also I like to have fresh fruit in my kitchen. Doctors say that fruit and juice with little sugar are very healthy.

2. My favourite meal "Koshari"

We have many kinds of foods in Egypt, but I like Koshari the most. It is my favourite meal as it is easy to make and delicious to eat especially when I'm hungry. I like it because it has many ingredients; it has rice, pasta tomatoes and many other spices. Although spices aren't good for us, I like to have them in my Koshari. It is very popular. Many people like it.

3. A healthy meal

Food is very important for us, so it should be healthy and fresh. I always have many vegetables at different meals every day. Meat, chicken and potatoes are good for our health, that's why my mother always cooks them for us. I think we all should have little salt in our food as it isn't healthy. A healthy meal shouldn't be too spicy, or too sweet. We need to look after our health and have healthy meals.

4. Food we should or shouldn't eat

Some people eat lots of pizzas, sweets, chips, cakes and biscuits. Unhealthy food makes your body unhealthy. When you get older, you start to have some of health problems. But, most of us don't think much about the future. We only think about today. We only think that hamburgers taste better than salad. We think drinks with a lot of sugar are nicer than water. If you want to be healthy, you must eat healthy food and take some exercise every day.

5. My favourite food (Azhar)

There are many kinds of food which can be healthy or unhealthy. We should eat healthy food. My favourite food is salad and meat which I eat them with each meal. Salad is very healthy because it contains many kinds of vegetables. I don't add too much salt to the salad because it is unhealthy.

6. A meal I remember

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice. I ate them at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to this restaurant again soon.

SB / WB Answers

إجابات كتابي الطالب والتدريبات

SB Answers

Check your English Answers

- **1- This is a fact file of some students. Look and make sentences.**
- 1- His name is Basel. He is twelve. He likes football. His favourite food is fish with rice.
 - 2- Her name is Fatma. She is thirteen. She likes (reading) books. Her favourite food is chicken.
 - 3- Their names are Maher and Hany. They are twelve. They like (playing) tennis. Their favourite food is ice cream.
- **2- Complete fact file 4 for you and write sentences like those in Exercise 1.**
- **4 Student's own answers**
- **3- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**
- 1- d) Lama's sister's 2- a) red
 - 3- d) a book about animals 4- b) an orange
 - 5- a) a school
- **4 - Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences.**
- 1- Hatem doesn't like sports.
 - 2- I want to play tennis this afternoon.
 - 3- Look! Those children are jumping / can jump very high.
 - 4- I visited my cousins yesterday.
 - 5- You speak English very well.
- **5- Read the text, then answer the questions.**
- 1- He works in a school in Port Said.
 - 2- He usually eats a sandwich.
 - 3- He usually walks home (for lunch).
 - 4- Because it rained a lot.
 - 5- No, it isn't but it is often bad.
 - 6- The cook makes it himself.
 - 7- It refers to the restaurant.
- **6- Do these words have the same sound. Listen and put (✓) or (x).**
- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1-✓ | 2-✓ | 3-x | 4-x |
| 5-x | 6-✓ | 7-x | 8-x |
- **7- What did they do at the weekend? Look at the table and answer the questions.**
- 1- No, he didn't. He baked a cake.
 - 2- No, he didn't. He visited cousins.
 - 3- He played football.
 - 4- No, she didn't. She visited her friends.
 - 5- Yunis went to (work in) his father's shop.
 - 6- She played tennis.
- **8- Write about your weekend. What do you usually do? What did you do yesterday?**
- Student's own answers

Unit 1

Lesson (1) p. 2 & 3

- **Quiz**
- Male : brother, dad, great-grandfather, son, uncle, great grandfather
- Female : aunt, daughter, grandmother, mum, sister, great grandmother
- **Research**
- Your great grandfather is your grandfather's father.
 - Great-grandchildren are the children of your grandchildren.
- **Ex.3**
- Heidi.
- **Ex.1**
- | | | |
|-----------|---------|-----------|
| 1. Marwan | 2. Judy | 3. Tarek |
| 4. Omar | 5. Huda | 6. Amira |
| 7. Lamia | 8. Adel | 9. Khaled |
| | | 10. Ali |
- **Ex.2**
1. she he they
 2. me
 3. her his my our their
- **Ex.3**
1. my - He
 2. his - his
 3. their - they
 4. his - she
 5. their - them
- **Ex.4 (Student's own answer)**

Lesson (2) p. 4 & 5

- **EX.1**
- (Students' own answers)
- **EX.2**
- False (Hatem doesn't like football)
- **Ex.3**
- (Students' own answers)
- **Ex. 4**
1. Hazem
 2. Hatem
 3. He plays the drums and he plays chess.
 4. Football
 5. They do voluntary work. They help. They play games with the children and read them stories.
- **Ex.6 (Students' own answers)**

Lesson (3) p. 6 & 7

- **Ex.1**
- (Students' own answers)
- **Ex.2**
1. False (only with he, she or it)
 2. True
- **Ex. 3**
1. plays → play
 2. doesn't → don't
 3. Do → Does
 4. don't → doesn't
 5. Does → Do

■ Ex.4

France, Egypt, South Africa

■ Ex.5

1. He works in Paris, France.
2. He plays with him on Saturdays.
3. They live (next to the beach in Cape Town) in South Africa.
4. It takes twelve hours.

■ Values

(Students' own answers)

Lesson(4) p. 8

■ Ex.1

(Students' own answers)

■ Ex. 2

1. C
2. A
3. B

■ Ex. 3

1. goats
2. orphan
3. attic
4. city

■ Ex. 4

She learns about animals and nature. She also learns self-management and to be resilient.

■ Ex.6

(Students' own answers)

Lesson(5) p. 9

■ Ex.1

1. She has goat's milk, bread and cheese.
2. She walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter.
3. Suggested answers: There are a lot of people. It is noisy.

■ Ex. 2

(Students' own answers)

■ Ex.3

(Students' own answers)

■ Research

(Students' own answers)

■ Ex.4

(Students' own answers)

Lesson(6) p. 10

■ Ex.1

Gymnastics

■ EX.2

2. His → Her
3. eats → trains
4. an easy → a difficult

■ Ex.3

(Students' own answers)

Lesson(7) p. 11

■ EX.1

Suggested answers:

1. Khaled is his brother.
2. Lamia is his sister.
3. Amira is his mother.
4. Adel is his father.
5. Huda is his grandmother.
6. Omar is his grandfather.

7. Judy is his aunt.

8. Marwan is his uncle.

9. Tarek is his cousin.

■ EX.2

2. are
3. is
4. listen
5. my
6. plays
7. goes
8. play
9. Our

■ EX.3

goes / watches / listens / likes / doesn't like / drinks swims

Unit 2

Lesson(1) p. 12 & 13

■ Discuss

(Students' own answers)

■ Research

girl's school = the school of one girl
girls' school = a school for girls only

■ Find

Yes, sometimes it can be difficult.

■ Ex.1

1. They have eight (and seven on Thursdays).
2. Arabic, Social Studies, Maths, Science, English, Religion, Home Economics, Art, Computer Studies (also Music, Drama).

■ Ex.2

- Sunday : Art
- Monday : Religion, Arabic, Home Economics, Computer Studies, Music
- Tuesday : Drama, Drama
- Wednesday : Drama
- Thursday : Social Studies, English, Science

■ Ex.3

2. Yes, she does.
3. No, she isn't.
4. Sunday

■ Ex.4

1. A quarter past ten or Ten fifteen.
2. Half past twelve or Twelve thirty.
3. Half past five or Five thirty.
4. Twenty-five past seven or Seven twenty-five.
5. Five to twelve or Eleven fifty-five.
6. A quarter to nine or Eight forty-five.

■ Ex.5 (Students' own answers)

Lesson(2) p. 14 & 15

■ Ex.1

It finishes at four o'clock.

■ EX.2

1. library
2. playground
3. bell
4. hall
5. typical

■ EX.3

2. Because the roads are busy
3. It starts at eight o'clock.
4. They talk in the playground or go to the library to read books.
5. She goes to bed at about half past eight.

Ex.4

- They never walk to school.
- The trip always takes a long time.
- She sometimes goes to the library at break.
- She always does her homework.
- They usually watch TV before they go to bed.

EX.5

- never
- usually
- often
- sometimes
- always

EX.6

(Students' own answers)

Life skills

(Students' own answers)

Speaking

(Students' own answers)

Ex.8

(Students' own answers)

Lesson(3) p. 16 & 17

Ex.1

- Fady's
- boys'
- girls'
- Ali's
- Dina's
- Magdi's
- Manal's
- teacher's
- teachers'

Ex.2

(Students' own answers)

EX.3

- boys'
- teachers'
- teacher's
- Randa's
- Omar and Nader's
- Eman and Aya's
- Adam's
- Mr Mansour's
- teachers'

Life skills

- always
 - never
 - always
 - always
 - never
- (Students' own answers)

Lesson(4) p. 18

Ex.1

- three (bike, canoe, snowmobile)
- a picture 2, b picture 3, c picture 1
- It is the best way they can travel to school (it is a cheap and healthy way for the children in Egypt; the Ugandan children live on the other side of a lake; the American children travel in snow).

EX.2

(The students check their answers to Ex. 1.)

EX.3

- a. 2
- b. 3
- c. 1

EX.4

(The students check their answers to Ex. 3.)

Speaking

- and 2 Students' own answers
- Because this is the only way they can go to school.
- Because we all need to learn and study.

Writing

(Students' own answers)

Lesson(5) p. 19

Ex.1

- They are at school.
- b.

Ex.2

- They are at school.
- b.

Ex.3

- favourite
- good
- teacher
- English
- What time

EX.4

- b. 4
- c. 1
- d. 5
- e. 2
- f. 3

EX.5

(Students' own answers)

Lesson(6) p. 20

Ex.1

- b.
- c.
- a.

EX.2

- T
- F (she only has it on Wednesdays)
- F (she's not very good at it)
- T

EX.3

(Students' own answers))

Lesson(7) p. 21

Ex.1

- Half past one / One thirty
- A quarter to three / Two forty-five
- Six o'clock
- Twenty-five past twelve / Twelve twenty-five
- Ten to five / Four fifty
- A quarter past eleven / Eleven fifteen

EX.2

talk to my friends, do my homework, go home, go to school, have a shower, put on my school uniform, read books, wake up, watch TV

EX.3

It's Heba's pencil case. It's for Maths.
It's Ashraf and Khaled's paint. It's for Art.
It's Reem's book. It's for Music.
It's Mrs Badawi's book. It's for Science.
It's Dalia's book. It's for English.

EX.4

- We always talk on the bus when we come to school.
- I sometimes go to the library at the break.
- We never forget our homework.
- For breakfast, I usually have fruit and tea.
- What time do you usually come home from school?

Unit 3

Lesson(1) p. 22 & 23

Quiz

Top-left: curly hair, long hair;

Top-middle: moustache, beard;
 Top-right: short hair, straight hair;
 Middle-left: dark hair, short hair;
 Middle-middle: long hair, blond hair, straight hair;
 Middle-right: short hair, dark hair, glasses;
 Bottom-left: dark hair, straight hair, long hair;
 Bottom-middle: short hair, dark hair, curly hair

Research

Lewis Carroll is a writer. His famous book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.

Find

It's not easy for Basel to travel around school (because he can't walk).

Ex. 1 Samir is the boy in picture b.

Ex. 2 2. No, he hasn't. 3. No, he hasn't.
 4. No, he hasn't. 5. Yes, he has.

Ex. 3 (Students' own answers)

Ex. 4 (Students' own answers)

Lesson(2) p. 24 - 25

Ex.1 (Students' own answers).

EX.2 Mohamed Salah, an Egyptian footballer (plus students' own answers)

EX.3 2. He is a fast runner.
 3. He is 1.75 metres tall.
 4. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people.
 5. He likes/enjoys playing video games and watching films.
 6. (Students' own answers).

Ex. 4 2. fast x slow
 3. strong x weak 4. poor x rich
 5. kind x unkind 6. friendly x unfriendly

EX.5 2. tall 3. friendly
 4. kind 5. poor 6. weak

Ex. 6 2. 180 3. fast
 4. can 5. friendly

Ex. 7 (Students' own answers)

Lesson(3) p. 26 - 27

Ex.1 Yunis's favourite sport is basketball.

EX.2 1. F (he has got short, dark curly hair)
 2. F (he has two brothers)
 3. T
 4. F (he is not very good at drawing)
 5. T

EX.3 1. Noha 2. Dina 3. Maya 4. Eman

EX.4 (The students check their answers)

EX.5 2. likes 3. loves 4. doesn't like

Lesson(4) p. 28

Ex.1 (Students' own answers)

Ex.2 1. Alice.
 2. The White Rabbit, the Cheshire Cat and the Queen of Hearts.

3. The Cheshire Cat.
 4. The Queen of Hearts.
 5. Because all the characters help her.
 6. (Students' own answers).

Ex. 3 (Students' own answers).

Ex. 4 (Students' own answers)

Lesson(5) p. 29

Ex. 1 1. and 2 Students' own answers.

3. Yes, because we all have to do difficult things sometimes.

4. (Students' own answers)

EX.2 (Students' own answers)

Ex. 3 (Students' own answers)

Ex. 4 (Students' own answers)

Lesson(6) p. 30

Ex. 1 Because Basel can't walk.

EX.2 1. He's got (short), straight hair and brown eyes.

2. He's kind and very funny.

3. He likes reading and playing video games.

4. It is difficult to travel around school.

5. Fady opens doors and gets things for Basel.

Life skills

(Students' own answers)

EX.3 (Students' own answers)

Lesson(7) p. 31

Ex.1 2. curly 3. dark 4. beard
 5. moustache 6. glasses 7. short
 8. tall 9. friendly 10. kind
 11. clever

EX.2 2. hasn't got 3. isn't 4. is
 5. has got 6. has not got 7. has got
 8. is 9. very

EX.3 2. basketball 3. playing
 4. loves 5. like 6. doesn't

EX.4 (Students' own answers)

Review A**Lesson(1) p. 32**

Ex.1 My family

2. my 3. His
 4. Their 5. her

EX.2 2. D 3. A 4. C

EX.3 2. kind 3. short
 4. clever 5. curly 6. friendly
 7. straight 8. funny

Ex.4 2. Nader is Lina's uncle.
 3. Malek is Lina's cousin.
 4. Amal is Malek's mum.
 5. Fares is Malek's brother.
 6. Fares is Nader's son.

Lesson(2) p. 33

- **Ex.1** 2. Home Economics.
3. Religion.
4. 12: 50. / Ten to one.
5. 9: 30 / Half past nine.

- **Ex.2** 2. always 3. always
4. sometimes 5. never 6. often

- **Ex.3** 2. loves 3. doesn't like
4. likes 5. love 6. like

Unit 4

Lesson(1) p. 34 & 35

■ **Find**

- b. 5 c. 6 d. 7
e. 4 f. 2 g. 1 h. 3

■ **Research**

- It's called a mouse because it looks like a mouse.

- **Ex.1** 2. False. Some of them have one.

3. False. There are two laptop computers in the classroom.

4. False. Mr Osman has got a new MP3 player.

- **Ex.2** Picture (c)

- **Ex.3** (Students' own answers)

Lesson(2) p. 36 - 37

- **EX.1** 1. It's a 3D printer. / It shows 3D printing.

- **EX.2** 1. write an email 2. send a text message
3. tap on the icon 4. click on the icon
5. look at a website 6. send a photo
7. make a video call 8. take a selfie

The following are mentioned in Adam's conversation:
look at a website, send a photo, take a selfie

- **EX.3** 2. chess 3. on-a websites
4. They're taking selfies

- **EX.4** 1. (Students' own answers)

2. You tap on an icon on a phone, you click on an icon on a laptop computer.
3. They are not always the same but they are usually similar. The icons are: Phone/email/message.
4. (Students' own answers).

- **EX.5** 1. reading a book. 2. playing football.
3. are playing chess.
4. is looking at a website / using a tablet.
5. Two girls are taking a selfie.
6. A boy is listening to music.
7. A boy is sending a text message.

- **Ex.7** (Students' own answers)

Lesson(3) p. 38 - 39

- **EX.1** Randa is talking to Sherifa (on the phone).

- **EX.2** 2. Grandmother is watching TV.
3. Ola and Samira are taking selfies.
4. Reem is listening to music.
5. Uncle Yasser is using the tablet / writing an email.

- **Ex. 3- 4** (Students' own answers)

- **Ex. 5** Girl 1 is Soha Girl 2 is Hala
Girl 3 is Mona Girl 4 is Amira
Girl 5 is Fatma Girl 6 is Leila

- **Ex. 6** 1. Is Hala making a video call? No, she isn't. She's writing a text message.
2. Is Soha taking a selfie? No, she isn't. She's talking on her mobile phone / to a friend.
3. Is Amira using a tablet? No, she isn't. She's reading a book.
4. Is Fatma writing an email? Yes, she is.
5. Is Leila taking a selfie? No, she isn't. She's making a video call.
6. Is Mona reading a book? No, she isn't. She's taking a selfie.

- **Ex. 7** (Students' own answers)

Lesson(4) p. 40

- **Ex. 1** Wael has got a laptop.

- **Ex. 2**

	Wael	Mazen
Age	12	13
Hobby	playing video games	Walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects
Where he goes at break time	He stays in the classroom	He goes outside (even when it's very hot or cold)
What he does on his mobile phone	He looks at video game websites	He takes photos of flowers

■ **Life skills**

1. (Students' own answers).
2. Wael needs help.
3. You should go outside more. You should not play video games all the time.

Lesson(5) p. 41

- **Ex. 1** a. 4 b. 2 c. 1 d. 3

- **EX.2** 1. Turn 2. Tap 3. Say

- **Ex. 3** Suggested answers:
(First) Put water in a kettle.
(Then) Boil the water.
(Then) Put the water in a cup.
(Then) Drink the tea!

Lesson (6) p. 42

Ex. 1

Do (✓)	Don't (X)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keep your password secret. Ask for help from a parent or teacher. Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about something. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make friends with people you don't know online. Tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number) Send photos to people you don't know. Answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.

EX.2 (Students' own answers)

Lesson (7) p. 43

Ex. 1 1. a mouse 2 a phone charger 3 an MP3 player

Ex. 2 & 3 (Students' own answers)

Unit 5

Lesson (1) p. 44 & 45

Quiz

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|----------|
| 1. cave | 2. sea | 3. beach |
| 4. desert | 5. forest | 6. lake |
| 7. jungle | 8. waterfall | |
| 9. mountain | 10. river | |

Research

- The Sahara Desert is in 11 countries (Algeria, Chad, Egypt, Libya, Mali, Mauritania, Morocco, Niger, Western Sahara, Sudan and Tunisia).

Vocabulary Ex. 1

water : sea - lake - waterfall - river

sand : beach - desert

trees : forest - jungle

rock : cave - mountain

EX. 2 (Students' own answers)

EX. 4 1. jungle 2. beach 3. cave

Speaking Ex. 5-6

(Students' own answers)

Lesson (2) p. 46 - 47

Reading Ex.1

(Students' own answers)

EX.2 1a. ride a bike

1b. have a picnic - eat delicious food

2a. swim in a lake

2b. see a camel - sleep in a tent

3a. make a sandcastle

3b. go in a cave

Ex.3

- photos 3 a and 3 b
- photos 1 a and 1 b
- photos 2 a and 2 b

EX.4

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 2. didn't | 3. were |
| 4. swam | 5. were |

EX.5

- | | | |
|---------|------------|---------------------------|
| 1. play | 2. did not | 3. did not (didn't) sleep |
|---------|------------|---------------------------|

EX.6 1. Regular: visit Irregular: have, make, ride, see

2. didn't have, didn't make, didn't ride, didn't see, didn't visit

Speaking Ex. 7

(Students' own answers)

Lesson (3) p. 48 - 49

Ex. 2

- Yunis went to Jordan.
- He saw wonderful views from the windows and dolphins in the sea. He swam in the sea every day and visited a lot of famous places. He went to an old castle and climbed a mountain. He also bought a small souvenir for his friend.

EX.3

- | | |
|----|----|
| 2b | 3a |
|----|----|

EX.4

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| camp (1b), | castle (2b), |
| dolphin (2a), | holiday flat (1c), |
| hotel (1a), | flag (3a), |
| souvenir (3a, b and c), | view (1c) |

EX. 5

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 2. Did - stay | 3. did - go | 4. did - do |
| 5. did - buy | 6. did - eat | |

EX.6

- No, we didn't. We camped by the lake.
- I walked to school.
- I had dinner with my family.
- She bought fruit.
- We ate pizza.

Speaking Ex. 7

(Students' own answers)

Lesson (4) p. 50

EX.1 1. Learning English in London

2. Yes, they did.

3. (Students' own answers)

EX.2 2. She enjoyed visiting Windsor Castle.

3. She went there by train.

4. No, she didn't.

5. No, it wasn't.

6. They did interesting projects.

7. She bought a lot of souvenirs.

8. Because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.

Projects

(Students' own answers)

Lesson (5) p. 51

Listening Ex. 1

- An elephant

■ EX.2

a3 b1 c4 d2

■ Ex. 3

- Happy: How exciting! Wow! That's interesting!
 → Thinking: Really?
 → Sad: Oh dear! Oh no! What a pity.

■ Ex. 5

(Students' own answers)

■ Values

1.

- Put your litter in the bin.
- Do not take photos.
- Do not wear sandals or shorts.
- Do not walk on the grass.

2.

(Students' own answers)

Lesson(6) p. 52

■ Ex. 1

(Students' own answers)

■ EX.2

- museums, the Luxembourg Gardens, a market
- a hotel
- snails
- a T-shirt/a postcard/a souvenir – a small Eiffel Tower (with a light on the top)
- go to the Science Museum

■ Ex. 3

(Students' own answers)

Lesson(7) p. 53

■ Review Ex. 1

(Students' own answers)

■ EX.2

- | | | |
|----------------|------------|----------|
| 2. ate | 3. had | 4. rode |
| 5. went - made | 6. played | 7. slept |
| 8. swam - saw | 9. climbed | |

■ EX.3

- swam - didn't see
- didn't stay - slept
- went - didn't make
- didn't wear - was
- didn't watch - played

■ EX. 4

- Did you and your friends play tennis last week?
- Did your father travel to work by bus this morning?
- Did you eat fish for dinner yesterday evening?
- Did you and your family go to the shops last Saturday?

Unit 6

Lesson(1) p. 54 & 55

■ Discuss

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|--------------------------|
| 1 hummus | 2 salad | 3 biscuits (US: cookies) |
| 4 peppers | 5 olives | 6 cheese |

- | | | |
|------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| 7 salt | 8 figs | 9 crisps (US: potato chips) |
| 10 raisins | 11 nuts | 12 sugar |

■ Research

Suggested answers:

(from photos:) hummus, salad, peppers, olives, raisins, nuts.
 Also: fish, fruit, vegetables etc.

■ Find

tagine

■ Ex. 1

Countable: nuts, biscuits, peppers, olives, figs, crisps, raisins
 Uncountable: cheese, hummus, salad, salt, sugar

■ Ex. 2

They do not have hummus or figs.

■ Ex. 3

1 Is, isn't 2 some 3 Is 4 Are, any 5 some

■ Ex. 4

Students' own answers.

■ Ex 5

Students' own answers.

Lesson(2) p. 56 & 57

■ EX. 1

It is Egyptian rice pudding. Students' own answers

■ EX. 2

1 F 2 A 3 C 4 E 5 D 6 G 7 B

■ EX. 3

Words in the pictures:
 cup (pictures E and F)
 saucepan (pictures A, C, D, E, F).
 boil (picture A), fridge (picture B)
 Equipment: cup, teaspoon, saucepan, fridge
 Verbs for cooking: put, boil, add, stir

■ EX. 4

Salem (did not like it.)

■ EX. 5

2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

■ EX. 6

There's too much milk.
 There are a lot of figs.
 There isn't enough rice.
 There are too many people.
 There aren't enough nuts.
 There are a lot of tomatoes.

Lesson(3) p. 58 & 59

■ Ex. 1
b

■ Ex. 2

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 2 four | 3 Beans |
| 4 Olives, meat | 5 fruit juice |

■ Ex. 3

Reproduce the Venn diagram with words filled in as follows:
 'chocolate', 'biscuits' and 'cake' in intersection between 'a lot of fat' and 'a lot of sugar'. 'crisps' in the intersection between 'a

lot of fat' and 'a lot of salt'. 'Olives' in circle for 'a lot of salt' and 'fruit juice' in the section for 'a lot of sugar'.

Ex. 4

Students' own answers.

Ex. 5

Students' own answers.

Ex. 6

2. should not 3. should not 4. should

Ex. 7

Suggested answers:

You should eat more fruit.

You shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. /

You shouldn't have fizzy drinks. / You should drink more milk.

You shouldn't have too many snacks.

You should be careful. Olives have a lot of salt.

Lesson (4) p. 60

Ex. 1

Students' own answers.

Ex. 2

koshari: Egypt

tagine: Morocco

nyama na irio: Kenya

kapenta: Zimbabwe

Ex. 3

2. F (Tagine does have meat in it.) 3. T

4. T 5. F (It is a type of fish.)

Ex. 4

Marwa: Egypt; koshari: rice, pasta and tomatoes; delicious, healthy

Hamza: Morocco; tagine: meat, vegetables, fruits and spices; amazing

Makena: Kenya; nyama na irio: meat with mashed potatoes; wonderful

Bradley: Zimbabwe; Kapenta: fish; great

Ex. 5

Students' own answers

Lesson (5) p. 61

Ex. 1

2. cheese and tomato pizza

3. small salad

4. orange juice



Ex. 2

2. I'd like ...

3. Small or large?

4. What would you like?

5. Is that everything?

6. We've got ...

7. That's ... pounds.

8. Have you got any ...?

Ex. 3

Students' own answers

Lesson (6) p. 62

Reading Ex. 1

She enjoyed having a cake after lunch the most.

EX.2

2. She went with her family (her mum, her dad and her brother, Ashraf).

3. It had green and white walls and big windows.

4. She had fish with rice.

5. Because it's very healthy.

6. They had cakes. Sara had basbousa and Ashraf had kunafa.

Ex. 3

Students' own answers

Lesson (7) p. 63

Review Ex. 1

2. nuts 3. hummus 4. biscuits 5. figs 6. olives

7. salad 8. peppers 9. pasta 10. raisins

Ex. 2

2. C 3. U 4. C 5. C 6. C

7. U 8. C 9. U 10. C

Ex. 3

2. any 3. too much 4. enough 5. some 6. too many

Ex. 4

You shouldn't eat too much chocolate.

You should eat a lot of fruit.

You shouldn't eat too many crisps.

You shouldn't drink too many fizzy drinks.

Review B

Lesson (1) p. 64

Ex. 1

a. 3 b. 1 c. 4 d. 2

Ex. 2

2 a 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 b 9 a 10 c

Ex. 3

Food and cooking: picnic, special food, add, lemon juice, fish, salad, eggs, recipe

Technology: video call, click, icon, email, website, laptop, charger, TV, tablet, password

Outdoor places and activities: go to the beach, make sandcastles, swim in the sea, ride bikes, play games, paint eggs, take a photo

Lesson (2) p. 65

Ex. 1

a 4 b 3 c 1 d 5 e 2

Ex. 2

2 many 3 not enough

4 enough 5 too much

6 a lot of 7 is 8 much

Ex. 3

go – went (irregular), have – had (irregular), make – made (irregular), play – played (regular), ride – rode (irregular), see – saw (irregular), start – started (regular), swim – swam (irregular), travel – travelled (regular), visit – visited (regular), write – wrote (irregular)

Ex. 4

Students' own answers.

WB Answers**Unit 1****Lesson(1) p. 72**

- **Ex. 1**
2 aunt 3 parent 4 cousin 5 grandmother
6 son 7 uncle
- **Ex. 2**
2 His 3 our 4 Her 5 Their 6 your
- **Ex. 3**
2 me 3 us 4 I 5 him 6 They

Lesson(2) p. 73

- **Ex. 1**
2 d 3 e 4 a 5 b 5. b

■ **Ex. 2**

do	go	listen to	play
voluntary work	swimming	music on the radio the teacher	basketball chess the drums football

- **Ex. 3**
2 go 3 plays 4 listens to 5 does

- **Ex. 4**
Students' own answers.

Lesson(3) p. 74

- **Ex.1**
2. doesn't work 3. goes 4. catches
5. don't go 6. play 7. go
8. is 9. doesn't 10. watches

- **Ex.2**
2. Does your brother play football?
3. Where does your father work?
4. Where do your grandparents live?
5. How long does it take you to come to school?

- **Ex.3**
b 5 c 2 d 3 e 1

Lesson(4) p. 75

- **Ex. 1**
2 orphan 3 cities 4 goat 5 attic

■ **Ex. 2**

in a city	in the mountains
airport hospital parks	birds flowers goats

- **Ex. 3**
1 b 2 a 3 d 4 c

- **Ex. 4**
2. She walks in the mountains.
3. She doesn't like the city and is sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.
4. Students' own answers.
5. Students' own answers.

Lesson(5) p. 76

- **Ex. 1**
2 d 3 e 4 a 5 b

- **Ex. 2**
2. How old is he?
3. Where does he live?
4. What's his favourite food?
5. What are his hobbies?

- **Ex. 3**
Students' own answers

Lesson(6) p. 77

- **Ex. 1**
1. gymnast 2. busy
3. trains 4. gymnastics

- **Ex. 2**
My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in Damietta. Her favorite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too.

- **Ex. 3**
2. a 3. c

- **Ex. 4**
Students' own answers

Lesson(7) p. 78

- **Ex. 1**
2. uncle 3. cousin 4. son
5. daughter 6. aunt

- **Ex. 2**
2. South Africa 3. Oman
4. Morocco 5. Switzerland

- **Ex. 3**
2. Her 3. my 4. his
5. Our 6. your

- **Ex. 4**
1. listens to 2. plays
3. goes 4. play

- **Ex. 5**
2. Do you listen to music?
3. She doesn't go swimming on Saturdays.
4. Do you play chess?
5. What is his name?
6. What are her hobbies?

Unit 2**Lesson (1) p. 79****Ex. 1**

2. Maths
3. Science
4. Arabic
5. Religion
6. Art
7. Drama
8. Home Economics
9. Computer Studies
10. Music

Ex. 2

2. It's eight o'clock.
3. It's half past one / one thirty.
4. It's twenty-five past four / four twenty-five.
5. It's a quarter to eleven / ten forty-five.
6. It's five to seven / six fifty-five

Ex. 3

Students' own answers

Lesson (2) p. 80**Ex. 1**

2. playground.
3. library.
4. typical.
5. bell.

Ex. 2

*****	always
****	usually
***	often
**	sometimes
—	never

Ex. 3

2. Mr Badr never flies (and he always travels by train).
3. Dina sometimes goes swimming.
4. Amir usually walks to school.
5. I always have breakfast at 7 o'clock.

Ex. 4 Students' own answers.**Lesson (3) p. 81****Ex. 1**

1. c
2. d
3. b
4. a

Ex. 2

2. Malak's
3. the teachers'
4. Dalia and Azza's

Ex. 3

2. This is Ali's phone. It's new!
3. These are my sister's shoes. Her name is Huda.
4. Those are my brothers' jackets. They go to the same school.
5. Can you see Kamal and Amir's classroom? It is on the right.

Ex. 4

Student's own answer.

Lesson (4) p. 82**Ex. 1**

animal	in a city	on water	in the air
camel	car	boat	plane
horse	bus	canoe	helicopter
donkey	train	ship	
	taxi		

Ex. 2

2. healthy
3. quick
4. never
5. in
6. takes
7. snow
8. travel

Ex. 3

2. at
3. in
4. in
5. at

Ex. 4

Students' own answers

Lesson (5) p. 83**Ex. 1**

- a 3
- b 8
- c 10
- d 1
- e 4
- f 2
- g 7
- h 6
- i 9
- j 5

Ex. 2

- a 3
- b 4
- c 1
- d 5
- e 6
- f 2

Ex. 3 Students' own answers**Lesson (6) p. 84****Ex. 1**

- a 3
- b 2
- c 1

Ex. 2

2. She sometimes looks at students' homework.
3. She often goes shopping.
4. They go to the park.
5. Lama's / Her brother is very good at football.

Ex. 3 Students' own answers**Lesson (7) p. 85****Ex. 1**

- 2 c
- 3 d
- 4 e
- 5 a

Ex. 2

2. past
3. to
4. five, nine

Ex. 3

- 2 c
- 3 a
- 4 d

Ex. 4

- 2 a
- 3 d
- 4 c

Ex. 5

1. It is Uganda's flag.
2. It is Egypt's flag.
3. It is England and Scotland's flag.
4. It is the USA's flag.

Unit 3**Lesson (1) p. 86****Ex. 1**

2. hair
3. glasses
4. short
5. curly
6. moustache
7. blond
8. hair
9. beard

- Ex.2** 2. Has, got 3. have got
4. has, got, has got 5. have
- Ex.3** 1. She has got long, straight, dark hair.
2. He has got short, dark, curly hair, glasses, a moustache and a beard.

Lesson (2) p. 87

- Ex.1** 2. fast 3. kind 4. strong
5. tall 6. rich
- Ex.2** 1. an elephant, a camel
2. a plane, a train
3. a baby bird, an insect
4. my parents, my best friend
5. a tortoise, an ant
6. my little brother, a cat
- Ex.3** 2. can 3. can 4. can 5. can't 6. can't

- Ex.4**
Students' own answers

Lesson (3) p. 88

- Ex.1** 2. playing 3. watching
4. painting, swimming 5. travelling

- Ex.2**
1. c 2. a 3. b

- Ex.3** Students' own answers.

- Ex.4**
Students' own answers.

Lesson (4) p. 89

- Ex.1** 2b 3a 4c 5a 6d

- Ex.2** 2. It is a strange place.
3. He is very busy and usually very late.
4. He helps Alice to find different places and characters.
5. She is always angry and shouts at people.

- Ex.3**
Students' own answers.

Lesson (5) p. 90

- Ex.1**
2 writing stories
3 drawing, painting
4 swimming, swimming in the sea
5 watching TV, reading books

- Ex.2**
1 Treasure Island
2 Anne of Green Gables
3 Gulliver's Travels

- Ex.3**
Students' own answers

Lesson (6) p. 91

- Ex.1**
2 because 3 but
4 and 5 because 6 but

- Ex.2**
2 d 3 a 4 b

- Ex.3**
Students' own answers

Lesson (7) p. 92

- Ex.1**
Hair: beard, blond, curly, dark, long, moustache, straight
People: friendly, kind, poor, rich, strong, tall, unkind, weak
Both: short

- Ex.2**
Students' own answers

- Ex.3**
2. Does Salem like playing computer games? Yes, he does.
3. What does your sister look like?
4. Mustafa loves playing football but he doesn't like playing tennis.
5. Noor likes swimming and playing tennis.

Review A

Lesson (7) p. 93

- Ex.1**
2. never goes 3. often meets 4. sometimes goes

- Ex.2**
2. girls' 3. not very good at
4. to 5. clever

- Ex.3** 2. c 3. d 4. a

- Ex.4** 2. c 3. a 4. d

- Ex.5**
Dalia has got the bag with the tennis balls on it. She often plays tennis at school.

- Ex.6**
Students' own answers.

- Ex.7**
2. This is Huda's notebook.
3. You are very good at playing tennis.
4. My sister has got long hair.
5. Basel uses a wheelchair because he can't/cannot walk.
6. 'What is your aunt like?' 'She is clever and kind'.

- Ex.8**
2. chess 3. coat 4. hall 5. glasses

- Ex.9**
Students' own answers.

Unit 4

Lesson (7) p. 95

- Ex.1**
2. tablets 3. phone charger 4. printers
5. MP3 player 6. mobile phone 7. mouse
8. laptop computer

Ex.2

2. an, is 3. a, isn't 4. any, are 5. Are, are

Ex.3

2. next to 3. behind
4. in front of 5. under

Ex.4

Students' own answers.

Lesson (2) p. 96**Ex.1**

- 2 Look 3 make 4 send 5 Tap
6 take 7 an, online 8 3D printer

Ex.2

- 2 b 3 a 4 c

Ex.3

- 2 is sleeping 3 are making 4 is sending
5 is doing 6 am talking

Ex.4

Students' own answers.

Lesson (3) p. 97**Ex.1**

1. in 2. are 3. sitting
4. Are 5. playing 6. 's / is

Ex.2

2. Are the students in your class working?
3. Are you using a tablet?
4. Are you writing an email?

Ex.3

Suggested answers:

2. Yes, they are.
3. Yes, I am. / No, I'm not. I'm writing with a pen.
4. No, I'm not.

Ex.4

Suggested answers:

2. Where are you going?
3. What is Hala doing / writing?
4. Is your father working today / on Saturday?

Lesson (4) p. 98**Ex.1**

- | | |
|---------|------------------|
| nature | technology |
| animals | Computer Studies |
| birds | laptop |
| eagle | mobile phone |
| flowers | video call |
| insects | video game |
| sky | website |

Ex.2

2. are 3 there 4. sitting 5. taking
6. not 7. flying 8. playing

Ex.3

Suggested answers:

In this picture, there is a big room. There are lots of computers and laptops. A man is looking at a website on his computer. A woman is writing an email. Two people

are making a video call. The man is not working now. It is time to finish work. He is going home.

Ex.4

Students' own answers

Lesson (5) p. 99**Ex.1**

2. Boil the water.
3. Put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag.
4. Take out the tea bag.
5. Then, drink the tea.

Ex.2

- 2 d 3 a 4 b

Ex.3

2. go 3. buy 4. take 5. help 6. send

Ex.4

Suggested answers:

- First, put some water in a kettle.
Boil the water.
Put the hot water in a cup with tea.
Add some sugar.
Now drink the tea.

Lesson (6) p. 100**Ex.1**

1. stay 2. password 3. secret
4. technology 5. send

Ex.2

1. Don't ask before you go online. (x)
2. Don't tell people your password. (✓)
3. Don't talk to people you know online. (x)
4. Don't tell people online your telephone number. (✓)
5. Don't ask your teacher about good websites. (x)
6 Don't eat when you use a computer. (✓)

Lesson (6) p. 101**Ex.1**

2. d 3. e 4. a 5. b

Whiteboard is one word.

Ex.2

2. using 3. writing 4. watching 5. looking

Ex.3

Students' own answers

Ex.4

Students' own answers

Unit 5**Lesson (1) p. 102****Ex. 1**

2. beach 3. jungle 4. mountain
5. waterfall 6. river 7. lake
8. cave 9. desert 10. forest

Ex.2

Students' own answers.

Lesson (2) p. 103**Ex. 1**

2. f eat delicious food 3. b have a picnic

4. a ride a bike 5 c sleep in a tent
6. e swim in a lake

Ex.2

2. visited 3. slept 4. didn't swim
5. wasn't 6. rode 7. was
8. visited 9. went 10. ate

Ex.3

2. He went into the cave.
3. Mona's father climbed a mountain.
4. I didn't sleep in caves.
5. Sami didn't like playing football.

Ex.4

Students' own answers.

Lesson(3) p. 104

Ex. 1

2. f 3. b 4. a 5. c 6. e

Ex.2

2. Where did you stay?
3. How did you travel there?
4. Did you climb a mountain?
5. What did you eat?

Ex.3

Students' own answers.

Ex.4

Places mentioned: Alexandria, beaches, caves, desert, Giza pyramids and Sphinx, Luxor, Valley of the Kings, Karnak Temple, Cairo, Khan el-Khalili market, Hurghada, the Red Sea

Lesson(4) p. 105

Ex. 1

2. went 3. had 4. was
5. were 6. wasn't 7. helped
8. were 9. bought 10. enjoyed

Ex.2

2. He wanted to learn Arabic.
3. Yes, he did. They were very friendly.
4. They helped him.
5. He bought lots of souvenirs.
6. He enjoyed the view of the city from the top of the Cairo Tower.

Ex.3

Students' own answers

Lesson(5) p. 106

Ex. 1

2. Oh 3. pity 4. exciting
5. Wow 6. no! 7. interesting

Ex.2

1. How exciting! 2. Oh dear.
3. Really? 4. Wow!
5. Oh no! / What a pity!

Ex.3

Students' own answers

Lesson(6) p. 107

Ex. 1

Students' own answers

Ex.2

- a 3 b 2 c 4 d 1

Ex.3

Students' own answers

Lesson(7) p. 108

Ex. 1

2. desert 3. sea 4. beach
5. cave 6. waterfall

Ex.2

2. d No, I didn't. It was windy?
3. e I ate a lot of fish
4. a I stayed with my cousins.
5. b Yes, I did. It was fun!

Ex.3

Students' own answers

Unit 6

Lesson(1) p. 109

Ex. 1

2. cheese 3. crisps 4. figs
5. hummus 6. nuts 7. olives
8. peppers 9. raisins 10. salad
11. salt 12. sugar

Ex.2

Students' own answers.

Ex.3

2. is some, is, any 3. Is, any, is
4. are, any 5. Are, any, are

Ex.4

Students' own answers.

Lesson(2) p. 110

Ex. 1

2. b 3. a 4. a

Ex.2

2. I don't like this tea. There is too **much** sugar in it!
3. There **isn't** enough milk to make hot chocolate.
4. There are too **many** people in the market today.
5. We don't need to share because there **is** enough rice for everyone.

Ex.3

2. enough 3. enough 4. too much
5. too many 6. enough

Lesson(3) p. 111

Ex. 1

Healthy: apples, beans, oranges, peppers, fruit
Unhealthy: biscuits, cakes, chocolate, crisps
(+ students' own answers)

Ex.2

2. piece of 3. some 4. two pieces

Ex.3

2. shouldn't, much 3. should, a lot of
4. shouldn't, much 5. shouldn't, a lot of

Ex.4

2. should 3. shouldn't
4. should 5. shouldn't

Lesson (4) p. 112

- Ex. 1**
 2. Kenya 3. Morocco
 4. South Africa 5. Zimbabwe

- Ex. 2**
 meat (✓) carrots (✓)
 potatoes (✓) vegetables (✓)

- Ex. 3**
 Food adjectives (positive): delicious, good for you, great, healthy, wonderful
 Food adjectives (negative): bad for you, not nice, unhealthy

- Ex. 4**
 Students' own answers

Lesson (5) p. 113

- Ex. 1**
 b 4 c 5 d 2 e 3

- Ex. 2**
 Students' own answers

- Ex. 3**
 Students' own answers

- Ex. 4**
 Students' own answers

Lesson (6) p. 114

- Ex. 1**
 a 3 b 2 c 4 d 1

- Ex. 2**
 The topic sentence: A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria.
 Supporting sentences: All the other sentences in the paragraph.

- Ex. 3**
 Students' own answers

Lesson (7) p. 115

- Ex. 1**
 Healthy: chicken, fish, nuts, peppers, rice, salad
 Unhealthy: biscuits, cake, crisps

- Ex. 2**
 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 c

- Ex. 3**
 2. You **should** clean your teeth in the morning.
 3. You **shouldn't** eat crisps before a meal.
 4. Laila feels ill. She **should** see a doctor.
 5. Ali **should not** talk in the Maths lesson.

- Ex. 4**
 Students' own answers

Review B

p. 116

- Ex. 1**
 a 3 b 4 c 1 d 5 e 2

- Ex. 2**
 2. large 3. sugar
 4. swam 5. hat

- Ex. 3**
 2. chicken 3. orange juice
 4. water 5. tea

- Ex. 4**
 2. There is not enough chicken.
 3. There is not enough water.
 4. There is too much fish.
 5. There are too many bottles of orange juice.
 6. There is enough tea for everyone.

- Ex. 5**
 2. delicious 3. sandcastle
 4. unhealthy 5. scary

- Ex. 6**
 2. send 3. make
 4. tapped 5. took

- Ex. 7**
 2. is making 3. is riding
 4. are swimming 5. is climbing
 6. am sleeping

- Ex. 8**
 Students' own answers.

"End of Term Practice" p. 118

- 1**
 1. d. with Lubna and Alaa
 2. b. preparatory
 3. a. the same place
 4. c. Shorouk's parents

- 2**
 1. can we do it
 2. you ready
 3. No, it isn't.
 4. Mr Ahmed
 5. he will be helpful.

- 3**
 1. Science and computer studies
 2. To speak good English to other children in different places.
 3. Yes, it helps communicate with people.
 4. c. a river
 5. a. In Egypt
 6. d. a and b
 7. b. life and friends

- 4**
 1. a. many 2. d. sensible
 3. a. PE 4. a. in
 5. d. typical 6. c. learning
 7. b. parents 8. d. taking
 9. b. diary 10. a. go

- 5**
 1. did 2. is
 3. much 4. is

Listening material

Unit 1

Azhar

I have a big family. My father is a doctor and my mother is a teacher. I have two brothers and two sisters. We are happy.

Hazem : I play football on Tuesday.

Ali : I don't like football. I like basketball.

Hazem : Basketball is an interesting sport. I also like music.

Ali : Me, too. I play the drums in a band.

Hazem : I play chess with my friends.

Ali : Chess is really difficult.

Unit 2

Azhar

I'm in prep one. My school is near to my house, so I go there on foot. I have many friends. I like my school because our teachers are kind. They teach us in a good way.

Salah : Do we have an English lesson tomorrow?

Ali : Yes. It's after Arabic.

Salah : What's your favourite subject?

Ali : I like Maths. Tuesday is my favourite day because we have two Maths lessons! What's your favourite subject?

Salah : Hmm.. I think my favourite subjects are social studies and science.

Unit 3

Azhar

My name is Sherif. I go to Port Said prep school. I am good at English, maths, Arabic and science. I go to the club every Friday with my friends. I dream to be a doctor.

Magid is a student. He usually goes home after school. He doesn't like playing computer games. After he does his homework, he likes reading a book. He likes writing stories, too.

Review A

Ahmed : Hi, Granddad. It's Ahmed. What are you doing?

Granddad : I'm playing chess online. Are you using your new tablet?

Ahmed : Yes, it's easy to use.

Granddad : What are you doing?

Ahmed : I'm doing my English homework. I'm looking at websites for information about grammar.

Granddad : What are your mum and sister doing?

Ahmed : They're taking selfies. I'm sending you one of their photos now.

Granddad : Oh yes! That's a great photo.

Unit 4

Azhar

My mother always gives me instructions to keep my room clean. She wants it to look nice. I follow her orders all the time because I don't want to make her sad.

My family love technology. My father's got a laptop. He goes onto websites to get information. I have got a mobile phone. I'm sending a message to a friend now. My brother is always writing emails.

Unit 5

Azhar

I went on a trip to Sinai with my family. I enjoyed the mountains and the sunny beaches there. I took some photos there.

Ramy went to Alexandria last summer. He went there by train. He swam in the sea. He played on the beach. He made a sandcastle. He didn't fly his kite. He stayed at a hotel.

Unit 6

Azhar

I like to have fish at lunchtime. Fish is very

healthy. When I eat fish, I never put salt on it. Salt isn't good for health.

Osama had lunch at a nice restaurant yesterday. He ordered pizza and salad. His sister, Shimaa ordered tagine. His mother ordered chicken. His father ordered rice and meat. They had ice cream for dessert.

Review B

I'm Azza. I had a wonderful time in Paris. Paris is a great city for a holiday. I bought a T-shirt and postcards. I visited the Eiffel Tower. I had a good time there. I came back a month ago.

WB End of term practice

My name's Shorouk. I go to school with my friends Lubna and Alaa. I'm a student in preparatory stage. My father and mother work in the same hospital.

Exam 1

My name is Asem. I live with my grandfather on his farm. He is a good farmer. I help my grandfather to grow many plants.

Exam 2

Mazen and Hatem are twins. They help in the hospital every Sunday. Hatem likes playing football. They sometimes play chess together.

Exam 3

Last month, we went to Siwa. We saw many camels there. We caught fish in the lake. We slept in a tent. It was a happy holiday.

Exam 4

I like my school very much. I go to my school on foot. We have lessons in the classroom. We have break in the playground. I talk to my friends at break.

Exam 5

Amira is thirteen years old. She lives in Giza. She is in grade one at prep school. She likes all her subjects, but she likes maths best.

Exam 6

Mona is fifteen years old. She lives in a big city. She likes to play tennis. She trains every day for three hours.

Exam 7

Yara is a good girl. She is twelve years old.

She lives in Aswan with her family. Yara's father is a famous doctor.

Exam 8

I'm in prep one. I go to school by bike. When we finish our classes, we talk to each other and play at break in the playground.

Exam 9

Heidi is an orphan girl. She lives with her grandfather in a village. She sleeps in the attic of the house. Her uncle usually takes her to the city.

Exam 10

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian footballer. He plays for a good team in Europe. He is good at scoring goals. He has got curly hair and a beard.

Exam 11

My father is always happy. He likes watching science programmes. My mother doesn't like sports programmes. She always watches films with my fifteen-year-old sister Nadia.

Exam 12

Amal is twelve years old. Her older sister Ola goes to the same school. They always go to school on foot.

Exam 13

My name is Hazem. I love sports very much. I play basketball every Sunday. I sometimes go swimming on Friday.

Exam 14

Sami's father is a famous scientist. He works in Paris, France. He works there five days a week. He spends the weekend in Cairo.

Exam 15

Mr Taha works in a prep school in Minia. He likes to have lunch at break time; he eats fish every day.

Exam 16

Reem is a good student. She is in a prep school in Tanta. She likes English but she isn't good at maths.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

أهم الافعال غير المنتظمة الواردة بالمنهج

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
be (am / is / are)	يكون	was / were	been
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
build	يبني	built	built
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
catch	يمسك	cought	caught
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
come	يأتي	came	come
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
find	يجد	found	found
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
get	يحصل على	got	got
give	يعطي	gave	given
go	يذهب	went	gone
have	يملك	had	had
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
keep	يحفظ بـ	kept	kept
learn	يتعلم	learnt	learnt
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made

meet	يقابل	met	met
put	يضع	put	put
read	يقرأ	read	read
ride	يركب (دراجة / حيوان)	rode	ridden
ring	يرن	rang	rung
run	يجري	ran	run
say	يقول	said	said
see	يرى	saw	seen
send	يرسل	sent	sent
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
spend	يقضى (وقت) - ينفق (مال)	spent	spent
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
take	يأخذ	took	taken
tell	يخبر	told	told
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
wake	يستيقظ	woke	woken
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
win	يفوز	won	won
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Bit by Bit

كتاب في اللغة الإنجليزية



الصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

NEW
Hello! 2023

كراسة تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

دار غزة



للمطبوع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

FIRST
TERM

1

ST
PREP

Unit 1 My family and me

Lessons 1 & 2



كَلَامُنْ / كلاهما	يُسَمَّى
اختبار قصير	لعبة الشطرنج
أم	فرقة موسيقية
أب	أحد الوالدين
يوم ميلاد	رياضة
مفضل	حقيقي
يصفق	مؤنث / أنثى
يلعب / يعزف	طبلة
أخ	ابنة
جد	توأم
أخت	مقابلة شخصية
مفكرة يومية - يوميات	عمة / خالة
هواية	مذكر / ذكر
عم / خال	يبلغ من العمر
مختلف	ابن
ابن / ابنة (العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة)	جدة
	محاوِر
أبناء الأحفاد	فخور
	الجد الأكبر
مباراة كرة قدم	رائع / عظيم
آلات موسيقية	عمل تطوعي

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa and Sherif are talking about Mustafa's father.

Sherif : Hello, Mustafa. Can I ask you a question?

Mustafa : ①

Sherif : What does ② ?

Mustafa : My father is a doctor.

Sherif : Where does ③ ?

Mustafa : He works in a hospital in Alexandria.

Sherif : How does he go there?

Mustafa : ④ by train.

Sherif : When does he come back?

Mustafa : He comes back ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother's sister is my

- a** grandmother **b** sister **c** aunt **d** daughter

2. Aliaa always plays with her They are really friendly.

- a** parks **b** stories **c** matches **d** cousins

3. This is my His name is Mustafa.

- a** sister **b** son **c** daughter **d** aunt

4. Muhammad likes to do work. He likes helping people.

- a** voluntary **b** bad **c** unimportant **d** angry

5. Imad loves playing the drums in a

- a** cinema **b** bank **c** quiz **d** band

6. All Egyptians are of Muhammad Salah.

- a** kind **b** proud **c** bad **d** angry

7. My favourite hobby is playing
a cheese **b** chase **c** chess **d** check
8. I never music.
a build **b** play **c** listen **d** go
9. Your is your mother or father's father.
a son **b** brother **c** grandfather **d** uncle
10. Menna and Mariam are sisters who are the same age. They are
a twins **b** two **c** twice **d** teams
11. This book belongs to me. It's
a her **b** my **c** me **d** mine
12. Soad is my aunt. is a nurse.
a She **b** He **c** I **d** You
13. What is father's name?
a yours **b** he **c** you **d** your
14. Why didn't the girls clean room?
a there **b** their **c** them **d** they
15. That bag belongs to Ali. It's
a his **b** him **c** he **d** her

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- This isn't my pen. It's your. (.....)
- 2- Ahmed has a new car. She is happy. (.....)
- 3- Please, lend me yours camera. (.....)
- 4- My bag is blue, but Salah is red. (.....)
- 5- The girls always help there mother. (.....)
- 6- Tarek is a doctor. He's father is a doctor, too. (.....)
- 7- A: Who house is that? B: It's ours. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Your grandfather"

Handwriting practice lines for the dictation exercise.



كتاب في اللغة الإنجليزية

احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات

Lessons

3

&

4



مطار	كم مدة...؟
مكالمة فيديو	محل
يتواصل	أيضاً
مرتفع	أو
حزين	مدينة [كبيرة]
يضيف	مغامرة
على حق	غرفة بأعلى المنزل
خبر	جبل
زهرة	يتيم
متنزه	ماعز
جبن	قمة / أعلى الشئ
صغير في السن	مستشفى
مصرف / (بنك)	يبقى / يقيم
شاطئ	

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Alaa to music every day.
☐ a listen ☐ b listens ☐ c listening ☐ d to listen
- Mr Muhammad is a teacher. He us English.
☐ a teaches ☐ b teach ☐ c teaching ☐ d are teaching
- Adam work at a school?
☐ a Do ☐ b Has ☐ c Is ☐ d Does
- We've got boxes of old clothes in the
☐ a kettle ☐ b attic ☐ c fridge ☐ d oven
- Our trip to the mountain was an interesting
☐ a picture ☐ b meal ☐ c match ☐ d adventure
- The children travelled to Alex and enjoyed playing on the
☐ a peach ☐ b beach ☐ c sky ☐ d cloud
- It's very difficult to climb up this
☐ a mountain ☐ b river ☐ c cloud ☐ d sky
- What time do you come from school?
☐ a to home ☐ b in home ☐ c home ☐ d at home
- I with many friends on Facebook.
☐ a communicate ☐ b travel ☐ c prefer ☐ d visit
- Sara her mother at home.
☐ a helps always ☐ b always help ☐ c always helps ☐ d help always
- I like listening to pop music.
☐ a doesn't ☐ b does ☐ c am not ☐ d don't
- My plane leaves from Cairo at 6:00 pm.
☐ a station ☐ b playground ☐ c airport ☐ d attic
- A child with no mother or father is a/an
☐ a parent ☐ b orphan ☐ c cousin ☐ d boy

14. Don't much salt; it isn't healthy.

a add

b play

c move

d come

15. How were the climbers able to get to the of the mountain?

a type

b top

c tap

d tape

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Does he visits his aunt every week? (.....)

2- I doesn't play football on Mondays. (.....)

3- How many wheels do a car have? (.....)

4- Where are you live, Mr Hossam? (.....)

5- He always fails an exam. He's very clever. (.....)

6- He drink tea every day. (.....)

7- Habiba never come home late. (.....)

3 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"A story you enjoyed reading"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

5

6



صعب	عُمر
قريب	الألعاب الأولمبية
يحب	يحقّق/ينجز
أفضل/أول	شجرة العائلة
يوازن	حلم
مشغول/مزدحم	يذاكر بجد
لاعب رياضي	ينتقل إلى
لعبة الجمباز	صحي
أفضل صديق	يبقى قوي
مدينة دمياط	لاعبة جمباز
ألعاب القوى	يتدرب
مادة الفيزياء	فريق
الرياضيات	حمام سباحة

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Eyad and Ramy are talking about Ramy's family.

Eyad : Do you have brothers, Ramy?

Ramy : Yes, I ① two brothers.

Eyad : What ② ?

Ramy : Magid and Ziad.

Eyad : How old are they?

Ramy : They are 13 years old. They are ③

Eyad : What is your father?

Ramy : He is a ④ He works at our school.

Eyad : What is your ⑤ ?

Ramy : She's a nurse.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My favourite sport is

- a** gymnastics **b** geography **c** adventure **d** mountain

2. I can't meet Mr Ahmed today. I'm too

- a** empty **b** free **c** busy **d** careful

3. Good players usually for many hours.

- a** rain **b** fly **c** teach **d** train

4. Adel goes to the swimming every week.

- a** pool **b** ball **c** boat **d** pass

5. Ali studies to get high marks.

- a** hardly **b** hard **c** friendly **d** carelessly

6. is the study of numbers.

- a** Physics **b** Athletics **c** Mathematics **d** Economics

7. There are eleven players in a football

- a** team **b** band **c** group **d** fan

8. Hossam is my friend.

- a** test **b** least **c** best **d** better

9. I hope you will your goals.

- a** achieve **b** fail **c** lose **d** train

10. A is a person who does gymnastics.

- a** trainer **b** gymnast **c** footballer **d** coach

3 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Your father"

Unit 2 It's my favourite subject

Lessons 1 & 2



الغة العربية	أحياناً
مزدحم/ مشغول	التربية الموسيقية
اللغة الإنجليزية	مادة الرياضيات
اختلاف	جدول الحصص
فترة استراحة	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)
طريقة	دائماً
رُبَّ	العالم
نصف	التربية الدينية
يومي	جرس
طريق	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)
الطيران	ناظر المدرسة
رحلة قصيرة	ملعب/ فناء
مادة الفن المسرحي	عادة
غالباً	إبداً
الاقتصاد المنزلي	نموذجي (معتاد)
مادة العلوم	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية
مكتبة (للقرأة واستعارة الكتب)	مادة الحاسب الآلي
	مادة التربية البدنية (الرياضية)

Homework

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amal and Injy are talking about the timetable.

Amal : Hi, Injy! How are you?

Injy : Hi, Amal! I'm fine. What do you think of the new ① _____?

Amal : I like the new timetable. ② _____ your favourite day, Injy?

Injy : I like Thursday.

Amal : What ③ _____ have you got on this day?

Injy : We have got social studies first, then we have got English and science.

Amal : Today, ④ _____ after break. I love maths!

Injy : When have we got Drama?

Amal : ⑤ _____ on Tuesday.

Injy : It's time for the next lesson now! See you later!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aya _____ hard for her exams.

a studies always

b always study

c often study

d always studies

2. At the end of the day at school, the _____ rings.

a ball

b bill

c pole

d bell

3. We learn about cooking in _____ economics.

a home

b hall

c house

d room

4. We use numbers in _____ lessons.

a drama

b music

c maths

d social studies

5. My father _____ gives me good advice.

a no

b always

c don't

d not

6. The students play football in the _____ at school.
☐ a playground ☐ b zoo ☐ c museum ☐ d library
7. At school, we _____ eight lessons a day.
☐ a make ☐ b do ☐ c have ☐ d play
8. Hossam and Saber _____ do bad things.
☐ a don't ☐ b doesn't ☐ c aren't ☐ d hasn't
9. We draw and paint pictures in _____ lessons.
☐ a English ☐ b drama ☐ c maths ☐ d art
10. They play the guitar in _____ lessons.
☐ a science ☐ b music ☐ c maths ☐ d art
11. Friday is a _____ day for me for a holiday.
☐ a careless ☐ b helpful ☐ c typical ☐ d kind
12. You can borrow books from the _____.
☐ a museum ☐ b library ☐ c cinema ☐ d zoo
13. A: How _____ do you get up at 5 o'clock? B: Never.
☐ a old ☐ b many ☐ c long ☐ d often
14. _____ Mohamed Salah play well?
☐ a Do ☐ b Has ☐ c Is ☐ d Does
15. My dad always _____ me to school.
☐ a makes ☐ b rides ☐ c drives ☐ d runs

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- Tamer always comes late. He comes early every day. (_____)
- 2- Khalid always is polite. (_____)
- 3- Ali comes sometimes home at 6. (_____)
- 4- What are you know about computers? (_____)
- 5- Alaa didn't watch TV when he has exams. (_____)

6- How old do you go to the cinema? (-----)

7- Does you like pizza? - No, I don't. (-----)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Your school day"



قارب صغير خفيف	النقل والمواصلات
جاكيت	زحافة جليد
مقلمة	سريع
دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)	هام
دفتر / كراس	جانب - ناحية
يتبع	جليد
منشفة (فوطه)	يقود دراجة
رخيص	دراجة (هوائية)
قميص	ممتع
ملك من...؟	شكل
دولة أوغندا	قرية
الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	صحى
مرة أخرى	خطير
قبعة	بالخارج
تمطر	قواعد مدرسية
آمن	مكتب
كم طول (المدة الزمنية)....؟	زى مدرسى
	جمل

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam and Fatma are talking about things in the classroom.

Mariam : Hi, Fatma.

Fatma : Hi, Mariam. Is this ① _____ ?

Mariam : No, it's Judy's pen. She always uses it.

Fatma : OK. ② _____ bag is this?

Mariam : It's Huda's bag.

Fatma : No, it's not Huda's bag. ③ _____ bag is red. This bag is blue.

Mariam : Oh, OK. Then it's Malak's bag.

Fatma : There's a book on the desk. Is that ④ _____ book?

Mariam : No, it's the ⑤ _____. All teachers use that book.

Fatma : Ah, I know whose ruler this is. It has Azza's names on it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The plane is a fast form of _____.

- a** transport **b** gymnastics **c** journey **d** canoe

2. I need to make a _____ phone call.

- a** dark **b** terrible **c** quick **d** slow

3. Those are my _____ bicycles. They are theirs.

- a** friends' **b** friend's **c** friends **d** friend

4. An _____ break is important for you.

- a** hours **b** hour **c** hours' **d** hour's

5. Some students in the USA go to school on _____.

- a** radios **b** showers **c** mobiles **d** snowmobiles

6. In Africa, some students go to school in a _____.

- a** can **b** canoe **c** cone **d** cane

7. I like watching films. It's _____.

- a** sunny **b** fan **c** fun **d** fall

8. Many children in Egypt _____ to school.

- a** cycle **b** circle **c** throw **d** hear

9. My uncle is my _____ brother.
☐ a mother ☐ b mothers ☐ c mother's ☐ d mothers'
10. What is your _____ name?
☐ a father's ☐ b fathers ☐ c father ☐ d fathers'
11. _____ car is this?
☐ a Who is ☐ b Who's ☐ c Who ☐ d Whose
12. My school _____ is a red shirt and black trousers.
☐ a uniform ☐ b turn ☐ c unit ☐ d form
13. I like riding my _____ at the nearby park.
☐ a kite ☐ b bike ☐ c cake ☐ d break
14. All students must follow the school _____.
☐ a roles ☐ b rooms ☐ c rules ☐ d rulers
15. He _____ his new clothes and went out.
☐ a wore ☐ b played ☐ c were ☐ d put

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- Ola's and Leila's mother is a doctor. (-----)
- 2- Maher and Nour's fathers are engineers. (-----)
- 3- I asked for a three week's holiday. (-----)
- 4- He works in a girls school. (-----)
- 6- Osama house is very big. (-----)
- 6- Dinas father is a teacher. (-----)
- 7- The childrens' clothes are in the bag. (-----)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"How you go to school"

Lessons

5

6



عَلَّمَ	دُش
أَيْضًا	جيد في
نهاية	مشروع
وجبة العشاء	مادة دراسية
فأرة الكمبيوتر	مفضل
دولة إنجلترا	فقط
دولة إسكتلندا	حقًا
يذهب للتسوق	مدينة الغردقة
لغة	في الفراش
إلى حد ما/إلى حد كبير	ياخذ دُش
صيحة للتعبير عن الفرحة	أفضل الأمنيات
(مادة) اللغة الفرنسية	إنها المفضلة لدى
الصف الأول الإعدادي	سيئ (ضعيف المستوى) في
في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amira is feeling tired.

Amira : I'm feeling tired.

Noha : ① sleep well last night?

Amira : No, I didn't. I was doing the maths ②

Noha : Oh! It's a difficult one.

Amira : ③ you often stay up late?

Noha : No, ④

Amira : OK! ⑤ we got maths?

Noha : It's after break.

Amira : So, let's go to our classroom.

Noha : OK.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mustafa goes to school every day. He is in one.

- a** preparatory **b** mark **c** degree **d** greed

2. A: I have a test today.

B: Best

- a** dishes **b** showers **c** flashes **d** wishes

3. A: What is your favourite ?

B: Maths.

- a** sport **b** subject **c** food **d** hobby

4. It's too hot. I want to have a

- a** sure **b** shore **c** shower **d** share

5. I watched the film and liked its very much.

- a** end **b** scenery **c** weekend **d** view

6. I like cheese. It's my food.

- a** favour **b** quite **c** bad **d** favourite

7. I don't _____ shopping. I buy things online.

- a** take **b** go **c** do **d** give

8. There's a _____ in the playground of our school. It has three colours.

- a** film **b** flag **c** hall **d** mall

9. Do you work _____ computers?

- a** about **b** to **c** with **d** over

10. This new book is _____ good.

- a** quit **b** quick **c** quiet **d** quite

3 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

“Your favourite school subjects”

This image shows a single sheet of white paper designed for primary school students. It features ten horizontal dashed lines spaced evenly down the page. On the left side, there are two vertical solid lines that create a narrow margin. The paper appears to be part of a binder or folder, as evidenced by the punched holes along the right edge. There is no handwriting or other markings on the page.

Test on Units 1 & 2

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب.

- The speaker lives in
a Cairo **b** Alexandria **c** Fayoum **d** Minia
- The speaker's father is a/ an
a driver **b** engineer **c** teacher **d** doctor
- The speaker has a family.
a happy **b** sad **c** bad **d** big
- The speaker lives in a
a village **b** city **c** hotel **d** lake

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samy is asking Farid about the school timetable.

Samy : Good morning, Farid. What subjects have we got today?

Farid : We have ①

Samy : Who is our Arabic teacher?

Farid : ②

Samy : What have we got after Arabic?

Farid : After Arabic, we have ③

Samy : Are you good ④ ?

Farid : I'm quite good at it.

Samy : When have ⑤ ?

Farid : Break is after computer studies.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amgad. I have moved to a new school in Tanta. I miss my old friends in Giza. I'm lucky because the school is near to my new house. It

takes about five minutes from home. It's a big one and my class has three computers and four tablets to use them. We have a big playground to play football and basketball. My school starts tomorrow, so I need to sleep early and get ready for it.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did they play football?

2. Where is Amgad's new school?

3. Why is Amgad lucky?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "one" refers to Amgad's

- a** home **b** friend **c** school **d** city

5. Amgad takes time to go to his school.

- a** more **b** much **c** a lot of **d** little

6. Amgad used to live in

- a** Tanta **b** Giza **c** Alexandria **d** Cairo

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cairo and Alexandria are

- a** hotels **b** streets **c** cities **d** shops

2. Tourists sometimes visit deserts and mountains.

- a** ride **b** drive **c** clean **d** climb

3. Sandy likes to draw in her class.

- a** music **b** art **c** drama **d** maths

4. They TV at night.

- a** watches **b** watch sometimes
c watching **d** sometimes watch

Test

5. This is _____ new school bag.
a Omnia **b** Omnias **c** Omnia's **d** Omnia'
6. I'd like to _____ shopping with my mum.
a do **b** go **c** play **d** drive
7. He took a taxi to _____ his train on time.
a miss **b** feel **c** lose **d** catch
8. _____ the players playing well?
a Is **b** Was **c** Are **d** Have
9. Salma spends a lot of time talking _____ the phone.
a in **b** at **c** by **d** on
10. My English teacher is _____ Shereen.
a called **b** cooled **c** killed **d** sailed

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I want mine books. (_____)
2. Hamdy helps always his father. (_____)
3. Alis car is very fast. (_____)
4. They go never to school on Friday. (_____)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"What your favourite school subject is"

Unit 3 Different people

Lessons

1

&

2



فقير	عطوف
رمادى اللون	شعر مجعد
وشاح (طرحة)	شارب (شنب)
ضعيف	نظارة
ناعم	يحرز / يسجل (اهداف / نقاط)
ودود	شعر قصير
غير ودود	ملكة
لاعب كرة قدم	شعر طويل
صغير الطائر	غنى
حياة عادية	يقفز
بلطف	نجم رياضى
هدية	سمات / صفات
ابتسامة / يبتسم	شعر غير مجعد
قارة أوروبا	شعر داكن
لحية (شعر الذقن والوجه)	يحمل
شعر اشقر	غير عطوف
معجب / مشجع	مشهور
ذراع	هدف (فى مباراة)
شخص سريع الجرى	قوى
	العب الفيديو

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Karim is talking to Ashraf about his best friend.

Karim : What is this photo, Ashraf?

Ashraf : It is a photo of my best friend.

Karim : What does he ①

Ashraf : He is tall with ②

Karim : Does he do sport?

Ashraf : ③

Karim : ④

Ashraf : He plays tennis.

Karim : Is he the same age as you?

Ashraf : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My favourite is Ronaldo. He wears the No. 7 T-shirt.

- ☐ a farmer ☐ b sports star ☐ c nurse ☐ d vet

2. My grandfather has got a on his mouth.

- ☐ a moustache ☐ b goal ☐ c shirt ☐ d skin

3. Shaza is very She gives her brothers her toys.

- ☐ a tall ☐ b kind ☐ c bad ☐ d angry

4. **A:** Has your father got a car? **B:** Yes, he

- ☐ a have ☐ b can ☐ c is ☐ d has

5. Mr Amin wears when he reads a book.

- ☐ a glass ☐ b a glass ☐ c glasses ☐ d class

6. She's got long hair.

- ☐ a band ☐ b blond ☐ c pond ☐ d fond

7. My father has got a on his face.

- ☐ a beard ☐ b board ☐ c bread ☐ d broad

8. When I meet my friends, I always have a big

- ☐ a smell ☐ b sale ☐ c smile ☐ d small

9. Al-Ahly has got a lot of _____ all over Egypt.
☐ a fans ☐ b diaries ☐ c presents ☐ d metres
10. The Cairo _____ is the tallest building in Cairo.
☐ a Tour ☐ b Tower ☐ c Tyre ☐ d Tap
11. Salah is a good player. He _____ a lot of goals.
☐ a talks ☐ b jumps ☐ c paints ☐ d scores
12. I can play football, but I _____ play tennis.
☐ a am ☐ b can't ☐ c have ☐ d is
13. Mr Muhammad _____ speak English. He travels to London a lot.
☐ a can ☐ b can't ☐ c have ☐ d has
14. Mustafa _____ got long hair.
☐ a is ☐ b was ☐ c has ☐ d does
15. You _____ drive a car. You are too young.
☐ a are ☐ b have ☐ c can ☐ d can't

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- Have your teacher got a beard? (-----)
- 2- Dina haven't got glasses. (-----)
- 3- My sister has getting short, curly hair. (-----)
- 4- People can smoke in hospitals. (-----)
- 5- Can you swimming across this river? (-----)
- 6- Hesham has get a toy car. (-----)
- 7- He is a fast runner. He can't run fast. (-----)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"A famous sports star"

Lesson

3



متصل بالإنترنت	منشور في مدونة
مادة العلوم	يوميات
يذهب للسباحة	ممل
قصة	الرسم
مرتان	تعلم
يرسم بالألوان	كل شيء عن
يدرس مادة الرياضيات	السباحة
يرسم	بانتظام
موقع على الإنترنت	مادة الرياضيات
ينظر إلى	أحسننا!
الرسم بالألوان	يتعلم عن
مادة التاريخ	جيد / سوء في
الرسم بالقلم الرصاص / الجاف	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
يعمل الواجب المنزلي	كيف تعمل الأشياء

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you like _____ to the cinema, Doha?
 a go b going c went d to going
- I go to the club _____ a week.
 a two b second c twice d first
- The film is _____. I don't like it.
 a interesting b cheap c nice d boring
- I'm fond of colours; I like _____.
 a painting b playing c pointing d planning
- I visit my grandparents _____.
 a really b regularly c nearly d rarely
- I have a _____ which I write on every day.
 a clock b team c playground d blog
- The internet has got many useful _____.
 a websites b seats c windows d teams
- _____ English is not very easy.
 a Playing b Scoring c Watching d Learning
- I can send text messages _____.
 a online b line c outline d in line

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- They doesn't like reading stories. (_____)
- I love sports, but I like playing tennis. (_____)
- Do Ayman like swimming? (_____)
- The students enjoy play in the playground. (_____)
- I like send emails to my friends. (_____)

Lessons 4, 5 & 6



ماهر	اختلاف
متعة - شخص او شئ مسلي	الريف
متأخر	قرار
مغامرة	بنت يتيمة
كرسي متحرك	حوض (سباحة)
فكاهي / مضحك	مغا / سوتا
غريب	مخيف / مرعوب
يُسمى / يُدعى	يصيح
رائع / بارد	المظهر
خطير	شجاع
خائف / مرعوب	شخصية
عاقِل / رزين	غاضب
شخصية (في كتاب / فيلم)	مثير
مشغول	عاصفة
جملون	ارض العجائب
شخص	شيق
رئيسي / أساسي	لطيف
مهم	عينان بنية اللون
يفتح	

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer invites Yara to his birthday party.

Tamer : Hello! Yara.

Yara : Hello! Tamer.

Tamer : I invite you to my birthday party tonight.

Yara : OK! ① to meet our friends.

Tamer : Sure. All of them are coming. Do you know my new friend Hanad?

Yara : No. What does she ② ?

Tamer : She has ③ short, curly hair.

Yara : ④ ?

Tamer : She is kind and funny.

Yara : Great! ⑤ meet her.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Abdullah is always He never comes on time.

a clever

b late

c nice

d early

2. The man can't walk, so he uses a

a tyre

b wheel

c wheelchair

d whale

3. This is my daughter. She is Mona.

a calls

b to calling

c call

d called

4. Children mustn't play with matches. It is

a dangerous

b brave

c famous

d safe

5. Gamil and Fady always play

a other

b another

c together

d brother

6. Eman and I always play games at the weekend.

a angry

b interesting

c busy

d frightened

7. The girl saw a snake. It was
☐ a scared ☐ b poor ☐ c brave ☐ d scary
8. A polite boy doesn't at his friends.
☐ a shout ☐ b show ☐ c shake ☐ d share
9. Don't be ; I'll buy you another toy.
☐ a cool ☐ b hungry ☐ c clever ☐ d angry
10. The main in that film is really brave.
☐ a chef ☐ b chart ☐ c character ☐ d chair
11. She's nice; she's got a good
☐ a appearance ☐ b discovery ☐ c fun ☐ d danger
12. A/An student does his / her homework well.
☐ a angry ☐ b clever ☐ c late ☐ d strange
13. I like Mr Ihab; he's very
☐ a strange ☐ b scary ☐ c sensible ☐ d unkind
14. All the neighbours help Ola, she's a/an girl.
☐ a orphan ☐ b bad ☐ c angry ☐ d dangerous
15. I go to the swimming every Friday.
☐ a ball ☐ b pool ☐ c bell ☐ d bill

3 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"The character you like best in a story"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 4 We're using technology

Lessons 1 & 2



فأرة الكمبيوتر (ماوس)	التكنولوجيا
بجوار	أشياء
خلف	معلومات
طابعة	قريب من
موقع على الإنترنت	أمام
سبورة بيضاء	تحت
صورة سيلفي	أيقونة / رمز
مكالمة فيديو	حديث / معاصر
يشحن	قطعة شطرنج
يطبع	زميل الفصل
كمبيوتر محمول	يضغط على زر / نقرة
هاتف جوال	رسالة نصية
مشغل ملفات الصوت	نموذج بلاستيكي
شاحن الهاتف	كرسي
طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	كمبيوتر لوحي (تابليت)
عبر الأنترنت / متصل بالإنترنت	يضغط يرفق "على أيقونة"

Verbs & Nouns

يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

يطبخ الواجب المنزلي

يلعب الشطرنج

يقوم بعمل واجب الحاسب الآلي

تصنع كعكة

يشحن الهاتف

يفوز بمباراة

يجري مكالمة فيديو

يلتقط صورة سيلفي

يرسل (صورة / رسالة نصية)

يصنع نموذج

يصمم أيقونة

ينقر أيقونة «بالموس»

يتصفح موقع الإنترنت

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sally is describing her new classroom to her father.

Father : Welcome back, dear. How was your day at school?

Sally : It was very ① The school is very good.

Father : How about your classroom?

Sally : The classroom is so modern. It has ② in it.

Father : How many computers are ③ ?

Sally : It has seven computers.

Father : ④ ?

Sally : Yes, there are three tablets.

Father : Do you like your school?

Sally : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is a new story at present.

- a** write **b** writing **c** wrote **d** writes

2. The printer is to the laptop.

- a** in front **b** under **c** behind **d** next

3. We can buy books online on this

- a** website **b** selfie **c** charger **d** diary

4. I took a and posted it on Facebook.

- a** self **b** myself **c** selfie **d** safe

5. There a big whiteboard in our classroom.

- a** am **b** is **c** are **d** does

6. Tap the icon on the screen of the to send the message.

- a** table **b** tape **c** tap **d** tablet

7. I can listen to songs on my MP3

- a** printer **b** player **c** user **d** charger

8. We use 3D to make models.

- a** players **b** painters **c** printers **d** users

9. Leila wants to _____ her tablet; the battery is only 5%.
a charge **b** click **c** print **d** design
10. My father is an engineer. He _____ a new library at the moment.
a build **b** builds **c** building **d** is building
11. My sister is making a video _____.
a call **b** cool **c** mall **d** bell
12. Mr Muhammad asked his student to write a word on the _____.
a mouse **b** charger **c** whiteboard **d** printer
13. They're _____ to music now.
a listen **b** listened **c** listens **d** listening
14. There _____ a lot of photos on the internet.
a are **b** is **c** was **d** has
15. _____ there any tomatoes in the bag?
a Is **b** Was **c** Are **d** Have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- There are some water in the glass. (_____)
- 2- He isn't study at present. (_____)
- 3- I read a story now. (_____)
- 4- There is many people in our family. (_____)
- 5- Someone use my computer at the moment. (_____)
- 6- There aren't some pupils in the classroom. (_____)
- 7- The students are doing the test yesterday. (_____)
- 8- There are some rice in the kitchen. (_____)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Technology"

Lessons

3

4



هواية	في الخارج / خارج
مكالمة فيديو	راقصة
فترة راحة (فسخة) / يكسر	برنامج
متشابه	قاموس
يعطي نصيحة	مشمس
محادثة	حذاء اسود
زهرة	متجر - محل
طائر	حديقة
السماء	يلوح بيده
حيوان	يمثل بالإشارة
الغُقاب (طائر جارج)	يخمن
حشرة	لديه هواية
زي مدرسي	ألعاب الفيديو
يرفق يده	الطبيعة
	يدون ملاحظات
يطير طائرة ورقية	يحتاج مساعدة

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramzy is talking to his friend Karim about people in the garden.

Ramzy : What are those boys doing there?

Karim : They are 1

Ramzy : Do you know how to fly a kite?

Karim : No, but my friend Samy 2
how to fly a kite tomorrow.

Ramzy : 3 ?

Karim : They're playing football?

Ramzy : 4 ?

Karim : No, my brother isn't playing with them.

Ramzy : Is your mum preparing lunch now?

Karim : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. you feeling well at present?

- a** Is **b** Have **c** Are **d** Do

2. It's hot, I like to go for a walk.

- a** inside **b** side **c** outside **d** side

3. The famous man turned and to his fans with a smile.

- a** guessed **b** waved **c** boiled **d** stayed

4. Sama cooking dinner now?

- a** Has **b** Will **c** Is **d** Are

5. Reading is my favourite

- a** hobby **b** note **c** hope **d** advice

6. Ali is really clever. He can the meanings of new words easily.

- a** break **b** guess **c** call **d** phone

7. There were some in the old attic.

- a** beaches **b** dancers **c** gardens **d** insects

8. I watched a _____ about healthy food yesterday.
☐ programme ☐ hobby ☐ break ☐ shop
9. The weather today is warm and _____.
☐ funny ☐ snowy ☐ sunny ☐ wavy
10. I use a/an _____ to learn about the meanings of new words.
☐ selfie ☐ dictionary ☐ icon ☐ diary
11. Who _____ for you outside now?
☐ was waiting ☐ waited ☐ wait ☐ is waiting
12. You can talk with your classmate when you are at _____.
☐ break ☐ plate ☐ class ☐ lesson
13. No, I _____ reading any books at this moment.
☐ am ☐ am not ☐ was ☐ will
14. The family went on a picnic to enjoy _____.
☐ culture ☐ sky ☐ break ☐ nature
15. Emad _____ at present. He's looking for a job.
☐ isn't working ☐ won't work ☐ is working ☐ works

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- I'm listening to songs now. I don't have an MP3 player. (_____)
- 2- Does Hala cleaning the house at the moment? (_____)
- 3- A: What were they doing?
 B: They're watching TV. (_____)
- 4- Yasser doesn't playing chess at present. (_____)
- 5- I is watching a new film on TV now. (_____)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Technology in your school"

Lessons

5 & 6



سرى / سر	التكنولوجيا
يشغل (جهاز)	تعليمات
يغلى «للماء»	آمن
كيس شاي	ياتى للمنزل
سكر	كلمة المرور
يبقى آمناً	شخصي
رقم الهاتف	أحد الوالدين
أيقونة «إرسال»	يتصل بالانترنت
أيقونة الرسائل	البقية
آيس كريم	ملصق
غلاية	عنوان (رئيسي)
فنجان / كأس	ملون
مشروب شعبى (محبوب)	نمط الخط (بونط)
يكون صداقات مع	يحافظ على ... سرى
يبدو شيئاً	قلق بشأن

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman is making friends online.

Eman : Hello! Randa.

Randa : Hello! Eman. What ① on the internet?

Eman : I'm talking to a new friend.

Randa : Be careful! Don't ② with people you don't know online.

Eman : You're right.

Randa : Always ③ your passwords secret.

Eman : OK! Can I send her a photo?

Randa : No, ④ send photos to people you don't know.

Eman : Thanks for your ⑤ , Randa.

Randa : You're welcome.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To make tea, first, some water.

a turn

b boil

c play

d burn

2. Mr Ali always gives us clear on the homework.

a structures

b cultures

c instructions

d natures

3. Put some water in a to make tea.

a cattle

b spoon

c pan

d kettle

4. It's too dark. Please, turn the light

a on

b off

c to

d into

5. I can't tell you my card number. It's

a secret

b famous

c late

d happy

6. You shouldn't tell people you don't know your _____ information.
a reason **b** personal **c** season **d** person
7. _____ to keep safe online.
a To try **b** Trying **c** Try **d** Tried
8. _____ play with knives. It's dangerous.
a Doesn't **b** Not **c** Didn't **d** Never
9. My brother is ill and my mother is worried _____ him.
a on **b** of **c** about **d** up
10. My grandfather drinks his coffee without _____.
a sugar **b** café **c** icon **d** flower
11. Always _____ polite to other people.
a to be **b** be **c** being **d** to being
12. I can't open the mobile; I don't know the _____.
a word **b** passport **c** password **d** passage
13. _____ watch that film. It's boring.
a Always **b** Don't **c** Haven't **d** Aren't
14. The police work hard to make people _____.
a safe **b** silly **c** tasty **d** heavy



كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات

Test on Units 3 & 4

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب.

- The speaker is talking about his / her
 a technology b house c street d classroom
- There are computers in the place.
 a two b four c three d five
- The place is
 a small b old c modern d clean
- The speaker's like the place.
 a friends b family c brothers d sisters

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nour and Walid are talking about their new school.

Nour : Hello, Walid. What do you think of our new school?

Walid : Hello, Nour. 1

Nour : There are many 2 in the class.

Walid : Yes, they help us to use technology.

Nour : What 3 ?

Walid : English is great; the teacher of English is very friendly.

Nour : What 4 ?

Walid : Computer science is also interesting.

Nour : I want to know how to use the tablet.

Walid : 5 I can help you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our teacher, Mr Fathy asked us to do research on technology. I had a group of four students to finish it. I said that we could write about tablets,

computers and other technological things. The group took some pictures in front of the computers and some other selfies next to the tablets and did the research. Our teacher was very surprised that we wrote about things that were really in our school. We won the first prize.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Mr Fathy ask the class to do?

2. What did the group write about?

3. How was the research?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to _____.

- a** the class **b** the school **c** the group **d** the research

5. The group took some _____.

- a** cameras **b** screens **c** selfies **d** books

6. The group won the _____ prize.

- a** last **b** first **c** second **d** third

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My phone isn't working; I need a _____.

- a** cattle **b** charger **c** printer **d** kettle

2. Salma likes to take _____ of herself.

- a** tablets **b** mobiles **c** selfies **d** songs

3. _____ speak loudly in the library, Amir!

- a** Don't **b** Not **c** Do **d** Often

4. My aunt is a doctor. Now she _____ in a big hospital.

- a** work **b** working **c** is working **d** worked

5. Rofaida is sitting next _____ her best friend at school.
☐ a under ☐ b at ☐ c on ☐ d to
6. I saw some _____ in my grandfather's garden.
☐ a icons ☐ b insects ☐ c websites ☐ d tablets
7. My mother gave me some _____ on how to use my computer.
☐ a instructions ☐ b letters ☐ c pens ☐ d shoes
8. Don't tell other people your _____.
☐ a poster ☐ b game ☐ c bag ☐ d password
9. There _____ a new tablet on the desk.
☐ a were ☐ b are ☐ c is ☐ d am
10. We need to _____ water before we make tea.
☐ a boil ☐ b turn ☐ c play ☐ d burn

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Shady watch TV at the moment. (-----)
2. Never coming to school late. (-----)
3. Is there any tablets in your class? (-----)
4. Being good to your classmates. (-----)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"The importance of the internet"

Unit 5 We're using technology

Lessons

1

&

2



شاطئ	الطقس
دافئ	دولة المغرب
صحراء	قلعة من الرمال
جبل	نزهة خلوية
غابة كبيرة	خريطة
بحيرة	متحف
رائع	صخر
نهر	صدى صوت
غابة استوائية / ادغال	فندق
بحر	خفافش
عطلة / إجازة	خيمة
مرعوب	لذيذ
واحة سيوة	دور / يلف
شلال	الصحراء الكبرى
	كهف
	رمل

Verbs & Nouns

يشاهد جمل

يركب دراجة

ينام في خيمة

يلعب ألعاب

يسبح في البحر/البحيرة

ياكل طعاماً لذيذاً

يزور أسرة

يقوم بنزهة خلوية

يبنى قلعة رملية

يدخل كهفا

يتسلق جبل

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'd like to go to the _____ and swim in the sea.
 a café b forest c beach d jungle
2. There is a lot of _____ in deserts.
 a sand b salt c water d rain
3. Mona likes Friday because it is a _____.
 a river b desert c holiday d hotel
4. When I went to the Pyramids, I _____ a camel.
 a ride b rides c riding d rode
5. There are a lot of trees in a _____.
 a desert b forest c sea d river
6. It's sunny and the _____ is fine.
 a feather b time c colour d weather
7. A _____ is a big hole in the side of a mountain.
 a cave b valley c wave d river
8. I think this is a good place where we can put up our _____.
 a flat b break c train d tent
9. _____ climbing is very difficult.
 a River b Sky c Mountain d Desert
10. When I went to El Fayoum, I visited Wadi El Rayan _____.
 a classes b water sports c water taps d waterfalls
11. _____ she watch TV yesterday?
 a Does b Did c Was d Is
12. Mr Ahmed _____ to England in 2008.
 a travelled b travels c travel d travelling



رائع	يتذكر
ملكة	منظر / مشهد
يقيم	يستمتع بـ
قلعة	فندق
سوق	إعلان
دولفين	ودود / اليف / مستأنس
علم / راية	ثقافة
هدية تذكارية	جولة الركوب (في الملاهي مثلاً)
يشترى	بيتزا
يعسكر / يخيم	رحلات سفاري
حقاً؟	عين أو عجلة لندن
شقة للإجازة	مدرسة لتعليم اللغات
حيوان بحري	
يركب حصان	نشاط في إجازة
ياكل على العشاء	يتناول العشاء
برامج للإجازات	يذهب في إجازة

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists _____ all around the world visit Egypt.
 a for b from c with d by
2. A _____ is a woman who rules a country.
 a queen b king c prince d waiter
3. I learned English in a big _____ school.
 a maths b language c science d art
4. There are _____ of different countries in front of the building.
 a flags b flats c flashes d films
5. This company offers different holiday _____.
 a coats b classes c lessons d courses
6. We go to the _____ to buy vegetables.
 a beach b sea c market d mountain
7. Salma bought a flat with a _____ of the Nile.
 a view b playground c review d revision
8. Mo'men stayed in a _____ for ten days when he visited Hurghada.
 a street b hotel c river d cupboard
9. Ali and I arrived home at the _____ time.
 a some b few c same d many
10. I bought a lot of _____ to remember my holiday in Paris.
 a engineers b queens c castles d souvenirs

2 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"A holiday you spent last week"



قاعدة	مثير
عاصف / شديد الرياح	لافتة
قمامة	صندل
بطاقة بريدية	رأس «بريد إلكتروني»
حيوان القوقع	مقهى
وقت الاستحمام	توقيع
تذكرة	تحية
سلة مهملات	ضوء / مصباح
تي شيرت	متعب
مغلق	الراسل
خاتمة	الفن
شيق	سائح
رياح	بنطلون قصير «شورت»
برج	عشب / حشائش
مسرحية	يمر بـ
يحدث	

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is going to the desert.

Samah : Hello! Mona.

Mona : Hello! Samah.

Samah : Where would you ① to spend your next holiday?

Mona : I ② to go to the desert.

Samah : What ③ you do there?

Mona : We can sleep ④ or go into a cave!

Samah : How ⑤ !

Mona : We can climb hills, too.

Samah : I'd like to join you.

Mona : OK! It'll be a nice holiday.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a small, slow insect.

a snack

b snail

c snow

d souvenir

2. A lot of come to Egypt to see the Pyramids.

a towns

b towers

c tours

d tourists

3. All students must follow the school

a rules

b roles

c towers

d tours

4. The football match was I liked it very much.

a boring

b tiring

c interesting

d interested

5. The tourists enjoyed the fine weather and the water.

a dark

b windy

c clear

d polluted

6. We send our friends on their birthday.

a postcards

b tourists

c rules

d tickets

7. The boat trip we went on yesterday was

a strong

b kind

c excited

d exciting

8. We must buy for that wonderful film.

a letters

b tickets

c arts

d lights

9. The says, "Keep out of the grass."

a signature

b sender

c sign

d post

10. Please, put the in this bin.

a litter

b desk

c letter

d team

11. We wear in our foot.

a shorts

b gloves

c earrings

d sandals

Unit 6 Let's eat

Lessons 1 & 2



بسكويت	إناء صغير (طاسة)
سلطة	قرفة (من التوابل)
تين	ثلاجة
مقادير اكلة	تقديم
(مقدار) ملعقة شاي	يغلي - يسلق
حمص (طحينة)	يضيف
مكسرات	يقلب
زيتون	جوز الهند
جبن	دولاب
رقائق بطاطس مقلية	معدات
زبيب	كامل / كل
سكر	رائع / ممتاز
وصفة طهي	طبق (مسطح)
أرز باللبن	سلطانية
فلفل (من الخضروات)	يشارك / يتقاسم
يقرر	ملح

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There is _____ cheese. Don't buy any.
 a many b a lot c enough d any
- You should _____ the sugar in the tea before you drink it.
 a drink b stir c peel d float
- _____ help our bodies to grow strong. They are healthy.
 a Nuts b Crisps c Sweets d salt
- There isn't _____ meat in the kitchen.
 a many b some c any d a
- Mum can cook really well. She knows wonderful _____.
 a plates b lists c areas d recipes
- _____ some milk to the tea to make tea with milk.
 a Start b Add c Stand d Stop
- The _____ is used to keep food cool.
 a bridge b page c passage d fridge
- _____ are my favourite fruit.
 a Eggs b Figs c Bags d Flags
- Some people put _____ on the top of rice pudding.
 a salt b olives c salad d raisins
- There _____ some bread on the table.
 a are b is c aren't d have
- If you _____ water, it will be safer to drink.
 a offer b turn c boil d tidy
- There _____ any nuts in koshari.
 a isn't b can't c are d aren't
- You need some _____ to make rice pudding.
 a ingredients b eggs c salt d teams
- Would you like _____ cake?
 a some b many c lots d a lot

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- There is many sugar in my tea. (_____)
- There isn't some sugar in fish. (_____)
- Any people like to buy old cars. (_____)
- There are too much tomatoes in today's dish. (_____)
- Don't go to the market; we have many food. (_____)

Lessons 3 & 4



كعك	قطعة
نوع	وجبة خفيفة
خضروات	حلو المذاق
حريص	جوعان
عصير فواكه	اسنان
مكرونة	وقت العشاء
بصل	دهون
جسد	وجبة
اناء للطهي	تقليدي
يتذوق/طعم	ينظف
يسبب	يغسل
يلمس	توابل
يجفف	قارة إفريقيا
مشروبات غازية	صحي
وقت الغداء	وزن
مرض	يجرب (طعام مثلاً)

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We _____ throw rubbish in the streets.
☐ a shouldn't ☐ b should ☐ c can ☐ d are
2. Carrots are healthy _____.
☐ a fruits ☐ b cakes ☐ c vegetables ☐ d fish
3. Could you stop _____ noise, please?
☐ a make ☐ b making ☐ c to making ☐ d makes
4. Tourists like to try _____ food in Egypt.
☐ a ingredients ☐ b meat ☐ c nuts ☐ d traditional
5. _____ is one of the main ingredients of koshari.
☐ a Pizza ☐ b Nuts ☐ c Pasta ☐ d Vegetables
6. We can add _____ to food to make it delicious.
☐ a spoons ☐ b spaces ☐ c forks ☐ d spices
7. We _____ fish from the nearby lake.
☐ a bake ☐ b catch ☐ c decide ☐ d go
8. Most people eat three _____ a day.
☐ a meals ☐ b spices ☐ c water ☐ d meat
9. Fruit is a great snack with a sweet _____.
☐ a test ☐ b toast ☐ c taste ☐ d task
10. I eat _____ between meals.
☐ a snakes ☐ b salt ☐ c recipes ☐ d snacks
11. _____ I eat different kinds of food?
☐ a Should ☐ b Am ☐ c Have ☐ d Was
12. We _____ eat healthy food.
☐ a have ☐ b shouldn't ☐ c are ☐ d should
13. _____ drinks are always bad for our health.
☐ a Easy ☐ b Fizzy ☐ c Busy ☐ d Lazy

14. You listen to your teacher.

- a** are **b** should to **c** shouldn't **d** should

15. I'd like to dishes I don't know.

- a** visit **b** do **c** try **d** throw

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- What have I do to learn English? (.....)
- 2- We shouldn't wastes water. (.....)
- 3- Ali should to do his homework before he goes to bed. (.....)
- 4- You should eating vegetables and fruits every day. (.....)
- 5- You should eat too many sweets. (.....)
- 6- The children shouldn't keep quiet; their father is asleep. (.....)



احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات

Lessons

5 & 6



رئيس الطهاة	يتأكد
صحي	جزء
غير صحي	حقيقي
زبون	عصير تفاح
قائمة طعام	نافذة
جرسون / مقدم الطعام	بسبوسة
طماطم	جنيه
حائط	مطعم
يزور	كنافة
التحلية (بعد الطعام)	يامل
بيتزا بالدجاج	طازج
تفضل	يعود إلى
يبدو لذيذ	يشبه
	مقهى / كافيتريا

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed advises Tarek to go to a restaurant.

Ahmed : Hello! Tarek.

Tarek : Hello! Ahmed.

Ahmed : You ① go for a meal in the new restaurant.

Tarek : Is there nice food?

Ahmed : Sure, ② I enjoyed eating there yesterday.

Tarek : Is there ③ fish?

Ahmed : Yes, ④ many kinds of fish.

Tarek : Is there ⑤ ?

Ahmed : Yes, there is delicious rice pudding. I tried it.

Tarek : OK! I'll go and eat there.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look at the and choose your meal.

- ☐ a newspaper ☐ b book ☐ c menu ☐ d magazine

2. The brought the meals very quickly.

- ☐ a water ☐ b winter ☐ c writer ☐ d waiter

3. Eat food. It's healthy.

- ☐ a fresh ☐ b salt ☐ c bad ☐ d fat

4. There is a good in this restaurant. He cooks very well.

- ☐ a chief ☐ b change ☐ c chef ☐ d chin

5. Basbousa and kunafa look I like them.

- ☐ a dangerous ☐ b famous ☐ c delicious ☐ d careless

6. It's to drink many fizzy drinks.

- ☐ a unhealthy ☐ b careful ☐ c safe ☐ d healthy

7. I'd like my pizza with lots of

- ☐ a lists ☐ b chefs ☐ c tomatoes ☐ d pounds

8. It's a nice restaurant. A lot of _____ go there.
 a waiters b customers c pounds d sweets
9. You should _____ sure everything is OK before you leave.
 a make b fall c know d think
10. I don't like this coffee; it's too _____.
 a popular b sweet c fresh d delicious

Test on Units 5 & 6

A Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب.

1. The speaker went to _____ last Friday.
 a school b the park c the cinema d a restaurant
2. The speaker went with his _____.
 a friend b brother c wife d mother
3. The speaker had _____ there.
 a breakfast b dinner c lunch d tea
4. The speaker says the _____ was friendly.
 a street b waiter c place d customer

B Language Functions

- 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam is talking to Khalid about her last holiday.

Khalid : Good morning, Mariam. Tell me about your holiday.

Mariam : Oh! It was great. I spent it ① _____ the beach.

Khalid : Where did you ② _____ ?

Mariam : I went to Mersa Matruh.

Khalid : How was the weather like?

Mariam : ③ _____

- Khalid** : What else ④ ?
- Mariam** : I swam in the sea and ⑤ sandcastles.
- Khalid** : I'll ask my father to take us there.
- Mariam** : I'm sure you will like it.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Food is very important for us. So, when we choose any kind of food, it should be healthy. I mean it should have a lot of vitamins which we can find them in meat, chicken and fish. Some people like to have much salt in their food, this isn't healthy. We should take care of our health by having fresh water, milk and green vegetables. These are the best kinds of healthy food we should have.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
- Why shouldn't we have food with much salt?
.....
- Do you think vitamins are important? Why / Why not?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Meat and chicken have in them.
 a milk b salt c vitamins d water
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a fish b pizza
 c unhealthy food d healthy food
- is very important for our life.
 a Food b Work c Sleep d School

D Vocabulary and Structure**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- When I go to Alexandria, I play on the
 a tent b beach c bed d mountain
- There enough rice pudding for you.
 a were b aren't c are some d is
- Don't drink this tea before you the sugar inside it.
 a boil b move c stir d cook
- What did you for breakfast?
 a had b has c having d have
- In Kenya, people call meat with potatoes
 a snake b snack c stew d tagine
- We have too much salt in our daily meals.
 a should b shouldn't c do d can
- We should look our health all the time.
 a for b from c to d after
- Fresh salad is very for us.
 a healthy b unhealthy c bad d poor
- This restaurant is famous as it has a clever
 a teacher b chef c customer d food
- Koshari has a lot of
 a ingredients b vets c eaters d tables

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Menna should have a lot of sugar in her tea. (.....)
- Ahmed doesn't have a picnic yesterday. (.....)
- Karim didn't have some water. (.....)
- Did Sherif went to the zoo last Monday? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph about **Eighty (80)** words on:

"A healthy meal"

Listening material**Units 1-2****Test**

I live in Fayoum. My father is an engineer. My mother is a doctor. We are very happy to live in a big city.

Units 3-4**Test**

I like my classroom a lot. It is full of interesting things. It has got four computers and eight tablets. Most of my friends like the place and they keep it clean.

Units 5-6**Test**

Last Friday, I had lunch with my friend Hamdy. We ordered chicken, salad and orange juice, the restaurant was clean and the waiter was so friendly.